

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the V603SH.

- For proper handset use, read this manual beforehand.
- For instructions on how to use Vodafone live!, see Vodafone live! manual.
- Keep this manual in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible Vodafone services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

V603SH transmits at 1.5 GHz and is compatible with the Vodafone K.K. network.

This product is exclusively for use in Japan.

Note

- Copying this manual in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Manual content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this manual. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (see P.18-21) concerning unclear or missing information.

Symbols

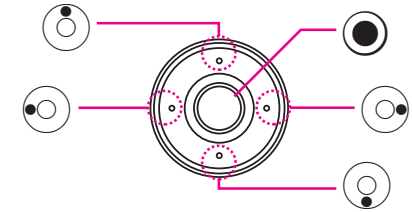
Multi Selector

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc.

In this manual, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown to the right.

Basic Multi Selector Operations

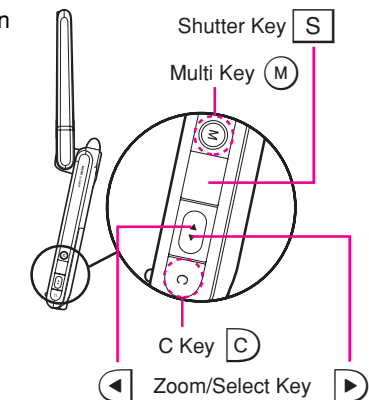
- : Press or
- : Press or
- : Press , , or



Side Keys

Use Side Keys when Display is in Viewer position (see P.1-11). In this manual, Side Keys are indicated as shown to the right.


"S" is not inscribed on the actual Shutter Key.



Note

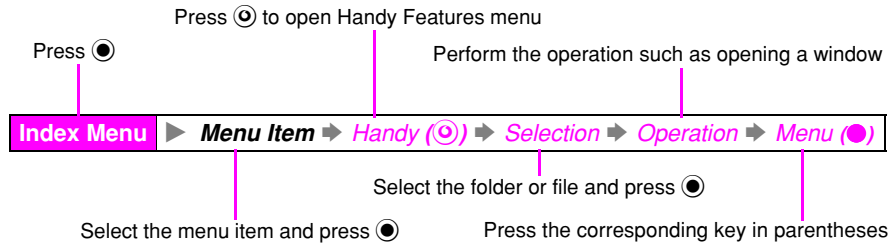
- In this manual, most operations are described with handset open (clamshell open: see P.1-10).
- Sample screen shots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.

Page References

When  appears next to a page reference, indicated pages are in Vodafone live! Manual. When only the page numbers appear, indicated pages are in Basic Operations Manual.

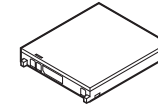
Abbreviated Steps

Handset operations starting from Index Menu are abbreviated as follows:

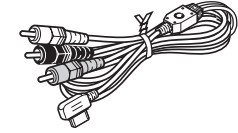


Accessories

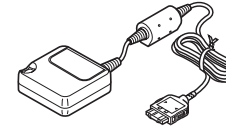
■ Battery (SHBY01)* (Type 1 Lithium-ion Battery)



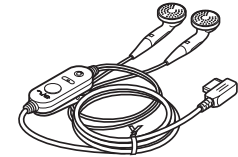
■ Video Cable (SHPU01)*



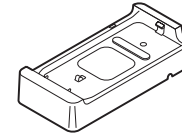
■ Rapid Charger (SHCV01)*



■ Headphones (SHLV01)* (with Built-in TV Antenna)



■ Desktop Holder (SHEY01)*



*May also be purchased separately.

Tip

- For accessory-related information, please contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.18-21).
- V603SH is compatible with SD Memory Cards. SD Memory Card is not included in this package. Purchase SD Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.

Contents

Symbols.....	i
Accessories.....	iii
Contents	iv
Safety Precautions	xviii
General Notes	xxvii
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR).....	xxix

1 Getting Started

Function & Feature Preview	1-2
Handset Parts & Functions.....	1-4
■ Handset.....	1-4
■ Display	1-8
Display Positions & Keys.....	1-10
■ Rotating Display	1-10
■ Key Press Methods	1-12
■ Side Key Assignments (Viewer).....	1-12
■ Motion Control.....	1-13
Battery & Charger	1-15
■ Getting Started.....	1-15
■ Installing & Removing Battery.....	1-19
■ Rapid Charger.....	1-21
■ Desktop Holder	1-22
■ In-Car Charger	1-23
Handset Power On/Off.....	1-24
■ Key Guard.....	1-25
Clock Settings.....	1-26
Handset Menus	1-27
■ Index Menu	1-27
■ Functions Menu	1-28
■ Soft Keys.....	1-30
■ Using MC Cursor	1-31
■ Quick Operations	1-32
■ Keypad Shortcuts.....	1-32
■ Guide	1-33
Handset Codes.....	1-34
■ Security Code	1-34
■ Center Access Code	1-34

2 Basic Handset Operations

Initiating a Call	2-2
● Viewer Position	2-3
■ Redial.....	2-4
■ International Call & Send With Code	2-5
● Setup Preset.....	2-5
● International Call & Send With Code	2-5

3 Manner Mode

Incoming Call.....	2-6
● Viewer Position.....	2-6
■ Call History	2-8
Handling Incoming Calls	2-9
■ Placing Callers on Hold	2-9
● Viewer Position.....	2-9
■ Message Recorder	2-10
■ Clamshell Closed.....	2-11
Delayed Ringer	2-12
Engaged Call Operations.....	2-13
■ Earpiece Volume	2-13
■ Voice Memo.....	2-14
■ Notepad Memory	2-15
● Opening Entries.....	2-15
Redial & Call History	2-16
● Delete	2-16
Information Menu	2-17
■ Information Menu Contents	2-18
■ Information Menu Settings.....	2-19
● Reset.....	2-19
● Incoming Light	2-19
● Time Out Setting	2-19
Call Time	2-20
● Reset.....	2-20
● Instant Display.....	2-20
Call Charge	2-21
● Reset.....	2-21
● Instant Display.....	2-21
My Number & Owner Profile.....	2-22
● Save	2-22
● Delete	2-22
● Copy	2-22
Minding Mobile Manners	3-2
Manner Mode	3-3
■ Activate/Cancel.....	3-3
■ Manner Mode Settings	3-4
● Message Recorder/Whisper Mode.....	3-4
● Ring Tone Level	3-4
● Vibration	3-4
● Alarm Volume.....	3-4
● Alarm Vibration.....	3-5
● LED Indicator.....	3-5
● Sound Volume/V-Appli Volume	3-5
● V-Appli Vibration.....	3-5
Off-Line Mode	3-6

4 Entering Characters

Character Selection	4-2
■ Entry Modes	4-2
■ Key Assignments	4-3
Entering Characters	4-4
■ Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana	4-4
■ Entering Alphanumerics	4-6
■ Symbols, Pictographs & Emoticons	4-7
■ Mail & Web Extensions	4-8
■ Character Code	4-9
■ Pager Code	4-9
Conversion Methods (Japanese Only)	4-11
■ Phonetic Conversion	4-11
■ One-Hiragana Conversion	4-11
■ Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion ..	4-12
■ Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)	4-12
■ Conversion Settings	4-13
● Disable Predictive/Previous Usage	4-13
● Reset Learning	4-13
■ User Dictionary (Japanese Only)	4-14
● New Entry	4-14
● Edit	4-14
■ V603SH Download Dictionary (Japanese Only)	4-14
● Acquire Dictionary	4-14
● Cancel	4-15
Editing Characters	4-15
■ Deleting	4-15
■ Replacing	4-15
■ Copy/Cut & Paste	4-16
■ Deleting Text Before or After Cursor	4-16
■ Using Phone Book	4-17
Text Memo	4-18
■ Entering Text	4-18
■ Text Memo Functions	4-20
● Edit	4-20
● To Data Folder	4-20
● Change to Vnote	4-20

5 Phone Book

Saving to Phone Book	5-2
■ Phone Book Entry Items	5-2
■ New Phone Book Entries	5-3
■ Saving from Redial or Call History	5-6
■ Phone Book Memory Status	5-6
■ Saving to SD Memory Card	5-7
Option Settings	5-7
■ Personal Ring Tone	5-8
■ Incoming Notice	5-9
■ Picture Call/Mail	5-10
■ Mail Folder	5-10
■ Auto Reply	5-11
Group Settings	5-12
■ Changing Group Name	5-12
■ Group Ring Tone	5-12
Using Phone Book	5-13
■ Dialing from Phone Book	5-13
● Memory No. Search	5-15
● Katakana Search	5-15
● Group Search	5-15
● Search by Reading	5-15
■ Copying Phone Book Contents	5-16
Editing Phone Book	5-17
■ Correction/Change	5-17
■ Deleting Entries	5-17

6 TV & FM Radio

Getting Started	6-2
■ Precautions	6-2
■ Signal Reception	6-4
■ Key Assignments	6-6
Watching TV	6-7
■ Recording TV Programs	6-8
● Save to	6-9
● Incoming Calls	6-9
■ Capturing Screenshots	6-10
● Frame Count	6-11
● Interval Rate	6-11
Listening to FM Radio	6-12
■ NOW ON AIR	6-13
■ Recording FM Radio	6-14
● Save to	6-15
● Incoming Calls	6-15

6 TV & FM Radio

Presets	6-16
■ Presetting TV Channels	6-16
■ Presetting FM Stations.....	6-18
■ Additional Settings	6-19
● Set URL	6-19
● Switch Position	6-19
● Reset	6-19
Handy TV/FM Functions	6-20
■ Functions Available for TV & FM	6-20
● Auto Off Timer	6-20
● Close to Turn Off	6-21
● Disable TV	6-21
● Disable FM.....	6-21
● Incoming Settings	6-21
● Hide Picture	6-22
● Viewer Display	6-22
● Sound Out.....	6-22
● Access Link.....	6-23
● Activate TV/FM	6-23
■ Handy TV Functions	6-23
● TV Backlight.....	6-23
● Horizontal/Vertical Display	6-24
● Horizontal Display	6-24
● Full Auto.....	6-24

7 Mobile Camera

Getting Started	7-2
■ Mobile Camera Basics	7-2
■ Viewfinder & Key Assignments	7-5
■ Optical Zoom.....	7-7
■ Auto Focus.....	7-8
Still Images	7-9
■ Still Image Modes	7-9
■ Capturing Still Images.....	7-11
● Add to Phone Book.....	7-13
● Save As Thumb	7-13
● Rotate Thumb	7-13
■ Still Image Functions.....	7-14
■ Adding Frames.....	7-15
■ Movie Mask.....	7-16
■ Burst Mode.....	7-16
Video	7-19
■ Video Mode.....	7-19
■ Recording Video	7-21
■ Video Recording Operations.....	7-23
■ Movie Mask.....	7-24

Shooting Options	7-25
● Toggle Preview.....	7-25
● Show/Hide Indicators	7-25
● Shutter Click.....	7-25
● Self Timer	7-26
● Mobile Light	7-27
● Auto Focus	7-28
● Optical Zoom	7-28
Image Settings	7-29
● Brightness	7-29
● Image Size	7-29
● Shoot by Scene.....	7-29
● Image Quality	7-30
● Record Settings.....	7-30
● Mic Settings.....	7-30
Additional Settings	7-31
● Key Ops Guide	7-31
● Save to	7-31
● Select Mode	7-31
● Auto Save.....	7-32
● Auto Reset.....	7-32
Opening Images & Playing Video	7-32
■ Opening Still Images	7-32
■ Playing Video.....	7-34
Memory Status	7-35
Editing Video	7-36
■ Clipping Video	7-36
■ Saving Images from Video	7-38
■ Clipping Portions between Two Points	7-38
■ Cropping Video Clips.....	7-39
■ Editing Telops.....	7-39
● Telop Effects	7-41
● Telop Scroll	7-41
● Cancel Effect.....	7-42
Sending Images & Video	7-42
■ Sha-mail Mode Images.....	7-42
■ Camera Mode Images	7-44
■ Video Clips	7-44
Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)	7-45
■ Selecting Images & Prints	7-45
■ Print Settings	7-46
● Number of Copies	7-46
● Add Date	7-46
● Index Print	7-46
● Check Settings	7-46

7	Mobile Camera	Postcard & Calendar 7-47	7-47
		■ Postcard 7-47	7-47
		■ Calendar 7-48	7-48
8	Display	Wallpaper 8-2	8-2
		Clock & Calendar 8-3	8-3
		■ Clock Display 8-3	8-3
		■ Calendar 8-3	8-3
		Fonts 8-4	8-4
		Display Images 8-5	8-5
		Light Settings 8-6	8-6
		● Brightness 8-6	8-6
		● In-Car Backlight 8-7	8-7
		Display Patterns 8-7	8-7
		● Menu Background 8-7	8-7
		● Frames 8-7	8-7
		● Menu Design 8-7	8-7
		● Cursor 8-7	8-7
		Other Display Settings 8-8	8-8
		● Show Indicators 8-8	8-8
		● Viewer Display 8-8	8-8
		● Screen Animation 8-9	8-9
		● Vodafone live! Animation 8-9	8-9
		● Index Menu Display 8-9	8-9
		● Dialing Display 8-10	8-10
		● Standby Animation 8-10	8-10
		● Power On Message 8-10	8-10
		● Language 8-10	8-10
9	Sounds & Related Functions	Call Functions 9-2	9-2
		■ Ring Tone Level 9-2	9-2
		■ Ring Tone 9-3	9-3
		■ Handset Vibration 9-4	9-4
		■ Mobile/Small Light 9-5	9-5
		■ Ring Time 9-6	9-6
		Sound Effects 9-6	9-6
		■ Sounds 9-6	9-6
		■ Basic Sound Settings 9-7	9-7
		● Volume 9-7	9-7
		● Time 9-8	9-8
		Original Voice 9-8	9-8
		Original Ring Tone 9-9	9-9
		■ Basics 9-9	9-9
		■ Creating an Original Ring Tone 9-13	9-13
		■ Editing an Original Ring Tone 9-15	9-15
		■ Deleting an Original Ring Tone 9-17	9-17

		Instrument Effects 9-17	9-17
		■ Basics 9-17	9-17
		■ Creating Instrument Effects 9-21	9-21
		Other Sound Related Functions 9-22	9-22
		● Speaker Phone/Speaker 9-22	9-22
		● Tone Octave 9-22	9-22
10	Music Player	Music Player Basics 10-2	10-2
		■ Basic Functions 10-2	10-2
		■ Music Key & Music Player 10-3	10-3
		Recording Music 10-4	10-4
		■ Connecting to Audio Sources 10-6	10-6
		■ Recording 10-8	10-8
		■ Recording Settings 10-10	10-10
		● Monitor Level 10-10	10-10
		● Synchro Recording 10-10	10-10
		● Bit Rate 10-10	10-10
		● Track Break Level 10-10	10-10
		Playing Music 10-12	10-12
		■ Playback 10-14	10-14
		■ Playback Settings 10-16	10-16
		● Play Setting 10-16	10-16
		● Sound Effect 10-16	10-16
		● Train (Volume Control) 10-17	10-17
		● Incoming Settings 10-17	10-17
		■ Managing Music Files 10-17	10-17
		● Property 10-17	10-17
		● Rename Play List Items 10-18	10-18
		● Move 10-18	10-18
		● Erase 10-18	10-18
11	Voice Recorder	Recording Voice 11-2	11-2
		■ Recording 11-3	11-3
		■ Recording Settings 11-4	11-4
		● Mic Level 11-4	11-4
		● Recording Mode 11-4	11-4
		● Delete 11-4	11-4
		Playback 11-5	11-5
		■ Playback 11-6	11-6
		■ Playback Settings 11-7	11-7
		● Play One Data or Play All 11-7	11-7
		● Train (Volume Control) 11-7	11-7
		● Split Data 11-7	11-7
		Voice Ring Tone 11-8	11-8
		■ Editing Voice Files 11-8	11-8
		■ Using as Ring Tone 11-8	11-8

12	Memory Card	Before Use	12-2
		■ Precautions	12-2
		■ Inserting & Removing SD Memory Card.....	12-3
		■ File Organization.....	12-5
		Using Memory Card	12-6
		■ Format Card.....	12-6
		■ Opening Memory Card Files.....	12-6
		Transferring Files	12-8
		■ Copy or Move.....	12-9
		■ Transfer All.....	12-10
		■ Encoding Data	12-11
		Additional Functions	12-11
		● Memory Card Status.....	12-11
		● Local Contents.....	12-12
		● Synchronize	12-12
	● Autorun	12-12	

13	Managing Files	Data Folder	13-2
		■ File Organization.....	13-2
		■ Data Folder Contents.....	13-3
		■ Display Settings	13-5
		Opening Files	13-6
		■ Handset Data Folder.....	13-6
		■ Properties.....	13-11
		Creating Animation	13-12
		■ Simple Animation	13-12
		■ Converting Animation Format	13-14
		■ Creating E-Animation.....	13-15
		■ Opening Animation Files.....	13-20
		Using Images & Animation	13-21
		■ Changing Display Size.....	13-21
		■ Setting Image & Animation as Wallpaper	13-21
		■ Setting Image & Animation as Display Images.....	13-21
		■ Saving Burst Shot Images	13-22
		■ Slide Show	13-22
		Editing Images	13-23
		■ Changing Image Size.....	13-23
		■ Entering Text.....	13-25
		■ Adding Marker Stamp	13-25
		■ Visual Effects	13-26
		■ Face Arrange	13-27
		■ Additional Picture Effects	13-29
		● Frame	13-29
		● Moving Photo Frame	13-29
		● Rotate	13-30
		● File Format & Size	13-30

	Combining Images	13-31
	■ Split Screen	13-31
	■ Panorama Images	13-33
	■ Combining Split Mail Images	13-34
	Melody File	13-35
	■ Playback Volume.....	13-35
	■ Using for Incoming Tone/Sound Effects	13-35
	Chaku-Uta	13-36
	■ Playback	13-36
	■ Playback Settings	13-37
	● Play Setting	13-37
	■ Using as Ring Tone	13-37
	● Incoming Tone.....	13-37
	vFiles	13-38
	■ vFile Basics	13-38
	■ File Organization	13-38
	■ Creating vFiles.....	13-40
	■ Importing vFiles	13-41
	SVG Files	13-41
	E-Books	13-42
	■ Reading Content.....	13-42
	■ Using E-Book Images.....	13-45
	● Save as Wallpaper	13-45
	● Embedded Information	13-45
	■ Using a Dictionary	13-45
	● Look Up Word	13-45
	● Property	13-45
	Editing Files & Folders	13-46
	■ Adding Folders	13-46
	■ Changing File/Folder Name.....	13-46
	■ Deleting Files & Folders	13-47
	■ Protecting Folders	13-47
	■ Copying/Moving Files	13-48

14	Infrared	Getting Started	14-2
		■ Precautions.....	14-2
		■ Available Files	14-3
		IR Password	14-3
		Transferring Files	14-4
		■ One File Transfer.....	14-4
		■ All File Transfer	14-5
		■ Folders.....	14-6

15 Handset Security

Changing Security Code	15-2
Handset Locks	15-2
■ Keypad Lock	15-2
■ Auto Key Lock	15-3
■ Phone Book Lock	15-3
■ Restrict Dial	15-3
Accept Call & Reject Call	15-4
■ Saving Entries	15-4
■ Accept Call	15-5
■ Reject Call	15-5
■ Rejecting Other Calls	15-5
Secret Mode	15-6
■ Saving Secret Mode Entries	15-6
■ Activating Secret Mode	15-7
Reset	15-8
■ Reset Defaults	15-8
■ Reset All	15-8

16 Additional Functions

Handy Call Functions	16-2
■ Signal Alert	16-2
■ Push Tones	16-2
Side Key Settings	16-3
■ For Incoming Calls	16-3
■ For Standby	16-3
Motion Control Settings	16-4
■ Activating	16-4
● M-key Settings	16-4
● Viewer Setting	16-4
■ Adjusting Sensor	16-4
Message Recorder	16-5
■ Activate	16-5
■ Deactivate	16-6
■ Playing Messages	16-6
Voice Memos	16-7
Alarm	16-8
■ Setting Alarm	16-8
■ Alarm Options	16-10
● Alarm Tones	16-10
● Tone Volume	16-10
● Ring Time	16-10
● Vibration	16-11
● LED Indicator	16-11
● Snooze	16-11
● Schedule Alert	16-11
● Phone Number/Call	16-11
● Advance Mail	16-11

■ Canceling & Reactivating Alarm	16-12
● Cancel	16-12
● Delete	16-12
● Settings	16-12
■ Auto Power On	16-12
■ Auto Power Off	16-13
Schedule	16-14
■ Saving Entries	16-14
■ Schedule Options	16-17
● Secret Mode	16-18
● Attach Image	16-18
● Date Color	16-18
● Standby Display	16-18
● Auto Protect	16-18
● Condition	16-19
■ Opening Entries	16-19
■ Editing Entries	16-19
■ Deleting Entries	16-20
● Delete Item	16-20
● One Day Schedules	16-20
● Delete All	16-20
■ Other Schedule Settings	16-20
● Auto Delete	16-20
● Set Color	16-21
● View	16-21
User Shortcuts	16-21
■ Using Shortcuts	16-22
■ Assigning User Shortcuts	16-23
■ Editing & Deleting Shortcuts	16-24
● Change Name	16-24
● Delete	16-24
Stopwatch	16-24
Kitchen Timer	16-25
Shake Counter	16-26
Shake Sound	16-28
Compass	16-29
Barcode	16-29
■ Scan & Capture	16-30
● Scan during Text Entry	16-33
■ Reading Saved Barcode Images	16-33
■ Opening Saved Scan Results	16-34

16 Additional Functions

Creating QR Codes	16-34
■ Creating from Create QR Code Menu	16-34
● Owner Profile	16-35
● Phone Book	16-35
● Mail	16-35
● Text.....	16-35
● Melodies & Images	16-35
■ Creating from Saved Data	16-36
Text Scanner	16-37
● Scan during Text Entry	16-39
Battery Saving	16-39
■ Power Saving.....	16-39
■ Panel Saving.....	16-39
Calculator	16-40
Spending Memo	16-41
● Entry	16-41
● Totals	16-41
● Delete	16-41
● New Item.....	16-42
Pen Light	16-42
● Illuminate	16-42
● Pen Light Settings.....	16-42
Viewing Images on Other Devices	16-43
■ Connecting to Other Devices	16-43
■ Activating Video Out	16-44
Headphones (with Built-in TV Antenna)	16-45
■ Initiating Calls.....	16-45
■ Answering Calls	16-45
■ Ringer Out.....	16-46
Fax & PC Transmissions	16-46
● Fax Transmissions.....	16-46
● PC Transmissions.....	16-46

17 Optional Services

Optional Services Overview	17-2
Call Forwarding	17-3
● Set Fwd Number	17-3
● Start Fwd	17-3
● Cancel Secretary	17-3
● Check Secretary	17-3
Voice Mail	17-4
● Voice Mail	17-4
● Cancel Secretary	17-4
● Play Voice Mail	17-5
● Check Secretary	17-5
Ring Time	17-5
● Ring Time	17-5

18 Appendix

Call Waiting	17-6
● Call Waiting On/Off.....	17-6
● Confirm Service.....	17-6
● Incoming Calls.....	17-6
3 Way Calling	17-7
● Open Another Line	17-7
● Switch Line	17-7
● Break Away (while Switching Lines).....	17-8
● 3 Way Calling	17-8
● Break Away (from 2 Open Lines)	17-8
Function Shortcuts	18-2
Troubleshooting	18-6
Character Code List	18-9
Specifications	18-13
Index	18-15
Warranty & After-Sales Services	18-20
Customer Service	18-21

Safety Precautions

- Read safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

■ Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:

	DANGER	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
	WARNING	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
	CAUTION	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

■ Symbols

Prohibited Actions	Compulsory Actions	Attention Required

DANGER

Handset, Battery & Charger

Use only the specified battery, Charger or Holder (see P.iii).

Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.



Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

Keep metal objects away from Charger terminals. Keep handset away from necklaces, hairpins, etc. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry handset.



Battery

Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage or fire. Do not:

- Heat or dispose of battery in fire
- Disassemble, modify or break battery
- Damage or solder battery
- Use a damaged or deformed battery
- Use non-specified charger (see P.iii)
- Force battery into handset
- Charge or place battery near fire, heat sources or in extreme heat
- Use battery for other equipment



If battery fluid contacts eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.



⚠️ WARNING

Handset, Battery & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into handset.

Do not place metal or flammable objects in handset, Charger or Holder. This may cause fire or electric shock. Keep handset out of the reach of children.

Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.

Fire or electric shock may occur.

Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.

Keep handset, Charger and Holder away from chemicals/liquids. Fire or electric shock may result.

Avoid sources of fire.

Prevent fire or explosion. Do not use handset in the presence of gas or fine particles (coal, dust, metal, etc.).

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.

Keep handset, Charger or Holder away from microwave ovens.

Battery or handset may leak, burst, overheat or ignite and cause accidents.

Do not disassemble or modify handset.

- Do not open housing of handset, Charger or Holder; may cause electric shock or injury. Contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset, Charger or Holder. Fire or electric shock may result.

If water or foreign matter is inside handset:

Discontinue handset use to prevent fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug Charger and contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Do not subject handset to shocks.

Subjecting handset, Charger or Holder to shocks may cause malfunction or injury. Should the handset break, remove the battery and contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use. Fire or electric shock may occur.

If an abnormality occurs:

Should there be unusual sound, smoke or odor, discontinue handset use to avoid fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery and unplug Charger and contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

⚠️ WARNING

Handset

Preventing accidents

- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (effective from November 1, 2004).
- Do not use Headphones while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result.
- Moderate volume outside, especially at road/rail crossings to avoid accidents.

Do not swing handset by Headphones or handstrap.

May result in injury or breakage.

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.

Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

Adjusting vibration and Ring Tone settings:

Select settings carefully if you have a heart condition or pacemaker.

During lightning storms, turn power off and take shelter.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

Charger Care

Use only the specified voltage.


- Non-specified voltage may cause fire or electric shock.
- Rapid Charger 100 VAC
 - In-Car Charger 12/24 VDC

Do not use In-Car Charger inside vehicles with a positive earth.

Fire may result. Use In-Car Charger only inside vehicles with a negative earth.

Charger Care

- Do not touch blades with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.

- Do not use multiple cords in one outlet. May generate excess heat or fire. 
- Do not bend, twist, pull or set objects on cord. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.

Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

Keep metal away from terminals. May cause overheating, fire or electric shock.

WARNING

Charger Care

Do not use Desktop Holder inside vehicles.

Extreme temperature or vibration may cause fire or breakage.



Preventing accidents

Secure In-Car Charger to avoid injury or accidents.



If Charger or In-Car Charger cord is damaged:

May cause fire or electric shock; Contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance to replace.



During lightning storms:

Unplug Charger to avoid breakage, fire or electric shock.



Keep Charger & Desktop Holder out of the reach of children.

Electric shock or injury may occur.



Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Persons with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Implanted pacemakers or defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.



Turn handset power off in crowded places such as trains.

People with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators may be near.

Implanted pacemakers or defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.



Observe these rules when visiting medical institutions:

- Do not take handset into operating rooms or Intensive or Coronary Care Units.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Keep handset off in hospital lobbies. Electronic equipment may be near.
- Obey rules regarding mobile phone use in medical institutions.



Consult manufacturer for radio wave effects on electronic medical equipment.



WARNING

Battery

- If battery does not charge properly, stop charging. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.
- If there is leakage or abnormal odor, avoid fire sources. It may catch fire or burst.



If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery from handset. It may leak, overheat or explode.



CAUTION

Handset, Battery & Charger

Handset care

- Place handset on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep handset away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage or burnout.
- Keep handset away from direct sunlight (inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discoloration or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep handset out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.



Usage environment

- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using handset on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from credit cards, phone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.



⚠ CAUTION

Handset

Avoid leaving handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.).

Handset may heat up and lead to burns.



Volume settings

Keep handset volume moderate. Excessive volume may cause damage to your hearing.



Headphones and Video Cable

- Do not unplug by pulling the cord. May cause damage to the cord.
- Keep plug clean to prevent noise and malfunction.



Inside vehicles:

Handset use may cause electronic equipment to malfunction.



Should skin irritation occur, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

See below for handset materials. They may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side)	Magnesium alloy/Acrylic baking finish (sealer: epoxy baking finish)
Housing (Display back side)	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Housing (Display bottom side)	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Display window, lens cover	Acrylic resin
Camera Ornament	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: aluminum deposition, acrylic painting)
Screw cover (above Display)	ABS resin/Painted
Screw cover (below Display)	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting
Housing (Keypad/Battery side), Battery Cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Side Keys, Multi Selector, Vodafone live! Key, Mail Key, Power On/Off Key, Start Key, Keypad, Clear Key, Schedule/Memo Key, Text Key	PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting
Function Key	ABS resin/Chrome plating
Housing Ornament	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting
Housing Ornament (sides)	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Memory Card Slot Cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Headphone Connector Cover, External Device Connector Cover	Elastomeric resin
Screw cover (above Keypad, hinge)	Urethane resin
Battery	PC resin
Charger Terminal	Nylon 6T/Brass, Au plating (sealer: nickel, copper)
Screw (Display side, Keypad side)	SWCH12A/Ni plating

⚠ CAUTION

Charger Care

Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if plug is hot or improperly connected. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. May overheat and cause injury.



Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.

Start engine before use. Or car battery may be weakened.



Long periods of disuse

Be sure to unplug Charger or In-Car Charger after use.



Handset maintenance

When cleaning, disconnect Charger/ In-Car Charger to prevent shock/ injury.



Do not touch Desktop Holder while in use.

May cause burns.



Use only the specified fuse.

1A fuse for In-Car Charger. Or may cause breakage/fire.



Always charge handset in a well-ventilated area.

Avoid covering/wrapping Charger/ Desktop Holder. May cause damage/fire.




Installing In-Car Charger


Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.





⚠ CAUTION


Battery


Do not throw or abuse battery.
Battery may overheat, burst or ignite. 


Do not leave battery in direct sunlight
or inside vehicles. 
Overheating/fire may occur.
Performance may deteriorate.

Do not expose battery to liquids.
Performance may deteriorate. 

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes,
rinse with clean water immediately. 

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries
with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery
terminals before disposal, or bring
them to a Vodafone shop. 
Follow local regulations regarding
battery disposal.

Keep battery out of the reach of
children. 

- Charge battery within a range of 5°C - 35°C. Out of this range, battery may leak/overheat or performance may deteriorate. 
- If your child is using handset, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
- If there is abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance.
- Do not leave battery uncharged. Charge at least once every 6 months.

General Notes

General Use

- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset or SD Memory Card data. Please keep separate records of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
Eavesdropping
Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off).
Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. Vodafone is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C and 35% - 85% humidity.
Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.

- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging the Display.
- When using headphones, moderate volume to avoid sound bleed.
- **Handset is not water-proof.**
- **Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.**
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid dropping handset in a wet area (restroom, bathroom, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- **Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided.**
 - **May cause malfunction or injury.**
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Connect only the specified products to Headphone Connector. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed, or destroyed.
- Handset incorporates a magnetic sensor to detect its position. Handset may not operate properly near other magnetic objects.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

- **V603SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.** These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).
 - The highest SAR value for V603SH is 0.28 W/kg. Tests for SAR are conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level, and follow the testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.
 - Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites:
 - Ministry of Public Management
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm>
 - Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
<http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html>
- *Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.



Getting Started

Function & Feature Preview

1 Getting Started

SD Memory Card is required for items with gray background.

Rotating Display
Change handset Display position to use Camera, etc.

P.1-10

Motion Control
Built-in sensor detects handset movement. Use MC Shortcut, Shake Sound, Compass, etc.

P.1-13, P.16-22, P.16-28 - 16-29

Manner Mode
Press a single key to mute ringer and activate Message Recorder automatically.

P.3-3

Kanji Conversion
Use Predictive or Previous Usage to reduce key strokes when entering Japanese text.

P.4-5, P.4-12 - 4-13

Phone Book
Save up to 500 entries (with up to three phone numbers and mail addresses each).

P.5-2

TV & FM Radio
Watch terrestrial TV or listen to FM radio. Record programs or capture screenshots.

P.6-2

Camera
Capture still and video images.

P.7-2

DPOF Printing
When printing images, use DPOF to specify print count.

P.7-45

Display Settings
Set Wallpaper, Display Images, Fonts, etc. to customize your handset.

P.8-2, P.8-5 - 8-7

Postcard Maker
Add text or calendar mask to still images to create original Postcards or Calendars.

P.7-47

Music Player
Download a fee-based key to record and play music files.

P.10-2

Voice Recorder
Record/play Voice Memos, etc.

P.11-2

1 Getting Started

Memory Card
Save files to SD Memory Card to expand handset memory or back-up handset files.

P.12-2

Data Folder
Save and manage a variety of handset files within Data Folder.

P.13-2

Chaku-Uta®
Download Chaku-Uta® (music) to set as Ring Tone or Alarm Tone.

P.13-36

Electronic Books
Read E-Books (XMDF format) saved on SD Memory Card.

P.13-42

Infrared
Exchange information and files with other handsets, etc. wirelessly.

P.14-2

Schedule
Organize daily, weekly, and monthly events.

P.16-14

Barcodes
Scan UPC and QR Codes or create QR Codes from Phone Book entries, etc.

P.16-29, P.16-34

Video Out
Watch still/video images captured with handset or view contents on TVs, etc.

P.16-43

Vodafone live!
Exchange mail, access the Mobile Internet, download V-Applications via Web, and retrieve area-specific information via Station.

Vodafone live! Manual

Optional Services

Call Forwarding
Forward incoming calls to a specified number.

P.17-3

Voice Mail
Forward incoming calls to Voice Mail.

P.17-4

Call Waiting
Answer an incoming call during a call.

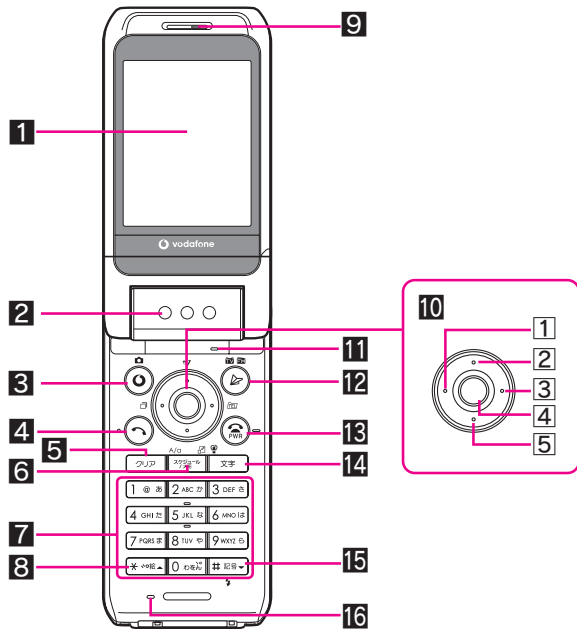
P.17-6

3 Way Calling
Switch between two lines or talk on both simultaneously.

P.17-7

Handset Parts & Functions

Handset



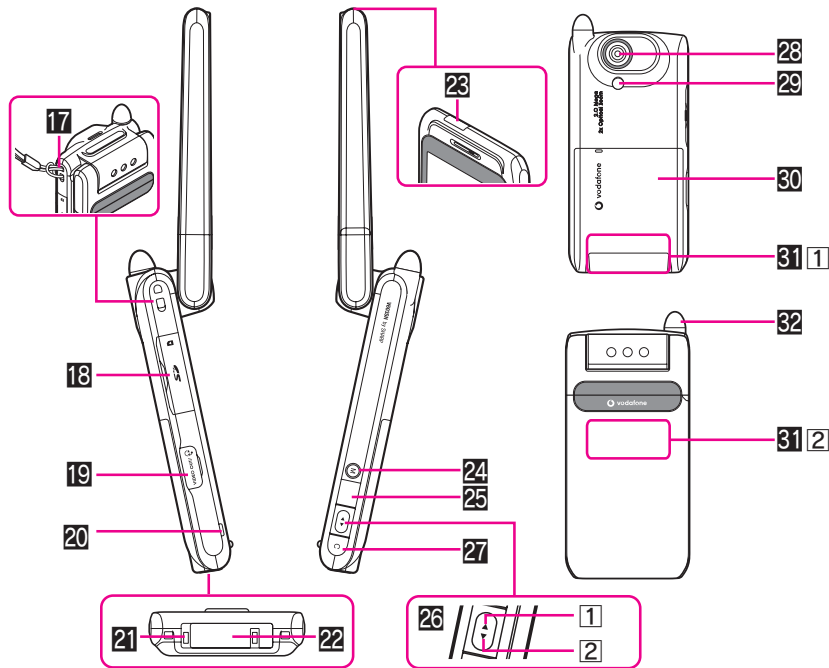
- 1 Display**
- 2 Speaker**
- 3 Vodafone live! & Mobile Camera Key**
Open Vodafone live! menu. Press for 1+ seconds to activate mobile camera.
- 4 Start Key**
Initiate or answer calls.
- 5 Clear Key**
Delete entries or return to previous window.

- 6 Schedule/Memo & A/a Key**
Save/check Schedule or record/play Voice Memos. Toggle between upper/lower case roman letters or standard/small kana in text entry windows and change image display sizes.
- 7 Keypad**
- 8 * Key**
While an image or message appears, press to open previous one. In alphanumeric entry, open web/mail address prefixes & suffixes, and in kanji (hiragana) entry, toggle Symbol & Pictograph Lists. In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to launch TVnano (EPG V-Appli) or other shortcuts.

- 9 Earpiece**
- 10 Multi Selector**
Select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc. or use for the following:
 - 1 Redial & Notepad Memory Key**
Select dialed numbers or return to the previous window. Press for 1+ seconds to open Notepad Memory.
 - 2 Shortcut Key**
List User Shortcuts. Press for 1+ seconds to open V-Appli Library (default).
 - 3 Phone Book Key**
Open entries to make calls, send messages or open selected menu items. Press for 1+ seconds to save new entries.
 - 4 Function (F) Key/Key Guard**
Access Functions Menu. Press for 1+ seconds to set or release Key Guard.
 - 5 Call History Key**
Open records of received calls. Press for 1+ seconds to adjust Earpiece volume.
- 11 Microphone (in Viewer Position)**

- 12 Mail Key**
Open Mail menu. Press for 1+ seconds to activate TV/FM.
- 13 Power On/Off & End Key**
End calls, place callers on hold or cancel operations. Press for 2+ seconds to turn handset power on/off.
- 14 Text & Manner Key (M)**
Toggle character types or create Phone Book entries. Press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner Mode.
- 15 # Key**
When handset is opened (clamshell open) for mobile camera, turn Mobile Light on/off. While an image or message appears, press to open next one. In text entry windows, toggle through Symbol & Pictograph Lists.

- 16 Microphone (clamshell open)**

**17 Strap Eyelet**

Attach straps as shown.

18 Memory Card Slot

Insert SD Memory Card here.

19 Video Out/Headphone/Optical Digital/Line In Connector

Connect supplied Video Cable, Headphones (with built-in TV antenna), etc.

20 Small Light

Illuminates red while charging; green while recording/capturing TV programs/screenshots; and orange while recording FM radio. Set to flash for incoming calls.

21 Charger Terminal**22 External Device Connector**

Connect Charger here.

23 Infrared Port

Use for infrared data transmissions.

24 Multi Key

While mobile camera is active in Viewer position, press to toggle Optical Zoom on/off. In Standby, double-press to activate Pen Light.

For TV/FM keys, see P.6-6.

25 Shutter Key

In Viewer position, press to open selected menu items or execute functions. Press for 1+ seconds to activate mobile camera.

For mobile camera keys, see P.7-5.

26 Zoom/Select Key

In Viewer position, press to select menu items or to move cursor.

1 Move cursor up or left.

For mobile camera keys, see P.7-5.

2 Move cursor down or right.

For mobile camera keys, see P.7-5.

27 C Key

In Viewer position, press to cancel the current operation or return to previous window, etc.

For mobile camera keys, see P.7-5.

■ In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel TV/FM.

28 Camera (lens cover)

Capture still and video images.

29 Mobile Light

Flashes for incoming calls/mail. Serves as a strobe or Pen Light.

30 Battery Cover**31 Internal Antenna**

1 Transmit and receive signals in Viewer position.

2 Transmit and receive signals when not in Viewer position.

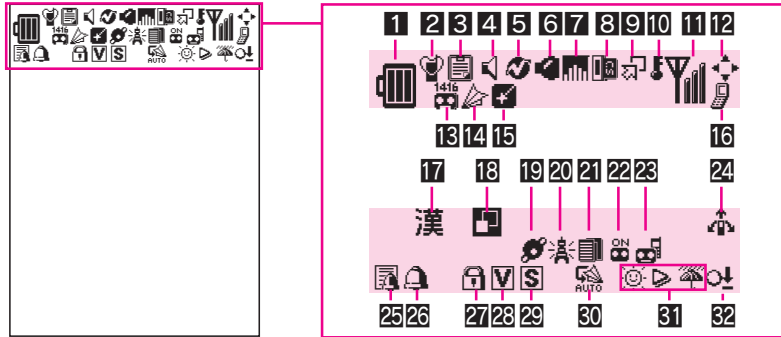
32 Antenna

Extend for TV/FM radio reception. Pull Antenna by top bead until it clicks.

Note

- Antenna is for TV and FM reception and does not affect voice quality.
- Push Antenna back into handset gently after use.
- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna.

Display



- 1** **Battery Strength**, **Pen Light**
 and flash when Pen Light is in use.
- 2** **Manner Mode Active**
- 3** **Information**
 Appears when there is an item in Information Menu.
- 4** **Speaker Phone Active**, **Speaker Active**, (gray) **Station Menu Manual Update**
- 5** **Active V-Application**, **Paused V-Application**
- 6** **Line Active**, **Video Out Active**
 Mail Server or Service Center transmission is in progress, or handset is connected to other devices via Video Cable.
- 7** **Music Player Active**, **Voice Recorder Active**
- 8** **SD Memory Card Status**
- 9** **User Shortcut**, **SSL**
 appears if a shortcut can be created for the window. appears for SSL encrypted Web information.
- 10** **Secret Mode Active**
 Flashes when a Secret Mode entry is open.
- 11** **Signal Strength**, **Off-Line Mode**, **Infrared Transmission**
: Strong : Moderate : Low : Weak
 OUT: Out-of-Range

- 12** **Scroll**
- 13** **Voice Mail**
 New Voice Mail
- 14** **Mail**
 Unread mail except Super Mail
- 15** **Super Mail**
 Unread Super Mail
- 16** **Handset**, **SD Memory Card**
 Accessing Handset or SD Memory Card data.
- 17** **Entry Mode**
 Current Character Type
- 18** **Original**, **Enlarged**
 Mail, Web or Data Folder image display size
- 19** **Web**
 Unread Web information
- 20** (red) **Station**
 Unread Station information
- 21** **Delivery Report**
 New Delivery Report
- 22** **Message Recorder Active**
- 23** **Message**
 Message Recorder messages
- 24** **MC Shortcut Active**
- 25** **Schedule**
 Schedule Alarm On /Off
- 26** **Alarm Set**
- 27** **Keypad Lock Active**
- 28** **Vibration Active**
- 29** **Silent**, **Rising Tone**
 Ringer is Silent or set to Rising Tone.
- 30** **Auto Reply Set**
- 31** **Weather Indicators**
 Current forecast (A separate subscription is required.)
- 32** **Key Guard Active**

Note Display is a precision device. However, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.

Tip

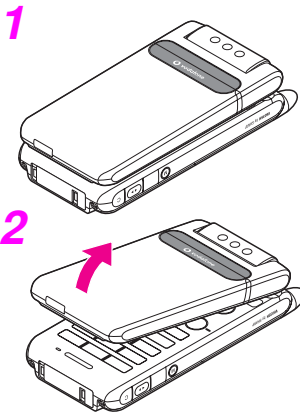
- Although Vibration and Ring Tone Level for incoming calls and Vodafone live! functions are set separately, , and are Incoming Call indicators.
- When Wallpaper is set (see P.8-2), cancel Show Indicators to hide indicators (see P.8-8).

Display Positions & Keys

V603SH features a rotating Display. Select from four positions. In this manual, most operations are described with handset open (clamshell open). However, mobile camera operations (see P.7-2) are described with Display in Viewer position.

Rotating Display

Hold handset with both hands when changing Display position.



3 Open handset



Clamshell Closed

Handset is closed with Display facing inward.

- Keep handset in this position when not in use.



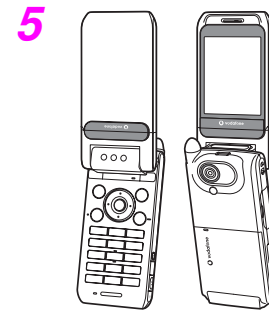
Place or answer calls with handset open (clamshell open) or in Viewer position.

Clamshell Open

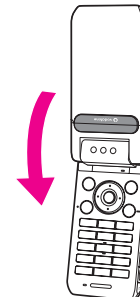
Handset is open with Display facing inward.

- Place or answer calls, or enter text.

4 Rotate Display 180 degrees clockwise



6 Close handset



Self Portrait Position

Handset is open with Display facing outward.

- Capture a self portrait.



- Place or answer calls with handset open (clamshell open) or in Viewer position.
- Do not rotate Display counterclockwise when changing to Self Portrait position.

Viewer Position

Handset is closed with Display facing outward.

- Use this position for mobile camera, TV or FM radio.
- Perform basic operations using [S], [C], [D], [L] or [M] instead of keys used with handset open (clamshell open).



Do not carry handset with Display in Viewer position. Damage may result.

Key Press Methods

When multiple functions are assigned to a key, the function activated varies by key press method.

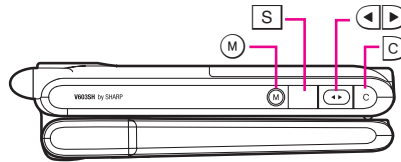
Press	Single soft press (basic key press method)
Long Press	Press and hold for 1+ seconds. (For [S], press firmly for 1+ seconds.)
Full Press ([S] only)	Half press to focus lens then full press to capture an image
Double Press ([M] only)	Double-press to activate Pen Light

Side Key Assignments (Viewer)

When handset is in Viewer position, use [S], [C], [D], [L] or [M] to operate handset.

In Standby

[S]	Long Press	Activate mobile camera
	Press	Open Index Menu
[C]	Long Press	Activate TV or FM
	Press	Open Mail menu
[D] ¹	Long Press	Open V-Appli Library ²
	Press	List User Shortcuts ²
[L] ¹	Long Press	Adjust Earpiece volume ²
	Press	Open Call History ²
[M]	Press	List User Shortcuts



¹Key arrow directions appear reversed when handset is held Side Keys down.

²Not available when Calendar appears in Standby (see P.8-3).

During Operations

Use Side Keys to execute corresponding keypad functions indicated below (except during calls, incoming calls, or while TV/FM, mobile camera or V-Application is active).

	Viewer Position	Clamshell Open
[S]	Long Press	📷
	Press	☰
[C]	Long Press	📺
	Press	✉
[D] ¹	Press	📺 or 📺 ²
	Press	📺 or 📺 ²

¹Key arrow directions appear reversed when handset is held Side Keys down.

²Depends on Display content.

Motion Control

Built-in sensor detects handset movement for the following functions.

MC Cursor	Tilt handset to move cursor	See below and P.1-31
MC Shortcut	Shake handset to activate functions in User Shortcut	See P.1-14, P.16-22
Shake Counter	Count the number of times handset is shaken	See P.16-26
Shake Sound	Shake handset to produce sound effects	See P.16-28
Compass	Find magnetic north to calculate direction	See P.16-29
Full Auto	Change screen orientation automatically	See P.6-22, P.6-24, P.8-8

Note

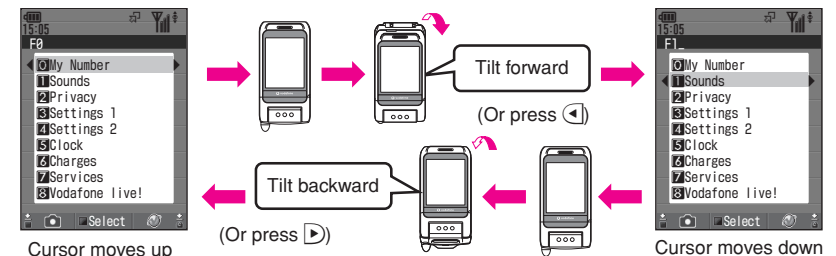
- Do not shake handset roughly. Handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Motion Control may not work correctly when:
 - Aboard trains or in vehicles
 - In steel-framed buildings
 - Near magnetized objects
 - Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
 - Near or inside elevators
- Motion Control may not work correctly after handset is placed near magnetized objects (see below for examples). In this case, adjust MC Sensor (see P.16-4 "Adjusting Sensor").
 - Magnets (for whiteboards, furniture, bags, etc.)
 - Audio speakers, magnetic necklaces, etc.

MC Cursor

Tilt handset to move cursor, instead of using ⬆, ⬅ or ➡. See P.1-31 for more.

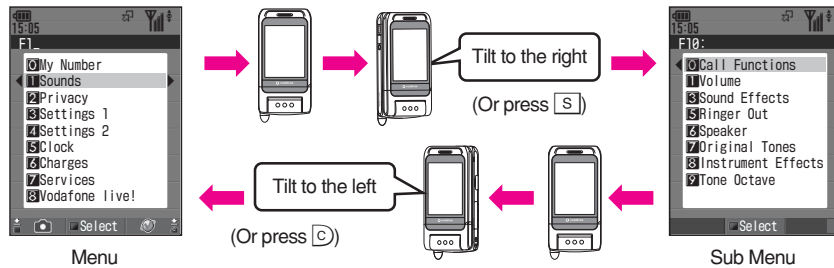
- Open Functions Menu and press [M] to activate MC Cursor. Press again to cancel.
- Press [M] to set position from which handset movements are based (Start Position).
- Activate MC Cursor in M-key Settings beforehand (see P.16-4).

Select Item



Tilt handset forward/backward, left/right or diagonally to navigate menus.

Proceed or Return



In Index Menu, etc., press [S] to proceed to the next menu.

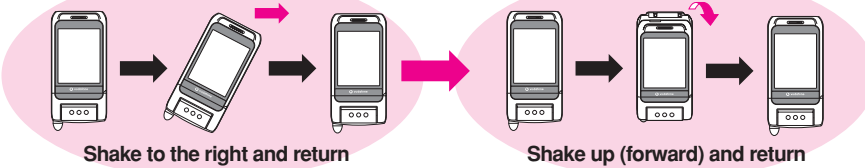
MC Shortcut

Shake handset in two directions sequentially to activate/open functions/windows via Motion Control. Functions must be set up in User Shortcut beforehand (see P.16-21 - 16-24).

- Open User Shortcut list, and shake handset in the corresponding motion pattern when appears (see P.16-23). Recognition tone sounds for each shake and the corresponding window opens. To cancel, press [M] before second shake is recognized.
- For better recognition, start the second shake after the first tone ends.
- See P.16-21 "User Shortcuts" for default settings.

Example: When Motion Pattern is Set to Right and Up

While appears in User Shortcut list



Note

- If motion pattern is not recognized even when completed within 10 seconds (default time-out period), **Invalid** appears with error tone and User Shortcut list returns.
- Recognition accuracy varies by user. Set patterns that are easily recognized.

Battery & Charger

Getting Started

Charge a new battery before use or after a period of disuse.

Battery Life

- Do not use or store battery at extreme temperatures. May shorten battery life.
 - Ideal working temperature is between 5°C - 35°C.
- Use specified Charger only. Battery may deteriorate, overheat or ignite.
- Replace battery if operating time is noticeably shorter than normal.

- Charging takes approximately 115 minutes (with handset power off).
 - **Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.**
- Charger and battery may become warm during charging.
- Move Charger away from home TVs or radios if interference occurs.

Precautions

- Use a dry cotton swab to clean handset, battery and Charger terminals.
- Avoid:
 - Extreme temperatures
 - Humidity, dust and vibration
 - Direct sunlight
- Do not leave battery uncharged. Charge at least once every 6 months.
- Use a case when carrying battery separately.

Charging

- Do not use Charger for other purposes.
- Battery may short-circuit, overheat or burst from contact with metal objects.
- Small Light illuminates red while charging. (It may take a while for the light to illuminate when handset power is off.)

Tip

- Battery must be inserted to charge handset.
- Handset will charge with power on. flashes and stays on when complete.
- **Handset will charge while open.**

Estimated Hours of Use (fully charged battery)

Continuous Call Time	130 minutes
Continuous Standby Time	450 hours
Continuous Operating Time	230 minutes
Continuous Playback Time	7.5 hours

Above values are calculated with Backlight Brightness set to **Level 4** (default).

- Continuous Call Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with both Power Saving and Panel Saving off, with stable signals.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed (clamshell closed) without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, temperature, etc.).
- Continuous Operating Time is measured while handset is operated without calls.
- Continuous Playback Time is measured while music is played in Off-Line Mode.
- The above values (Battery Time) are nominal values, measured under stable signal conditions.

Battery Time

Battery Time may shorten when handset is used in poor conditions:

- **Poor Usage Conditions**
 - Extreme temperatures (use within a range of 5°C - 35°C)
 - Dirty handset, battery or Charger terminals (charging may be hampered)
 - Weak signals or out-of-range
- **Operation**
 - TV or FM is active
 - V-Application is active
 - Station Service is in use
 - Repeated mobile camera use or barcode scanning
 - Frequent use of Mobile Light
 - Playing video images
 - Frequent use of Pen Light
 - Continuous Keypad use (Backlight stays on for long periods)
 - Use of Music Player/Voice Recorder
 - Frequent infrared transfers
 - Frequent opening/closing of handset
 - Frequent use of Motion Control
- **Setting**
 - Backlight/Keypad Light time is set longer
 - Wallpaper is animated
 - Screen Animation is used
 - Panel Saving is **Off**
 - Backlight is set brighter


Extend Battery Time

Adjust the following settings:

- **Backlight** (see P.8-6)
- **Lighting Time of Mobile Light** (see P.7-27) or **Pen Light** (see P.16-42)
- **Panel Saving** (see P.16-39)

When Battery Runs Out

A message appears and short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds unless charged.

Press  to stop short beeps. (Short beeps do not sound in Manner Mode.) If battery runs out during a call, short beeps sound every five seconds. After 20 seconds, the call ends and handset shuts down.

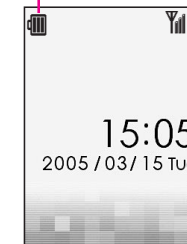
Battery Disposal


Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal, or bring them to a Vodafone shop. Follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

Battery Strength

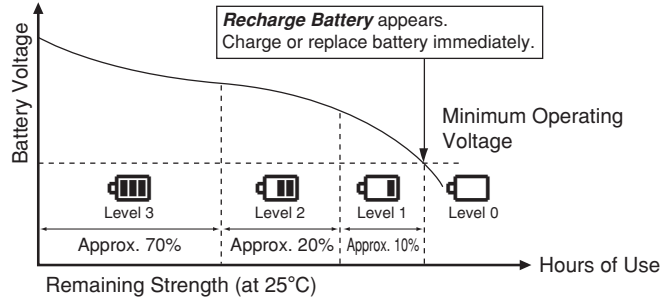
Strength Levels



When battery runs out () , **Recharge Battery** appears and short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

Indicator

Battery Strength indicator varies as shown.
Charge or replace when level is low.



Battery Strength & Environment

At low temperatures, battery is consumed faster.
At high temperatures, battery lasts longer.

- Note**
- Battery Strength indicator is for reference only.
 - At Level 1, some functions including Music Player, Voice Recorder, Motion Camera (MPEG) mode, etc. do not operate (see P.7-21, P.10-4, P.10-12, P.11-3).

Small Light & Battery Strength Indicator

Handset Power On

Small Light	Indicator (🔊)	Conditions
Off	Flashes	Ambient temperature is outside the range of 5°C - 35°C
Flashes red	Flashes	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Flashes	Charging
Off	Illuminate	Charging completed

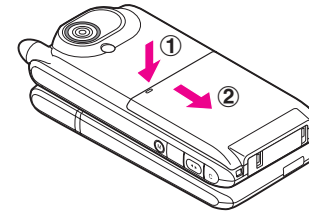
Handset Power Off

Small Light	Indicator (🔊)	Conditions
Off	Off	Ambient temperature is outside the range of 5°C - 35°C
Flashes red	Off	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Off	Charging
Off	Off	Charging completed

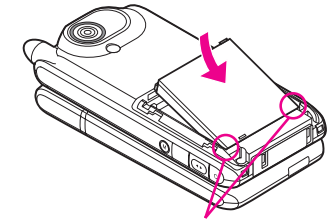
Installing & Removing Battery

Inserting

1 Press down and slide cover as shown

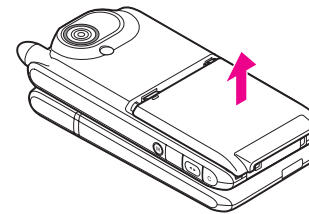


3 Insert battery

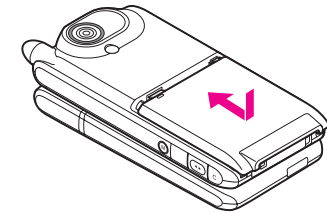


- With printed side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

2 Lift and remove cover as shown



4 Close cover



- Position and slide the cover as shown until it stops.

Tip

Lithium-ion battery is used for this product. Lithium-ion battery is a recyclable resource.

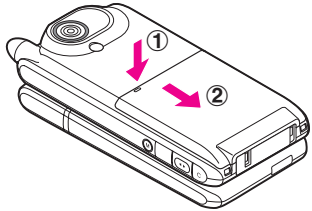
- To recycle a used battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown to the right.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not:
 - Short-circuit batteries
 - Disassemble batteries



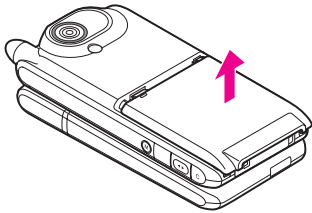
Li-ion

Removing

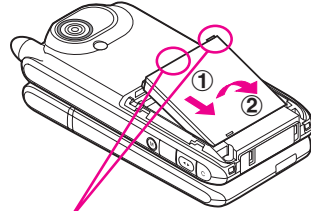
1 Press down and slide cover as shown



2 Lift and remove cover as shown



3 Remove battery as shown

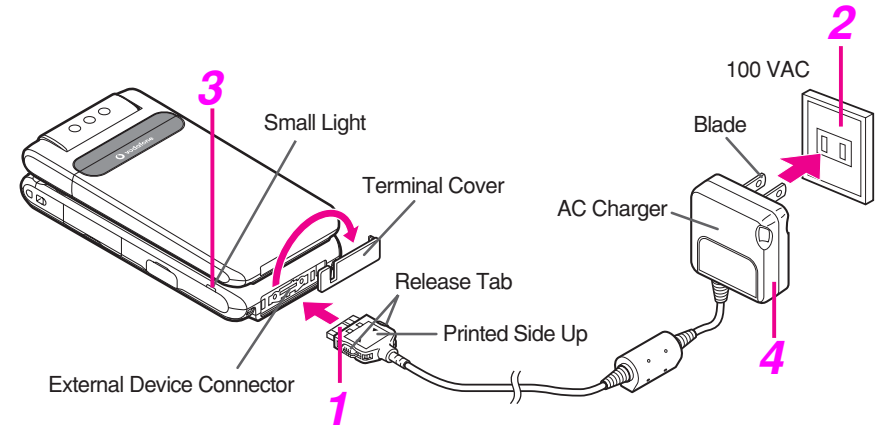


• Catch here and push as shown in ①, then lift as indicated in ②.

Note

- Turn handset power off before removing battery.
- Do not remove battery immediately after saving files, sending messages, etc.

Rapid Charger

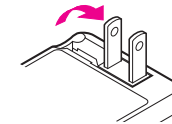


Use specified Charger only.

1 Open Terminal Cover and insert Charger connector until it clicks

2 Plug in Charger

- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-18).
- Extend blades. Fold back when not in use.



3 Charging is complete when light goes out

- See P.1-15 for charging time.

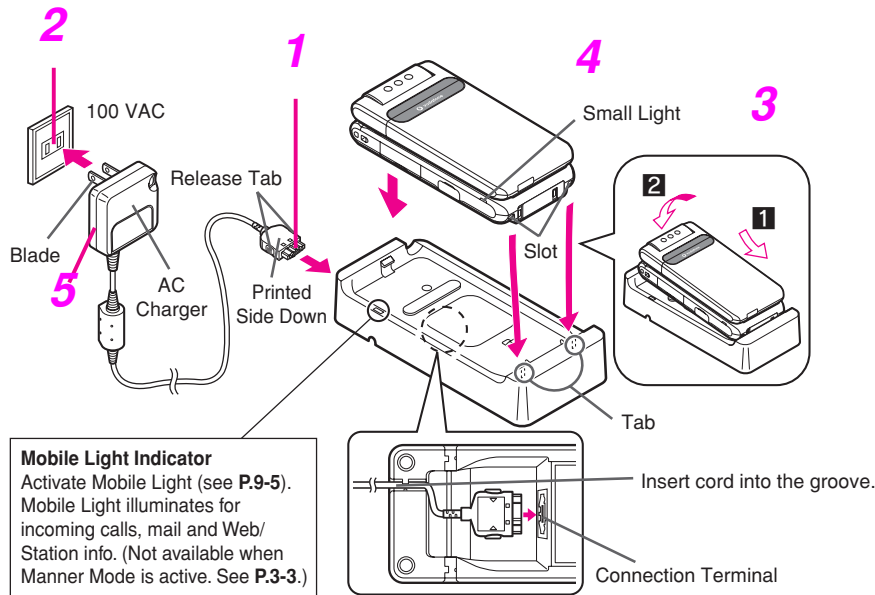
4 After Charging Unplug Charger from the AC outlet, then handset

- Squeeze release tabs and pull connector straight out.
- Cap Terminal Cover.

Note

Do not pull, bend or twist Rapid Charger cord.

Desktop Holder



Use specified Charger only.

1 Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder until it clicks

- Connection Terminal is on the back of Desktop Holder.

2 Plug in Charger

- Extend blades. Fold back when not in use.

3 Gently insert handset into Desktop Holder

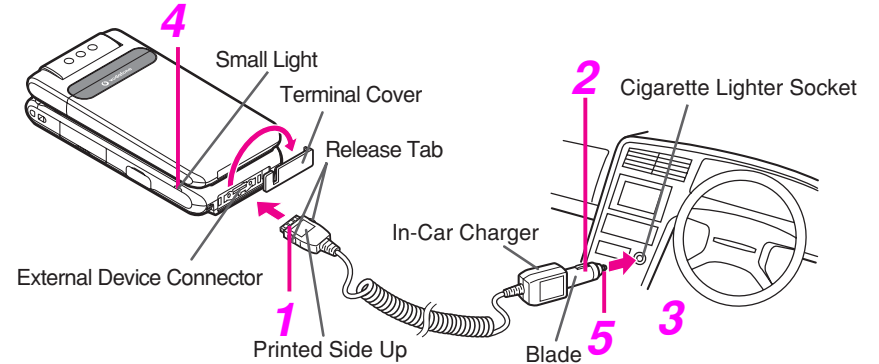
- Fit tabs into slots as shown in **1** and push handset as indicated in **2** until it clicks.
- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-18).

4 Charging is complete when light goes out

- See P.1-15 for charging time.

5 After Charging Unplug Charger from outlet and remove handset

In-Car Charger



1 Open Terminal Cover and insert Charger connector until it clicks

2 Plug in Charger

3 Start car engine

- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-18).

4 Charging is complete when light goes out

- See P.1-15 for charging time.

5 After Charging

Unplug Charger from cigarette lighter socket, then handset

- Squeeze release tabs and pull connector straight out.
- Cap Terminal Cover.

Note

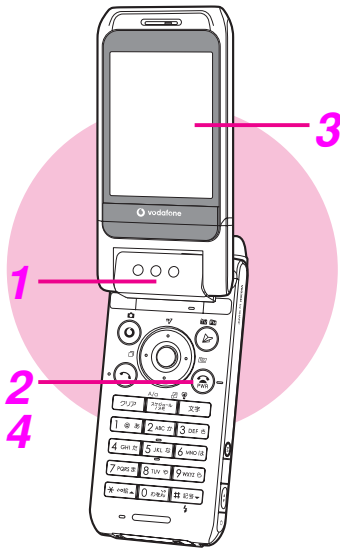
- Use In-Car Charger inside vehicles with a negative earth only.
- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.
- Never use handset while driving.

Tip

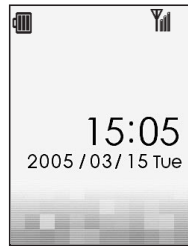
- For more information, see In-Car Charger manual.
- Use optional In-Car Holder to secure handset.

Handset Power On/Off

1 Getting Started



- 1 Open handset (clamshell open)
- 2 Press for 1+ seconds
- 3 Backlight illuminates and Power On Graphic appears



After graphic disappears, handset enters Standby (as shown above).

- 4 Press for 2+ seconds to exit
If set, Power Off Graphic appears.

Handset Clock Settings

- If date and time have not been set, a confirmation appears after Power On Graphic.
Choose **1 Yes** → Press → Clock Settings window opens (see P.1-26)
Choose **2 No** → Press → Standby appears without date and time

Note Set the current date and time before using handset functions (see P.1-26).

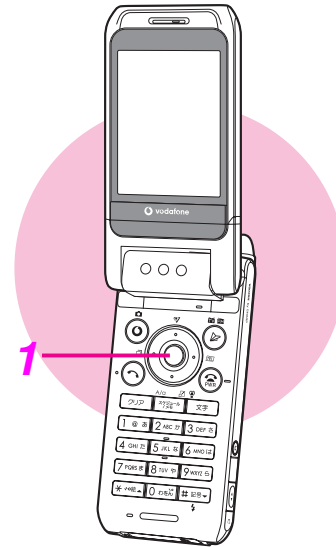
Tip

- Handset receives incoming mail or Web/Station information while closed.
- Display shuts down after a period of inactivity (see P.16-39 "Panel Saving").

Key Guard

Use Key Guard to lock handset keys and prevent accidental activation of functions or operations.

1 Getting Started



Activate

- 1 Press for 1+ seconds
 appears and Key Guard is set.

Tip **When Key Guard is Active**

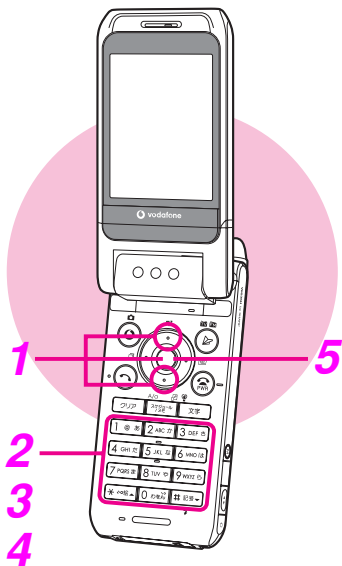
- Incoming calls temporarily cancel Key Guard. To answer calls, press keys for Anykey Answer (see P.2-6), or press for 1+ seconds in Viewer position. Key Guard reactivates after the calls end.
- Handset power does not turn off even if is pressed for 2+ seconds.

Cancel

- 1 In Standby, press for 1+ seconds
 disappears.

Clock Settings

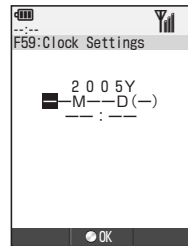
1 Getting Started



Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Clock

1 Select **Clock Settings** and press **OK**

2 Enter the year



Example: Year 2005 → 2 ABC 77 0 DEF 0 DEF 5 JKL 5

3 Enter the month and day

Example: March 15 → 0 DEF 3 DEF 1 0 DEF 5 JKL 5

4 Enter the time

Use the 24-hour format.

Example: 3:05 PM → 1 0 DEF 5 JKL 0 DEF 5 JKL 5

5 Press **OK**

Clock starts and Standby returns.
The day of the week is set automatically.

Cursor

Use **Left** or **Right** to move cursor (█ or highlight bar). Enter or edit characters at the cursor position.

Note When removing the battery for replacement, etc., Clock settings remain. However, should the handset go without power for an extended period of time (approximately one month), Clock will need to be reset.

Tip

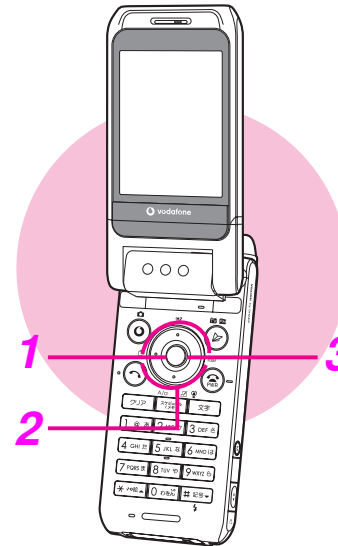
- When Clock has not been set, --/-- --/-- appears for date and time.
- Choose a Clock type and layout or use Calendar for Standby (see P.8-3).
- Clock can be set during calls.

Handset Menus

1 Getting Started

Index Menu

Access functions/operations from Index Menu.



1 Press **OK**



Index Menu opens.

- To customize Index Menu appearance, see P.8-9.

2 Use **Left** to select an item

To open Handy Features menu, press **OK**.

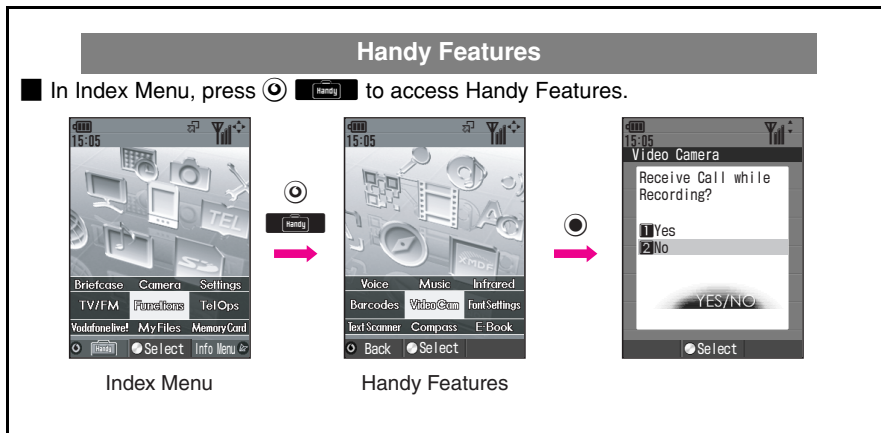
To open Information Menu, press **Right**.

3 Press **OK**

Menu for each item opens.

Index Menu Items

Briefcase	Use Schedule, Calculator, Alarm, etc.
Camera	Camera menu opens. Shoot images, scan barcodes, etc.
Settings	Customize display, sounds, etc.
TV/FM	Watch TV or listen to FM radio
Functions	Functions Menu opens (see P.1-28). Check and change settings of various functions.
Tel Ops	Create or search Phone Book entries. Check Redial and Call History.
Vodafone live!	Use Mail, Web, V-Application, Station, etc.
My Files	Open files saved in handset
Memory Card	Memory Card menu opens. Check files on SD Memory Card.

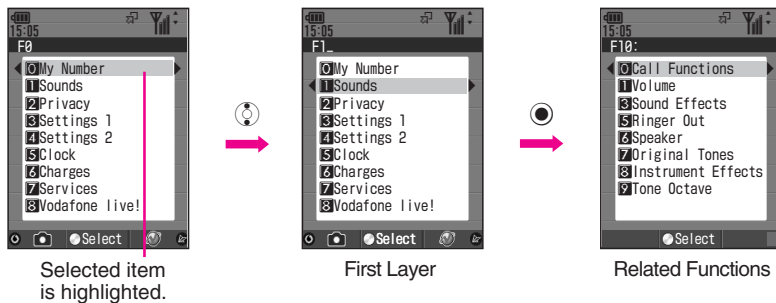


Functions Menu

In Index Menu, select **Functions** and press . Use Functions Menu to access handset functions and settings. A number is assigned to each handset function (see P.18-2).

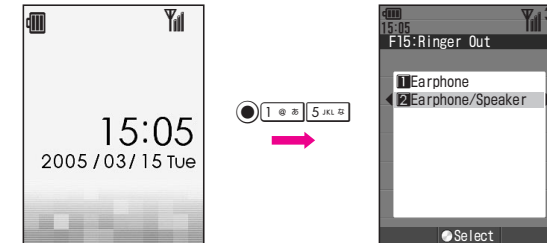
■ Selecting First Layer Items

Select an item with and press .



■ Selecting Functions by Numbers

In Standby, press to open Index Menu, then enter numbers. Corresponding function or menu opens.



Hot Switching (Mail)

■ During an operation, press for 1+ seconds → **Inbox opens (see P.4-3)** → **Use mail-related functions**

- Press to return.
- In a message window (not in Inbox List), press for 1+ seconds again to open Inbox (read only). Press to return to message window.
- Hot Switching is not available during calls, in Standby, or when V-Application is active. An error message appears if mail function is not available.

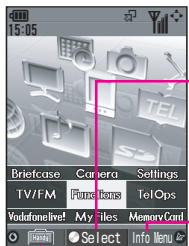
Hot Switching (Multi Menu)

■ During an operation, press for 1+ seconds → **Multi Menu opens** → **Select a function** → **Press**

- Press to return. (Press to end Calculator.)
- Multi Menu cannot be opened with the shortcut in a function opened from Multi Menu.
- In a function opened from Multi Menu, press for 1+ seconds to open Inbox (read only). Press to return to the previous function.
- Hot Switching is not available during calls, in Standby, or when V-Application is active. An error message appears if Multi Menu is not available.

Soft Keys

Soft Key functions appear at the bottom of Display.



- When **Select** appears, press **[Select]** to open selected menu items, execute functions, etc.
- When **Convert** appears, press **[Convert]** to convert kana to kanji, etc.
- When **Auto** appears, press **[Auto]** to execute the function.

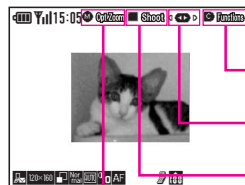
- Press **[Left]** to select or execute the assigned function or operation.
- Press **[Right]** to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

When **[Text]** appears while creating Original Ring Tone etc., press **[Text]** to execute the assigned operation.

Soft Key Assignments (Viewer)

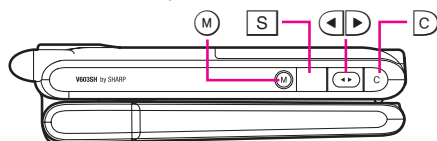
Soft Key functions appear at the top of Display when mobile camera is active in Viewer position.

Mobile Camera



- Press **[C]** for 1+ seconds to select or execute the assigned function or operation.
- Press **[C]** to select or execute the assigned function or operation.
- Slide **[Left]** or **[Right]** to select or execute the assigned function or operation.
- Press **[S]** to select or execute the assigned function or operation.
- Press **[S]** for 1+ seconds to select or execute the assigned function or operation.
- Press **[M]** to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

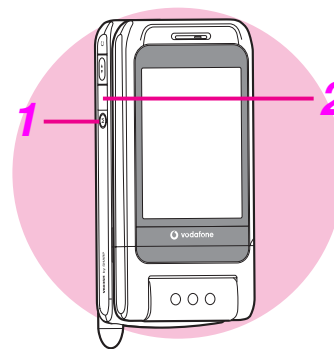
Other Windows



Using MC Cursor

Tilt handset to move cursor, instead of using **[Up]**, **[Left]** or **[Right]**. For more, see **P.1-13** "MC Cursor."

- Activate MC Cursor in M-key Settings beforehand (see **P.16-4**).
- Press **[M]** in menu. MC Cursor is not available when neither **[Up]** nor **[Down]** appears or when handset is closed (clamshell closed).



1 Press **[M]** and tilt handset (see **P.1-13**)

Keypad sound is heard each time handset tilts.

- Press **[M]** to cancel MC Cursor.
- To mute Keypad sound, see **P.9-6**.
- Tilt handset forward/backward, left/right or diagonally to navigate menus.

2 Press **[S]** to proceed

- Alternatively, tilt handset to the right (not available in Index Menu, Data Folder, etc.).
- Press **[Select]** when handset is open (clamshell open).

Assigning **[M]** Functions to Multi Key

- Activate Assign **[M]** Function in M-key Settings (see **P.16-4**) to use **[M]** instead of **[Select]**.
 - In Viewer position, press **[M]** to return to Standby quickly.
 - Pressing **[M]** does not turn handset power on/off, and does not end calls.
 - Setting Assign **[M]** Function cancels MC Cursor, and vice versa.


Viewer Setting

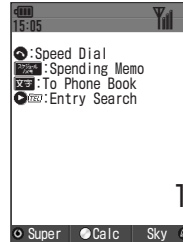
- Activate MC Sensor in Viewer Setting (see **P.16-4**). Shake handset in Viewer position to use **[Select]** functions except turning handset power on/off.
 - In Viewer position, shake handset to return to Standby quickly.


Note

- MC Cursor is canceled when:
 - Display position is changed
 - Calls, mail, etc. arrive
 - Display shuts down for Panel Saving
- If MC Cursor does not work correctly, adjust MC Sensor (see **P.16-4** "Adjusting Sensor").
- While MC Cursor is in use, screen orientation does not change automatically (see **P.6-22, P.6-24, P.8-8**).

Quick Operations

In Standby, enter numbers to access functions quickly. Accessible functions vary by the number of digits entered. (Functions shown to the right appear for single digits.) To activate functions, press the key next to the function (press  for Speed Dial). Quick Operations are not available in Viewer position.




Function	Digits							
	1	2	3	4	5-6	7-12	13-24	
Speed Dial (see P.5-16)	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	
Spending Memo (see P.16-41)	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	
Add to Phone Book (see P.5-3)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Entry Search ¹ (see P.5-15)	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	
Calculator (see P.16-40)	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	
Send 2-Touch Mail (see  P.3-17)	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	
Set Alarm ² (see P.16-8)	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	
Schedule ³ (see P.16-14)	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	

¹ Only Katakana Search is available.

² Enter four digits (24-hour format) to set Alarm. **Full** appears when there are five entries.

³ Enter four digits for month and day. Check entries for the next 12 months.

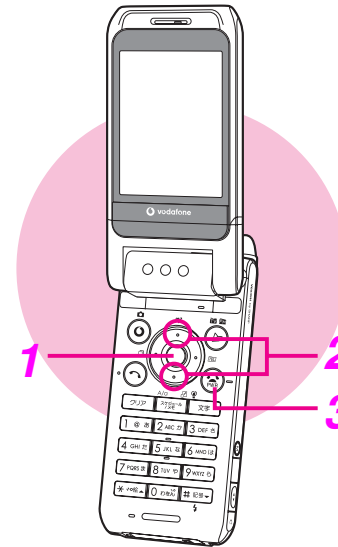
Keypad Shortcuts






In Standby, press Keypad or  for 1+ seconds to activate corresponding functions saved in User Shortcuts (see **P.16-22**).

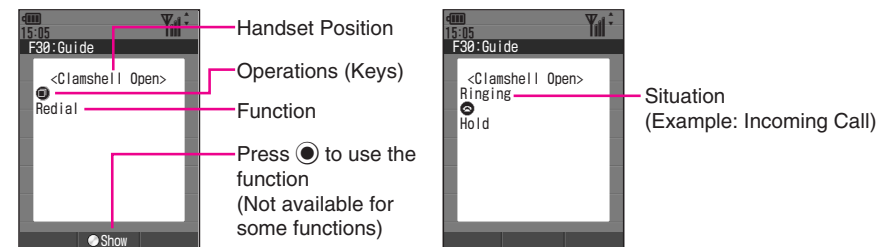
Guide

Open quick guides to functions inaccessible from Functions Menu.

Index Menu ► **Functions** ► **Settings 1**



- 1** Select  **Guide** and press . Pen Light guide appears.
- 2** Press  or . Guide for another function appears.
- 3** Press  to exit.

Display Content

Handset Codes

1

Getting Started

Both Security Code and Center Access Code are needed for handset use.

Security Code

9999 or the 4-digit number selected at initial subscription.

Security Code is required to use/change some handset functions.

- ✖ appears when Security Code is entered.
- If incorrect, **Invalid Code** appears. Enter correct Security Code.

Center Access Code

The 4-digit number in the contract, required to access Optional Services via landlines, and to subscribe to fee-based information.

Note

- Write down Center Access Code. If lost, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.18-21**).
- Do not reveal Security Code and Center Access Code. Vodafone is not liable for misuse or damages.

Tip

- Change Security Code as needed (see **P.15-2**).
- Do not attempt to change Center Access Code. Contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.18-21**) for details.

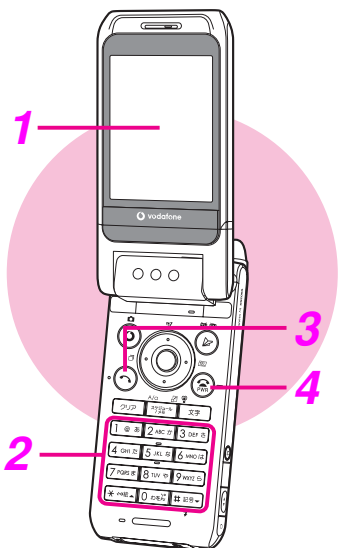


Basic Handset Operations

Initiating a Call

2

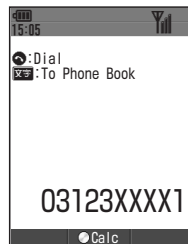
Basic Handset Operations



1 Confirm handset is on

- Check signal.
- Handset will not transmit when OUT, M, or P appears (see P.18-8).

2 Enter a phone number



- Include the area code even for local numbers.

Sending/Blocking Caller ID

- Press the following keys when placing a call.

■ Send..... 1 * 8 TUV * 6 WXYZ
 ■ Block..... 1 * 8 TUV * 4 CH

3 Confirm the number and press

Correcting Numbers

- Use \leftarrow to move cursor and press DEL to delete the digit above the cursor. Press DEL for 1+ seconds to delete the entire number and return to Standby.
- If you misdial, press END to hang up and try again.

Busy Numbers

- Press END to end the call and try again later.

4 Press END to end call

- Alternatively, close handset (clamshell closed).
 Cancel Close to End Call to hold the line (see P.2-3).

Viewer Position

Place calls with Display in Viewer position

■ Save the number to Phone Book first (see P.5-3).

Press S \rightarrow Select *Tel Ops* \rightarrow Press S \rightarrow Select Entry Search \rightarrow Press S \rightarrow Open a Phone Book entry (see P.5-14 - 5-15) \rightarrow Press S \rightarrow Menu \rightarrow Select *Dial* \rightarrow Press S

- In Viewer position, hold handset with Viewer in and Earpiece up.
- Side Key Assignments during Calls:

S	Open <i>Call in Progress</i> menu
C (Long Press)	End call
V	Increase volume
V	Decrease volume



Close to End Call

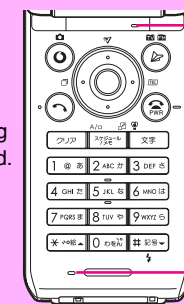
- When Close to End Call is canceled, the line remains connected even if handset is closed (clamshell closed). However, the other party hears no sound.

Press END \rightarrow Select *Functions* \rightarrow Press END \rightarrow Select Sounds \rightarrow Press END \rightarrow Select Call Functions \rightarrow Press END \rightarrow Select Incoming Call \rightarrow Press END \rightarrow Select Close to End Call \rightarrow Press END \rightarrow Choose Off \rightarrow Press END

- *Close to End Call* is active by default.

Note

- Do not cover handset microphone while talking.
- Avoid covering area over Internal Antenna (see P.1-7 Ant).
- Voice quality is affected depending on how and where handset is used.
- For better voice quality, talk with handset open (clamshell open).



Microphone (Viewer position)

Microphone (handset open)

Tip

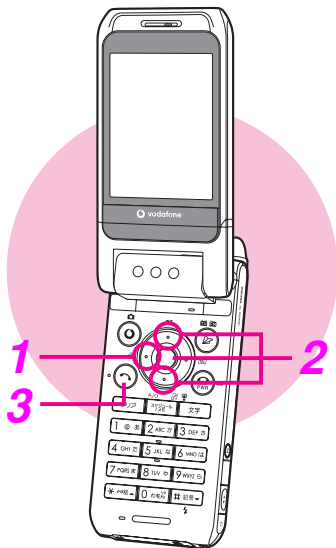
- Use Instant Display to see Call Time and Call Charge (see P.2-20 - 2-21).
- Confirm Total Talk Time (see P.2-20) and Total Charges (see P.2-21).
- To use Speaker Phone or Speaker during calls, see P.9-22.
- For information on international calls, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.18-21).

2

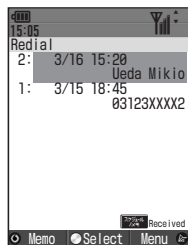
Basic Handset Operations

Redial

Place calls from Redial. Up to 20 recently dialed numbers are saved in Redial.



1 Press (☐)



Dialed numbers appear with date and time. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

2 Select a record and press

3 Press

Number is dialed.

Tip

- When the same number is dialed more than once, only the last record appears.
- Names in Secret Mode entries appear only in Secret Mode.
- Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
- When there are 20 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see P.2-16.

International Call & Send With Code

Preset the number to add before a phone number saved in Phone Book. Use International Call to place international calls and Send With Code to add one prefix such as 186 or 184.

Setup Preset

Preset the number to add before a phone number

Default International Call: 0046010, Send With Code: None

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Services ▶ Setup Preset

Select **1 International Call** or **2 Send With Code** ▶ Press ▶ Enter a prefix ▶ Press

- To change the prefix, select **1 International Call** or **2 Send With Code** ▶ Press ▶ Press (Long Press) ▶ Enter a new prefix ▶ Press
- Enter up to seven digits for International Call and up to six digits for Send With Code.

International Call & Send With Code

Dial from Phone Book using International Call and Send With Code

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Entry Search ▶ Open an entry ▶ Menu ()

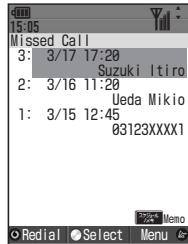
Select **International Call** or **Send With Code** ▶ Press

Handling Incoming Calls

Call History

Up to 20 received calls are saved in Call History (see P.2-16). When Caller ID is sent, numbers appear. Place calls to those numbers.

1 Press

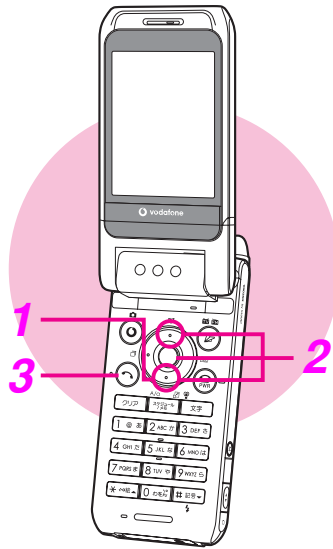


Received numbers appear with date and time. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

2 Select a record and press

3 Press

Number is dialed.



Tip

- Names in Secret Mode entries appear only when handset is in Secret Mode.
- Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
- When there are 20 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see P.2-16.

Placing Callers on Hold

Callers placed on hold hear a message explaining that you cannot answer their call right away and asking them to hold or call back later.

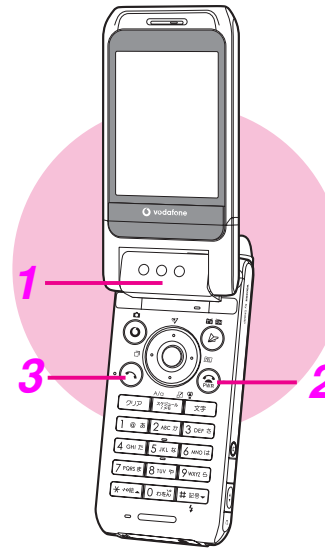
1 When a call arrives, open handset

2 Press

- Hold tone sounds for five seconds.
- No tone sounds when Ring Tone Level is set to **Silent**.

3 Press to answer the call

- Alternatively, press keys for Anykey Answer (see P.2-6).



Viewer Position

Place callers on hold with Display in Viewer position

When a call arrives, press (Long Press) ➔ To answer the call, press (Long Press)

- Alternatively, press to operate from Incoming Call Menu.

Hold or Reject with Clamshell Closed

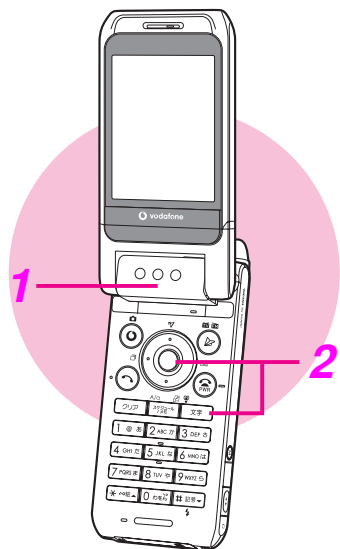
When Side Key Settings for Incoming Calls (see P.16-3) is set to **1 Hold** or **3 Reject Call**, press the assigned key for 1+ seconds during incoming calls to activate the function.

Note

- Press or close handset (clamshell closed) to end calls on hold. However, closing handset does not end the call if Close to End Call (see P.2-3) is canceled.
- Calls on hold end if callers hang up.

Message Recorder

Use Message Recorder to record caller messages on handset.



1 When a call arrives, open handset

2 Press 文字

Outgoing message plays and recording starts.

Press to play recorded messages (see P.16-6).

Tip

When less than seven seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded, **Memory Full Cannot Record** appears and Message Recorder is disabled.

Voice Mail

Unanswered calls are forwarded to Voice Mail (see P.17-4).

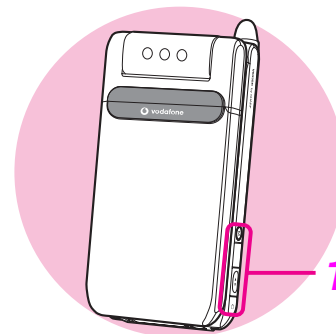
Clamshell Closed

When a call arrives, press a Side Key for 1+ seconds to activate the assigned function.

• Available Functions:

Hold	Place callers on hold	See P.2-9
Quick Silent	Mute ringer for incoming calls	See P.2-7
Reject Call	Reject and end the call	See P.2-9
Message Recorder	Record caller messages on handset	See P.16-5
Forward Voice Mail	Forward incoming calls to Voice Mail. (Available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas, and when used in those areas.)	See P.17-4

• **Message Recorder** is assigned to by default. To use other Side Keys during incoming calls, assign functions to them first (see P.16-3).



1 When a call arrives, press , , , or for 1+ seconds
Handset responds accordingly.

Note

When Message Recorder is set but cannot record (see P.16-5), Quick Silent is activated instead.

Tip

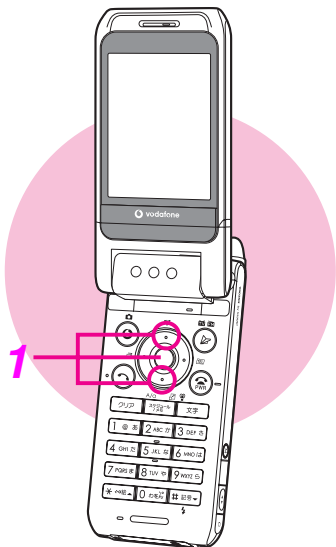
Assign function to each Side Key (see P.16-3).

Delayed Ringer

Activate Delayed Ringer to help screen one-ring sales calls. Handset ringer is delayed for three seconds for incoming calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book or Owner Profile. Delayed Ringer is **Off** by default.

2

Basic Handset Operations



Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ Incoming Call ▶ Delayed Ringer

1 Choose **On** and press **Enter**

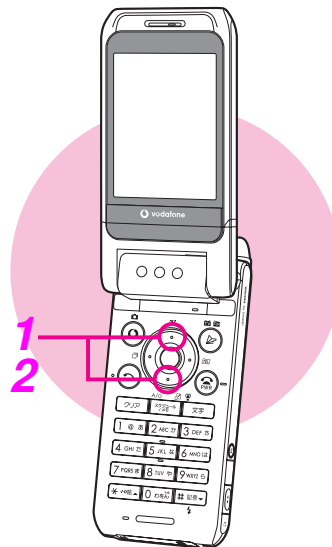
Engaged Call Operations

Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece volume (5 levels). Earpiece volume is **Level 5** by default.

2

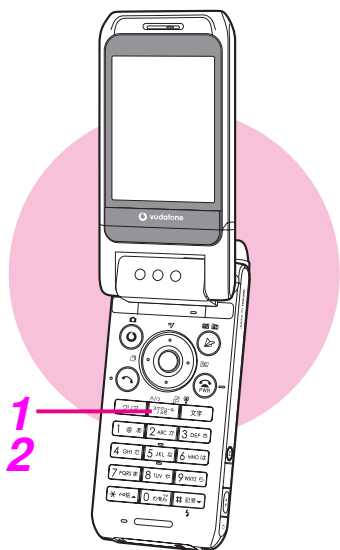
Basic Handset Operations



1 During a call, press **Up** or **Down**
2 Press **Up** (up) or **Down** (down) to adjust volume level

- Each press changes volume.
- Wait five seconds or press **Enter** to save the level.
 - Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.

Voice Memo



- 1 During a call, press **スクリーン** for 1+ seconds
Recording starts.
- 2 Press **スクリーン** to end recording
 - Recordings remain even after handset power is turned off.
 - To play or delete Voice Memo, see P.16-7.

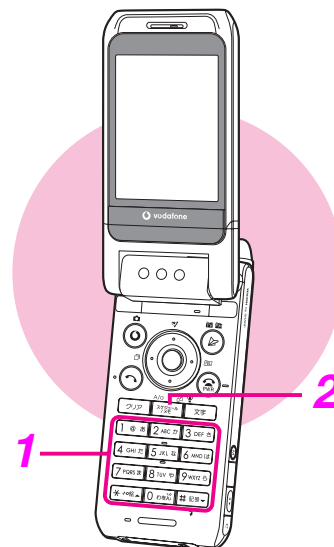
Note

Closing handset (clamshell closed) ends a call and Voice Memo if Close to End Call (see P.2-3) is active.

Notepad Memory

Save up to 3 sets of numbers during a call.

- Use up to 24 digits (0 - 9, * and #) per entry.
- When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.
- Save phone numbers from Notepad Memory to Phone Book.



- 1 During a call, use Keypad to enter digits
- 2 Press **スクリーン**
 - When the current call ends or another call arrives, entered digits are saved automatically.

Opening Entries Open saved Notepad entries

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops

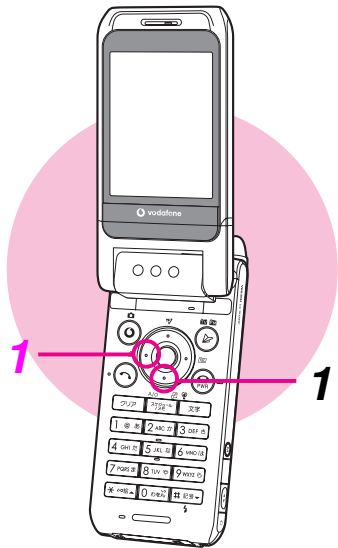
Select **Notepad Memory** ▶ Press **Call**

- Press **Call** to exit.
- To save to Phone Book, select an entry ▶ Press **Call** **Menu** ▶ Select **Add to Phone Book** ▶ Press **Call** ▶ See P.5-3 for more
- To delete, select an entry ▶ Press **Call** **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** or **Delete All** ▶ Press **Call** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **Call**
- Up to 3 sets of numbers appear, most recent first.
- Press **Call** to dial the number.
- If there is no entry, **Notepad Memory Not Found** appears.
- Alternatively, press **Call** **Call** **Menu** to open Notepad Memory.

Redial & Call History

2

Basic Handset Operations



Opening Redial Records

- 1 Press (☐)
Dialed numbers appear with date and time.
• When there is no Redial record, Call History appears.
■ Press to dial the number.
■ Press to return to Standby.

Opening Call History Records

- 1 Press (📞)
Received numbers appear with date and time.
■ Press to dial the number.
■ Press to return to Standby.

Delete

Delete Redial/Call History records

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops

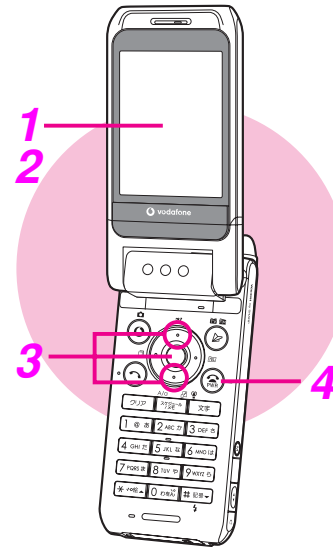
Select **Redial** or **Call History** → Press → Press **Menu** →
Select **Delete** or **Delete All** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

Call History Indicators

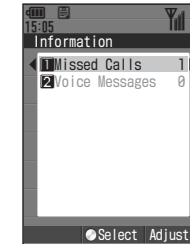
Call in Progress	Answered call
Missed Call	Unanswered call (including calls screened by Delayed Ringer)
Hold	Disconnected after hold
Message Recorder	Recorded on Message Recorder
Forward Voice Mail	Forwarded to Voice Mail Center
Reject	Rejected call
Payphone	Call from payphone
No Caller ID	Call without Caller ID

Information Menu

Information Menu opens for missed incoming communications.



- 1 A call arrives, then ends
Date and time of the call and Missed Call notice or Message Recorder notice appears.
- 2 After approximately five seconds, Information Menu opens



- 3 Use to select an item and press
 - Press or to see more.
 - Press to dial the number.
- 4 Press to exit

Opening Information Menu

■ When there is unconfirmed information, appears in Standby.
In Standby, press → Press **Info Menu**

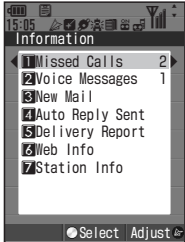
Tip

- After Step 2, press to close Information Menu without checking details. appears in Standby.
- See P.2-16 to reopen Missed Call details.

2

Basic Handset Operations

Information Menu Contents



Missed Calls	The number of missed calls appears
Voice Messages	The number of recorded messages appears (see P.16-5)
New Mail	Received new mail (see P.4-2)
Auto Reply Sent	Auto Reply message was sent (see P.6-3)
Delivery Report	Received new Delivery Report (see P.4-20)
Web Info	Received new Web information (see P.8-13)
Station Info	Received new Station information (see P.13-8)



- When mail at the Center reaches 80% of capacity, Information Menu opens. Select **Mail Box Full** and press (a warning appears). Retrieve or delete Server Mail (see P.5-2 - 5-4).
- Information Menu opens when memory is full. Select **Memory Full** and press (a warning appears). Delete messages, files, etc. to free memory.
- **Auto Reply Sent** disappears only when it is confirmed from Information Menu.
- **Auto Reply Sent** appears even if the delivery failed.
- When messages saved as Auto Send are sent, **Auto Send** appears on Information Menu.

Information Menu Settings

Reset

All Information Menu tallies return to 0

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Info Menu Settings* ▶ *Reset*

Choose **Yes** ▶ **Press**



Mail Box Full and **Memory Full** remain even after resetting Information Menu.

Incoming Light

Set Mobile/Small Light to flash for unconfirmed information

Default Mobile Light

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Info Menu Settings* ▶ *Incoming Light*

Select an item ▶ **Press** ▶ Select **Mobile Light** ▶ **Press** ▶
Select a color ▶ **Press**

- To set Small Light, select **Small Light** ▶ **Press**
- Small Light color is fixed.
- Select a different color for each type of information.
- When Delayed Ringer is active, Mobile/Small Light does not flash for missed calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book or Owner Profile.



Using Mobile Light

- Off-Line Mode Small Light (see P.3-6) takes priority over Information Menu Mobile Light setting.
- Using Mobile Light shortens Battery Time.

Using Small Light

- Off-Line Mode Small Light (see P.3-6) takes priority over Information Menu Small Light setting.
- Using Small Light shortens Battery Time.

Time Out Setting

Use Time Out Setting to automatically return to Standby 10 seconds after Information Menu opens for new items

Default Time out Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Info Menu Settings* ▶ *Time Out Setting*

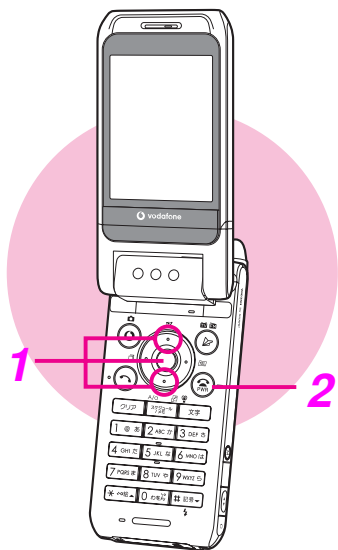
Select **Time out On** or **Time out Off** ▶ **Press**

Call Time

Check estimated Call Time of the most recent call or Total Talk Time.
Call Time appears for calls made and those received.

2

Basic Handset Operations



Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges*

- 1 Select **3** *Call Time* and press **⓪**
 For Total Talk Time, select **2** *Total Talk Time* → Press **⓪**
- 2 Press **⓪** to exit

Reset Reset Total Talk Time

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges* ▶ *Total Talk Time* ▶ *Reset* (⓪)

Enter Security Code → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press **⓪**

Instant Display Set Call Time to appear automatically after each call

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges*

Select **4** *Instant Display* → Press **⓪** → Choose **1** *On* or **2** *Off* → Press **⓪**

- Call Charge also appears for calls you made.

Tip

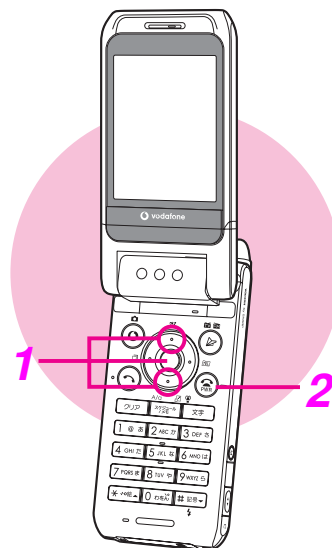
- Total Talk Time and Call Time remain even if handset power is turned off.
- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. On hold time is counted.

Call Charge

Check estimated Call Charge of the most recent call or Total Charges.

2

Basic Handset Operations



Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges*

- 1 Select **1** *Call Charge* and press **⓪**
 For Total Charges, select **0** *Total Charges* → Press **⓪**
- 2 Press **⓪** to exit

Reset Reset Total Charges

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges* ▶ *Total Charges* ▶ *Reset* (⓪)

Enter Security Code → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press **⓪**

Instant Display Set Call Charge to appear automatically after each call

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges*

Select **4** *Instant Display* → Press **⓪** → Choose **1** *On* or **2** *Off* → Press **⓪**

- Call Charge will not appear after leaving a 3 Way Call (Break Away).
- Call Time appears at the same time.

Tip

- Total Charges and Call Charge remain even if handset power is turned off.
- When the most recent call is a received call, -----*Yen* appears.
- Sum of charges appears for 3 Way Calling (Optional Service).
- Call Charge will not appear when calls are interrupted due to weak signal.

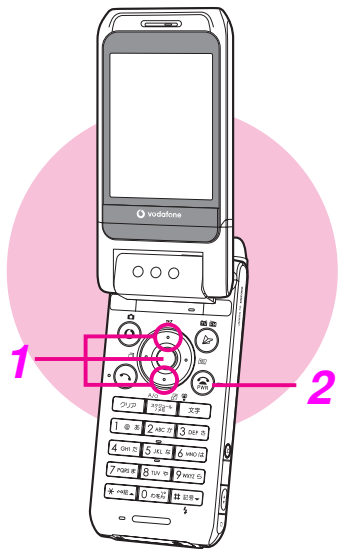
My Number & Owner Profile

Confirm handset phone number.

- Save name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, personal data and photo.
- Handset phone number cannot be changed or deleted on the handset.

2

Basic Handset Operations



Index Menu ▶ *Functions*

- 1 Select My Number and press**
 - To open Owner Profile, press **Details**
 - Enter Security Code
 - Owner Profile contents are similar to those of Phone Book (see **P.5-13**).
 - To create QR Code for Owner Profile, see **P.16-35**.
- 2 Press to exit**

Save Save Owner Profile

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *My Number* ▶ *Details* () ▶ *Enter Security Code* ▶ *Menu* () ▶ *Edit*

Select an item ▶ For more, see Steps 1 - 3 on P.5-17 "Editing Phone Book"

Delete Delete Owner Profile

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *My Number* ▶ *Details* () ▶ *Enter Security Code* ▶ *Menu* () ▶ *Delete*

Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press

Copy Copy Owner Profile

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *My Number* ▶ *Details* () ▶ *Enter Security Code* ▶ *Select an item* ▶ *Menu* ()

Select **Copy** ▶ Press ▶ For more, see Step 5 and onward on P.4-16 "Copy/Cut & Paste"

- Image for Photo cannot be copied.



Manner Mode

Minding Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

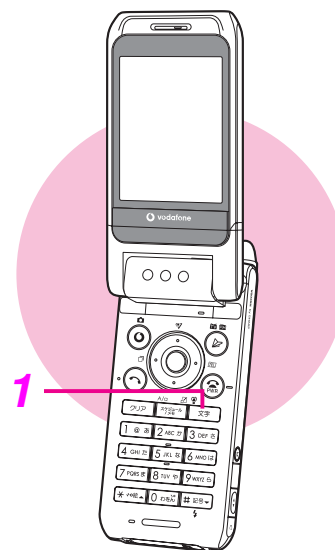
- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner-Related Features


- **Manner Mode: see P.3-3**
Press Manner Key to automatically mute all Ring Tones and activate Vibration Mode for incoming calls, mail and information.
- **Vibration Mode: see P.9-4**
Activate Vibration Mode to use handset vibration to alert you to incoming calls, mail, etc. in public places.
- **Volume Settings: see P.9-2**
Decrease or mute Ring Tone volume for incoming calls/mail/information as well as tones for Web or V-Applications when carrying handset in public places.
- **Whisper Mode: see P.3-4**
Use Whisper Mode to increase microphone sensitivity, allowing you to lower your voice and speak softly when you must use handset in public places.
- **Off-Line Mode: see P.3-6**
Use Off-Line Mode to suspend all handset transmissions. When Off-Line Mode is active, incoming and outgoing calls/mail as well as incoming Vodafone live! information are blocked.
- **Message Recorder: see P.16-5**
Use Message Recorder to handle incoming calls when it is inappropriate or unsafe to answer.

Manner Mode


Activate/Cancel



Activating Manner Mode

- 1 Press  for 1+ seconds
🔔 and **Manner Mode Set** appear. 📧 (Message Recorder), 📳 (Vibration), 📵 (Silent) and 📞 (Rising Tone) appear as set in Manner Settings (see P.3-4).
 - Besides in Standby, activate or cancel Manner Mode in Web information, mail windows (List View, message window, etc.) or while using V-Applications.


Canceling Manner Mode

- 1 In Standby, press  for 1+ seconds
🔔 disappears and Manner Mode is canceled.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Keypad Sound, Power On/Off, error and barcode recognition tones are muted. Beeps in Call Waiting and 3 Way Calling are heard.
- Shake Sound volume depends on Manner Settings.
- Shutter Click sounds even in Manner Mode.
- Sound played on Music Player, Voice Recorder or TV/FM are muted (can be heard through Headphones).
- Even in Manner Mode, Ring Tone can be heard through Headphones. Volume is fixed to Level 1.
- Settings for Manner Mode are applied to: Message Recorder, Ring Tone Level, Vibration, LED Indicator, Whisper Mode, Sound Volume, Alarm Volume, Alarm Vibration, V-Appli Volume and V-Appli Vibration.

Tip

- Activate Whisper Mode (🔔 flashes) to speak softly.
- Whisper Mode can be set On/Off during a call by pressing  for 1+ seconds. After the call, Whisper Mode will be canceled.
- When Message Recorder is recording messages, the other party's voice is heard through Earpiece.

Manner Mode Settings

Customize Manner Mode settings.

Default settings:

Message Recorder	On	Ring Tone Level	Silent (All)	Vibration	On (All)
LED Indicator	Small Light	Whisper Mode	On	Sound Volume	Silent
Alarm Volume	Silent	Alarm Vibration	On	V-Appli Volume	Silent
V-Appli Vibration	On				

Message Recorder/ Whisper Mode Activate Message Recorder or Whisper Mode

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 2* ► *Manner Settings*

Select **1** *Message Recorder* or **5** *Whisper Mode* ► Press ● ►

Choose **1** *On* or **2** *Off* ► Press ●

- Use Whisper Mode to increase microphone sensitivity, allowing you to lower your voice and speak softly when you must use handset in public places.

Ring Tone Level Set Ring Tone volume

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 2* ► *Manner Settings* ► *Ring Tone Level*

Select from **1** *Incoming Call* to **6** *Confirm Delivery* ► Press ● ►

Select **1** *Silent*, **2** *Rising Tone* or **3** *Level 1* ► Press ●

- For *Silent*, Speaker is muted and sounds can be heard through Headphones. Volume is fixed to Level 1.

Vibration Set Vibration

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 2* ► *Manner Settings* ► *Vibration*

Select from **1** *Incoming Call* to **6** *Confirm Delivery* ► Press ● ►

Choose **1** *On* or **2** *Off* ► Press ●

Alarm Volume Adjust Alarm Volume

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 2* ► *Manner Settings* ► *Alarm Volume*

Adjust level ► Press ●

Alarm Vibration Handset vibrates when Alarm Time arrives

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 2* ► *Manner Settings* ► *Alarm Vibration*

Choose **1** *On* or **2** *Off* ► Press ●

LED Indicator Select *Normal*, *Small Light* or *Off*

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 2* ► *Manner Settings* ► *LED Indicator*

Select from **1** *Normal* to **3** *Off* ► Press ●

Normal	LED flashes as set in Call Functions (see P.9-2)
Small Light	Small Light flashes
Off	No LED flashes

Sound Volume/ V-Appli Volume Adjust Sound Volume or V-Appli Volume

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 2* ► *Manner Settings*

Select **6** *Sound Volume* or **7** *V-Appli Volume* ► Press ●

For **6** *Sound Volume*, adjust level ► Press ●

For **7** *V-Appli Volume*, select **1** *Silent* or **2** *Level 1* ► Press ●

V-Appli Vibration Handset vibrates while using V-Applications

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 2* ► *Manner Settings* ► *V-Appli Vibration*

Choose **1** *On* or **2** *Off* ► Press ●

Vibration

- Handset vibrates even when Vibration for Call Functions (see P.9-4) or Alarm (see P.16-11) is set to *Off* or *SMAF Link*.

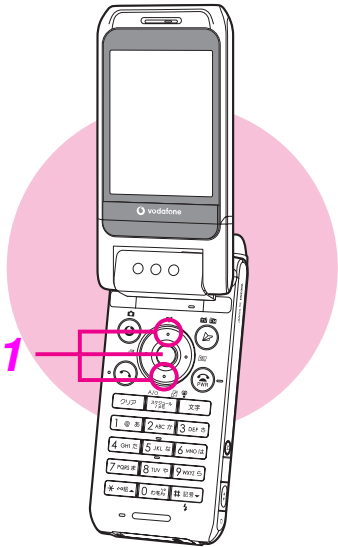
Off-Line Mode

Use Off-Line Mode to suspend all handset transmissions.

- In Off-Line Mode, incoming and outgoing calls as well as Vodafone live! transmissions are blocked.
- Off-Line Mode is **Off** by default.

3

Manner Mode



Activating Off-Line Mode

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 1 ▶ Off-Line Mode

- 1 Choose **1 On** and press **⓪**
☑ appears.

Canceling Off-Line Mode

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 1 ▶ Off-Line Mode

- 1 Choose **2 Off** and press **⓪**
☑ disappears and Off-Line Mode is canceled.

Tip

- When Off-Line Mode is set while a Network V-Application (see **⓪ P.10-7**) is paused, **V-Appli Paused Cannot Connect to Network in Off-line Mode Off-line Mode On?** appears. Choose **1 Yes** and press **⓪** to enter Off-Line Mode. (Network connection is disabled until Off-Line Mode is canceled.)
- While handset is closed (clamshell closed) or Display shuts down for Panel Saving in Off-Line Mode, Small Light flashes red, green and orange.



Entering Characters

Character Selection

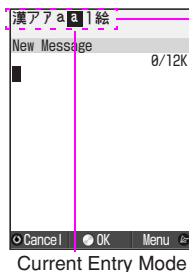
Use Kana and Pager (see P.4-9) to enter alphanumerics, Symbols, hiragana, kanji, katakana and Pictographs. With the exception "Pager Code" on P.4-9, most text entry operations are described using Kana Mode.

Entry Modes

Press to toggle between character types as follows:

a → 1 → 絵 → 漢 → ア → ア → a → a

Alternatively, use to toggle between character types after pressing once.



Available Modes

漢	Kanji (hiragana)	A	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
ア	Double-byte katakana	a	Single-byte alphanumerics (lower/upper case)
ア	Single-byte katakana	1	Single-byte number
A	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)	絵	Pictograph Code
a	Double-byte alphanumerics (lower/upper case)	区	Character Code

Upper & Lower Case

In double- or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press to toggle between upper case and lower case. For Pager Mode (see P.4-9), in double- or single-byte character mode, press to toggle between upper and lower case.



Pictograph & Character Codes

Press to toggle as follows:
Pictograph Code 1 → Pictograph Code 2 → Pictograph Code 3 → Pictograph Code 4 → Pictograph Code 5 → Pictograph Code 6 → Character Code → Pictograph Code 1
 • Pictograph Code page number appears at the bottom.

- Tip**
- Handset Character Codes correspond to 6,355 kanji.
 - Some characters are not available for mail addresses, etc.

Key Assignments

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.

Example: In katakana entry, press three times for ウ.

When entering characters, press to toggle between character options in reverse. (Not available for entering single-byte number, Pictographs and Character Codes.)

Example: Enter し, then press to return to あ.

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Pictograph Code 1 - 6 & Character Codes
	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@. / _ - 1 □ (space)	1	1
	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	A B C a b c 2	2	2
	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	D E F d e f 3	3	3
	たちつてとっ	タチツテトツ	G H I g h i 4	4	4
	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l 5	5	5
	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	M N O m n o 6	6	6
	まみむめも	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s 7	7	7
	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	T U V t u v 8	8	8
	わりるれろ	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z 9	9	9
	わをんー。 ↓ (Line Break)	ワヲンー。 ↓ (Line Break)	.. 0 ↓ (Line Break)	0	0
	.. Log/Double-byte Symbol/Pictograph Code ¹	.. 2	Single-byte Mail/ Web Extensions ³	* - ,(Pause) ⁴	_____
	Log, Double-byte Symbol ⁵ /Pictograph Code			#	_____
	Conversion (Up)	Cursor Up			
	Conversion (Down)	Cursor Down ↓ (Line Break)			
	Cursor Left				
	Cursor Right				
	Change Character Type				
	Toggle case (for some characters)	Toggle case + Toggle mode (upper & lower/lower case)	_____	_____	_____
	Delete One Character/ Cancel Conversion	Delete One Character			Delete Code/ One Character
	Delete All				
	Recover up to 64 deleted characters ⁶				
	OK				
	Phonetic Conversion	_____			Log/Switch Pictograph Code 1 - 6 & Character Code
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumerics Conversion	_____			Pictograph Code 1 - 6

¹ Disabled until hiragana is converted.

² - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

³ Extensions are listed for easy entry.

⁴ - and , (Pause) are for phone number entry.

⁵ Single-byte for single-byte katakana/alphanumeric entry.

⁶ Press once for each character to recover immediately after deleting. [Not available after deleting text with (Long Press).]

Entering Characters

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

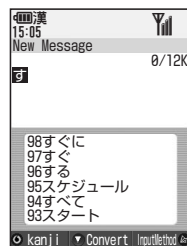
Following the example below, enter 鈴木 to learn how to enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode. Switch to double-byte or single-byte katakana mode to enter katakana. Alternatively, enter hiragana and then select katakana from the word suggestion list.

4

Entering Characters

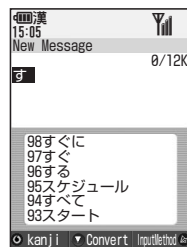
1 Press [3 DEF ㇿ] three times

Word suggestions change as hiragana are entered.

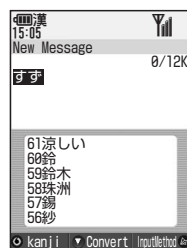


2 Press [C] first.

• When the next character is on the same key, press [C] first.

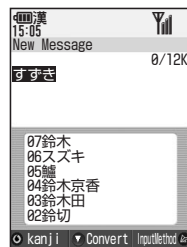


3 Press [3 DEF ㇿ] three times and press [* ㇿ]



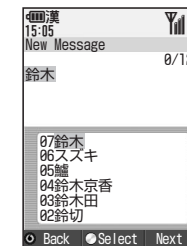
4 Press [2 ABC カ] twice

• To enter hiragana without converting to kanji, skip to Step 6.

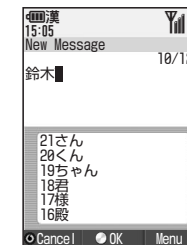


5 Press [C] Convert and use [C] to select a word

- To see other suggestions, press [Next] or [Back].
- To exit the list, press [フリガナ].
- To change segment, see "Segmenting Phrases" below.



6 Press [C]



4

Entering Characters

Learning Function

- The most recently used word appears first in the list.

Predictive & Previous Usage

- Use **Predictive** and **Previous Usage** to convert hiragana to kanji more quickly.

Predictive	Word suggestions change as up to 5 hiragana are entered
Previous Usage	Suggests words/characters likely to follow entry based on previous entries

- Both functions are active by default (see P.4-13).

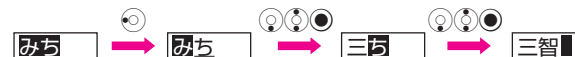
User Dictionary

- Save frequently used words/phrases to select from the word suggestion list (see P.4-14).

Segmenting Phrases

If the word is not in the list, press [フリガナ] after Step 5 to exit. Then use [C] to segment hiragana to convert separately.

Example: Segment みち into み and ち.



■ Selecting Multiple Converted Words

Press

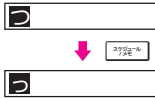
Example: To enter 西山大輔



Small Kana (つ, ツ, etc.)

Enter small hiragana あ, い, う, え, お, つ, や, む and よ as well as small katakana.

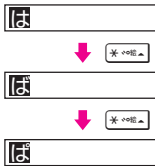
1 Enter a character and press



Adding * or °

1 Enter a character and press

- In kanji (hiragana)/double-byte katakana entry, press the key once to add * to か (Ka) row, さ (Sa) row and た (Ta) row characters, and press twice to remove. For は (Ha) row characters, press once to add *, twice to add ° and three times to remove.



Tip

In Single-byte Katakana Entry

- Press once to add * and twice for °. Symbols are single-byte.
- Press to remove * or °.

Entering Alphanumerics

Enter alphanumerics in double-byte alphanumerics (upper & lower case) or single-byte alphanumerics (upper & lower case) mode. Alternatively, enter numbers in single-byte number mode.



- In double-byte or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press to toggle between upper and lower case.
- When the next character is on the same key (example: entering a then b), press first to move cursor.

Symbols, Pictographs & Emoticons

Symbols & Pictographs

1 Press or to open Log List (Log List is available in some entry modes)

Recently used Symbols/Pictographs appear.

- -- appears by default or when Log List is deleted (see below).

2 Use to select one and press

- Repeat Step 2 to enter more.

To see more lists, press or . The list toggles as follows:

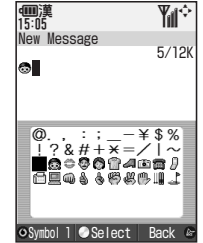
Log List → Symbol List (1 - 3) → Pictograph List (6 - 1)

- Press to toggle the list in reverse order.

- Press to scroll down.

3 Press a key (-) to exit list and enter the assigned character

- Alternatively, press Back to exit list.



Deleting Log List

- In a text entry window, press Menu → Select Input/Conversion → Press Clear Symbols → Press → Select OK → Press

- Press twice to return to the text entry window.

- Log List cannot be deleted in Pictograph Code mode.

In Pictograph Code Mode

- To enter a Pictograph directly, enter 2 digits (see P.17-8 - 17-10).

- To edit a code mid-entry, press to clear first digit then enter correct digits.

- To select from Pictograph List, follow these steps.

Press List → Select a Pictograph → Press

- To toggle through list 1 - 6 and Log List, press .

Tip

- Single-byte Symbols do not appear in Log List.
- Symbols are double or single-byte according to the character type. (Pictographs are all double-byte.)
- Alternatively, enter きごう and press Convert. Some Symbols can be selected.

Emoticons

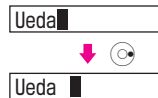
- 1 In a text entry window, press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Emoticons** and press
- 3 Select an emoticon and press
 - Alternatively, enter a descriptive word such as **わーい** or **うーん** and press **Convert**. Corresponding emoticons can be selected.
 - Enter two digits (01 - 50) to jump to the emoticon assigned to the number.

Tip

- Emoticons cannot be entered in Pictograph Code (1 - 6) mode.
- For other emoticons, enter **かお** and press **Convert**.

Space

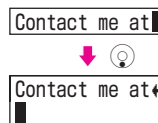
- 1 In a text entry window, press
- Alternatively in alphanumeric entries, press seven times to enter a space.



Line Break

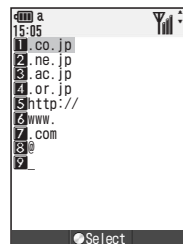
Insert line breaks in mail message text, Text Memo, BBS, etc.

- 1 Press at the end of text
 - To insert line breaks in text, press until appears. For kanji (hiragana) entry mode, then press . Line break is inserted at the cursor position.
 - Keystroke count varies by character entry mode (see P.4-3).



Mail & Web Extensions

- 1 In alphanumeric entry, press
- 2 Select an extension and press
 - Mail addresses and URLs are single-byte.



Character Code

Use multi-digit Character Codes to enter characters.

- 1 In Character Code entry mode, enter four digits (see P.18-9 - 18-12)

Pager Code

- 1 In a text entry window, press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Input/Conversion** and press
- 3 Select **Input Method** and press
- 4 Select **Pager** and press
 - Pager Code entry window opens.
 - To switch to Kana Mode, select **Kana** → Press
- 5 Enter two digits (see P.4-10)
 - Pager Mode is active until switched to Kana Mode.

Character Entry Modes

- For text entry in Pager Mode, press to toggle between character modes as follows:
 - Single-byte lower case (P) → Pictograph Code 1 - 6 (絵) & Character Code (区) → Double-byte lower case (P)
 - Press to toggle between Pictograph Code 1 - 6 and Character Code mode.
- Press to toggle between upper and lower case.

Tip

- Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion is disabled in Pager Mode.
- To enter * or * , see Pager Code List on P.4-10.

Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

1 Enter hiragana and press

- To enter **AM**, press and then press .

2 Use to select a word and press

あ	@	い	.	う	/	え	_	お	Space
か	A	き	B	く	C	け	Space	こ	Space
さ	D	し	E	す	F	せ	Space	そ	Space
た	G	ち	H	つ	I	て	Space	と	Space
な	J	に	K	ぬ	L	ね	Space	の	Space
は	M	ひ	N	ふ	O	へ	Space	ほ	Space
ま	P	み	Q	む	R	め	S	も	Space
や	T	ゆ	U	よ	V	—	—	—	—
ら	W	り	X	る	Y	れ	Z	ろ	Space
わ	,	を	.	ん	Space	— (Long Sound),。 Line Break			Space

- Hiragana to Number Conversion (hiragana with * or ° is converted to the same numbers):
 - あ (A) row...1 ■ か (Ka) row...2 ■ さ (Sa) row...3 ■ た (Ta) row...4
 - な (Na) row...5 ■ は (Ha) row...6 ■ ま (Ma) row...7 ■ や (Ya) row...8
 - ら (Ra) row...9 ■ わをん— (Long Sound),。 Line Break...0

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

Quick Conversion helps reduce keystrokes needed to enter frequently used words. A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Use Quick Conversion in kanji (hiragana) mode only.

Example: To enter **微妙**

Normal Conversion	(び) (み) (よ)
Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)	(ば) (ま) (や) (あ) (convert)

1 Enter hiragana and press

Cursor turns green.

- While cursor is green, use to segment entered hiragana and then convert one segment at a time.

To cancel Quick Conversion, press → Press for normal conversion

2 Use to select a word and press



The most recently used word (mostly nouns) appears first.

One Hiragana Predictive Entry

Enter hiragana and initiate Quick Conversion. Words starting with a hiragana in the same row (**あ, い, う, え, お** for **あ**) appear. Word suggestions vary by time of day.

Example: When **あ** is entered

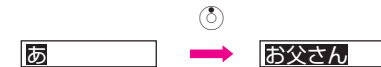
5:00 - 10:59	11:00 - 16:59	17:00 - 22:59	23:00 - 4:59
朝一番 朝帰り 行ってきます いってらっしゃい ⋮	あちい~ 後でね いただきま~す♪ 移動中 ⋮	遊ぼう 明日 急いで行くよ 今どこ? ⋮	アウチ!! ありがとう いえーい!!! 行こうね ⋮

- Words in the list are preset by time blocks.
- If Clock is not set, only words for 11:00 - 16:59 are available.

One Hiragana Word Call

Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for. The most recently selected word appears first.

Example: You entered **あたあさわ** and selected **お父さん** last time.



Conversion Settings

Disable Predictive/Previous Usage

Disable **Predictive** or **Previous Usage** (see P.4-5)

Default On

- In a text entry window, press **Menu** → Select **Input/Conversion**
 → Press → Select **Predictive** or **Previous Usage** → Press
 → Choose **Off** → Press

Reset Learning

Clear log of words selected in kanji conversion, Predictive, etc.

- In a text entry window, press **Menu** → Select **Input/Conversion**
 → Press → Select **Reset Learning** → Press → Select **OK** → Press

- Words saved in User Dictionary remain.

User Dictionary (Japanese Only)

Save up to 100 frequently used words/phrases and assign Title Words in hiragana to entries. In text entry windows, enter Title Word and convert. Entries appear among word suggestions. Save up to five entries per Title Word.

New Entry

Save words/phrases to User Dictionary

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *User Dictionary* ▶ *New Entry*

Enter a word/phrase ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Enter Title Word** ▶ **Press** ●

• Enter up to 15 characters per word/phrase and eight characters in hiragana per Title Word.

Edit

Edit or delete entries

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *User Dictionary* ▶ *Edit*

Edit

Select a word/phrase ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Edit** ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Edit Title Word** ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Select** 1 **Overwrite** or 2 **New Entry** ▶ **Press** ●

Deleting One Entry

Select a word/phrase ▶ **Press** ⌂ **Menu** ▶ **Select** 2 **Delete** ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Choose** 1 **Yes** ▶ **Press** ●

Deleting All

Press ⌂ **Menu** ▶ **Select** 3 **Delete All** ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Choose** 1 **Yes** ▶ **Press** ●

V603SH Download Dictionary (Japanese Only)

Download specialized V603SH Download Dictionaries from Sharp's *Space Town* Mobile Internet site. Activate up to two dictionaries at one time to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among word suggestions.

For details, access Sharp's *Space Town* Mobile Internet site (see  P.8-12).

Acquire Dictionary

Activate downloaded dictionaries

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *User Dictionary* ▶ *Acquire Dictionary*

Select a number ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Select a dictionary** ▶ **Press** ●

■ To replace current dictionary, select a number ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Press** ⌂ **Menu** ▶ **Select** **Change** ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Select a dictionary** ▶ **Press** ●

From Data Folder

■ **Press** ● ▶ **Select** *My Files* ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Select** 1 **Data Folder** ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Select a dictionary file** ▶ **Press** ⌂ **Menu** ▶ **Select** **Save Dictionary** ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Select a number** ▶ **Press** ●

■ When a file is already saved, **Overwrite?** appears ▶ Choose 1 **Yes** or 2 **No** ▶ **Press** ●

Cancel

Cancel dictionary

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *User Dictionary* ▶ *Acquire Dictionary*



Select a number ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Press** ⌂ **Menu** ▶ **Select** **Cancel** ▶ **Press** ●

Editing Characters

Deleting

1 Use  to select a character and press 

The highlighted character is deleted.


- Recover up to 64 characters deleted with . Press  once for each character to recover immediately after deleting. Pressing any other key disables the recover function.

Kinoshita



Kinoshita

Note

Press  for 1+ seconds to delete an entire entry. Characters deleted in this manner cannot be recovered.

Replacing

1 Press  to delete a character

2 Enter another character

Mikako



Miko



Miki

Copy/Cut & Paste

When **Menu** appears, copy or cut and paste text (up to 15,000 single-byte characters) into the same window or another.

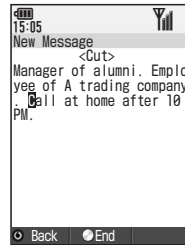
- 1 In a text entry window, press **Menu**
- 2 Select **1 Copy** or **2 Cut** (to move) and press **OK**
- 3 Move cursor to the first character of text and press **OK**

Start point is set (**End** appears).

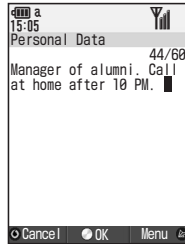
To change the start point, press **Left Arrow**.

- 4 Move cursor to the end of text and press **OK**
- 5 Open text paste target window and press **Menu**
- 6 Select **3 Paste** and press **OK**

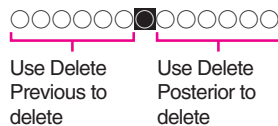
- 7 Move cursor to target location and press **OK**
- Text is inserted.



Example



Deleting Text Before or After Cursor

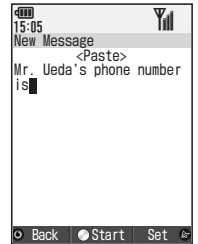


- 1 Press **Menu**
- 2 Select **6 Delete Posterior** or **7 Delete Previous** and press **OK**
- 3 Press **OK**

Using Phone Book

Insert Phone Book entry items into text entry windows. Select from names, phone numbers, mail addresses or Personal Data.

- 1 In a text entry window, press **Menu**
 - 2 Press **TEL**
 - 3 Open a Phone Book entry
 - To search Phone Book, see Steps 2 - 4 in "Phone Book Search" on P.5-14.
 - 4 Use **Left Arrow** to select an item and press **OK**
 - 5 Use **Right Arrow** to move cursor to target location
 - 6 Press **OK**
- Selected item is inserted.



Inserting TEL: or mailto:

- When **<Paste>** appears in New Message window, follow these steps after Step 5.
 - Press **Set** → Select **1 TEL: or 2 mailto:** → Press **OK**

Insert Owner Profile

- In a text entry window, press **Menu** → Press **Profile** → Select **1 Profile** → Press **OK** → Enter Security Code
 - For more, see Steps 4 - 6 above.

Text Memo

Save frequently used phrases for use in mail message, etc.

- Save up to 20 Text Memo phrases to handset and 300 to SD Memory Card.
- When memory is full, delete text to make room for new ones (see P.4-20).

Entering Text

- Save up to 1,000 single-byte characters in Memo format and 128 single-byte characters in Note format.
- Ten editable Text Art are saved by default. Edit and replace default entries.

Memo Format

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase

- 1 Select Text Memo and press**
Titles or the first part of saved text appear.
 - To open text, select one ▶ Press
 - To switch to SD Memory Card, press Menu ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press
- 2 Press Menu**
- 3 Select **Create New** and press**
- 4 Select **New Memo** and press**
- 5 Enter text and press**
 - To save to SD Memory Card, press .
 - To switch back to handset, press .
- 6 Choose **Yes** and press**
Text is saved.
 - To save more text, repeat Steps 2 - 6.

Saving from Message or Phone Book

- In a text entry window, press Menu ▶ Select **4 Save Text Memo** ▶ Press
- ▶ Move cursor to the first character of text ▶ Press
- ▶ Move cursor to the end of text ▶ Press
- ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Memo Format

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Text Memo

- 1 Press Menu**
- 2 Select **Create New** and press**
- 3 Select **New Note** and press**
- 4 Select **Body Text** and press**
- 5 Enter text and press**
- 6 Select **Category** and press**
- 7 Select a category and press**
 - To check date and time of entry and last edit, select **Details** ▶ Press
 - Press to return.
- 8 Press Set**
 - To save to SD Memory Card, press .
 - To switch back to handset, press .
- 9 Choose **Yes** and press**
 - To save more text, repeat Steps 1 - 9.

Tip Note format Text Memo can be sent via infrared (see P.14-3).





Text Memo Functions

Edit







Edit Text Memo

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Text Memo

Edit Memo

Select text → Press  **Menu** → Select *Edit* → Press  → Edit → Press  → Select **1** *New Entry* or **2** *Overwrite* → Press 

Edit Note

Select text → Press  **Menu** → Select *Edit* → Press  → Select *Body Text* or *Category* → Press  → Edit text → Press  → Press  **Set** → Select **1** *New Entry* or **2** *Overwrite* → Press 

Delete Single Text Memos

Select text → Press  **Menu** → Select *Delete* → Press  → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press 

To Data Folder

Save Note format Text Memo to Data Folder (Etc.). Text is saved as vFile (see P.13-40).

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Text Memo

Select text → Press  **Menu** → Select *To Data Folder* → Press  → Enter title → Press  → Select a folder → Press 

- Memo format text is saved in text format.
- Create sub folders if necessary.

Change to Vnote

Change Memo format text to Note format

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Text Memo

Select text → Press  **Menu** → Select *Change to Vnote* → Press 

- Text Memo contents may change when converting formats.
- Note cannot be converted to Memo.



Phone Book

Saving to Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Items

Item	Description	
: Name	Enter up to 18 single-byte characters. Use kanji, hiragana, katakana (double or single-byte), alphanumerics (double or single-byte) and Pictographs.	
: Reading	Katakana, alphanumerics or Symbols appear as names are entered (up to 18 single-byte characters including * and *)	
: Phone Number	Enter up to three phone numbers (24 digits each)	
: Mail Address	Enter up to three mail addresses (60 single-byte characters each)	
: Group	Sort entries into 10 Groups (0 - 9). Change Group names or set Ring Tone by Group.	
: Personal Data	Add personal details. Use up to 60 single-byte characters.	
: Secret Mode	Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret Mode entries	
: Photo	Select an image to appear when you open a Phone Book entry. Activate Picture Call/Mail to see the image set here for incoming calls/mail.	
Option Settings	Personal Ring Tone	Set Ring Tone by caller
	Incoming Notice	Set Ring Tone by sender
	Picture Call/Mail	Set images to appear by caller or sender. When Photo is set, Picture Call/Mail is activated automatically.
	Mail Folder	Messages are sorted into folders
	Auto Reply	Send a reply automatically to messages from specified senders

- Save up to 500 entries (000 - 499) in Phone Book (handset).
- Save up to 10,000 entries (0000 - 9999) in Phone Book (SD Memory Card).

Note **Back-up Important Information**
Keep a separate copy of important information. When battery is exhausted or removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect information recovery. Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration.

Tip Use Phone Book Lock to protect entries from accidental alteration and to restrict access to Phone Book information (see P.15-3).

New Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, reading, phone number and mail address.

Name

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Add to Phone Book

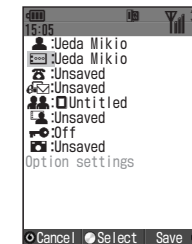
1 Enter a name

2 Press

- Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear after :
- Reading does not appear for Pictographs, pasted characters and names entered with Quick Conversion.
- Katakana, roman letters, numbers and Symbols appear in single-byte.

■ To correct reading, select : ▶ Press ▶ Edit reading ▶ Press

■ To cancel, press **Cancel** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press



Phone Book Details

Phone Number

After entering a name, move on to the following steps.

1 In Phone Book Details, select : and press

Number entry window opens.

2 Enter a phone number

- Include the area code for landline phone numbers.
- Press twice to insert - between digits. (- counts as a digit.)
- To correct phone number, press to move cursor ▶ Press to delete a digit at the cursor position ▶ Enter a phone number (Press for 1+ seconds to clear all.)

3 Press

4 Select an icon and press

■ To save additional phone numbers, select : **Unsaved** ▶ Press ▶ Repeat Steps 2 - 4

Tip **Entering Push Tones**
Press three times to enter , (Pause).
Each , indicates a one-second pause. The subsequent numbers or characters are also sent as Push Tones (see P.16-2).

Mail Address

After entering a phone number, move on to the following steps.

- 1 In Phone Book Details, select and press
- 2 Enter a mail address
- 3 Press
- 4 Select an icon and press

To save additional mail addresses, select : **Unsaved** → Press → Repeat Steps 2 - 4

5

Phone Book

Group

- In Phone Book Details, select : → Press → Select a Group → Press

Personal Data

- In Phone Book Details, select : → Press → Enter information → Press

Photo

- To use an image from Data Folder:
In Phone Book Details, select : → Press → Select **1 Data Folder** → Press → Select an image → Press twice
 - Some images in Data Folder may be too large for Phone Book Photo.
- To capture an image:
In Phone Book Details, select : → Press → Select **2 Sha-mail Shoot** → Press → Frame image on Display → Press twice
 - See P.7-11 for more about capturing images.

Incoming Calls while Editing

- Contents are temporarily saved for later editing. Contents reappear after the call ends.

Saving

- 1 In Phone Book Details, press **Save**
Memory No. entry window opens. Assign a Memory No. to each Phone Book entry.
 - To save to SD Memory Card, see P.5-7.
- 2 Enter Memory Number (000 - 499)
Entry is saved to Phone Book.
 - Use Headphones to call the number saved in Memory Number 000 (see P.16-45).
 - Use Speed Dial to call numbers saved in Memory Numbers 000 - 099 (see P.5-16).

Assign Memory No. Automatically

- Press to assign the smallest available number.
- To specify a range of numbers, enter hundreds or tens digit and press .
 - To specify hundreds, enter first digit → Press .
Example: Enter . The range is 300 - 399.
 - To specify tens, enter two digits → Press .
Example: Enter . The range is 210 - 219.

Warning Messages

On Display	Cause	Operation
Overwrite?	The Memory Number is already in use	Choose 1 Yes and press to overwrite the entry. Choose 2 No and press to enter another Memory Number. To assign Memory Number automatically, see the above column.
Memory Full Cannot Save	All Memory Numbers are in use	Overwrite or delete entries (see P.5-17)
Secret Data saved	The number is already used for a Secret Mode Phone Book entry	Activate Secret Mode (see P.15-7) to overwrite

5

Phone Book

Saving from Redial or Call History

Index Menu ► Tel Ops

- 1 Select **4 Redial** or **5 Call History** and press **⊙** (see P.2-16)
- 2 Press **⊙** **Menu**
- 3 Select **Add to Phone Book** and press **⊙**
- 4 **New Entry**
 - 1 Select **1 New Entry** and press **⊙**
 - 2 Enter name and press **⊙**
Phone number is entered automatically. Complete other fields and save the Phone Book entry.

New Item

- 1 Select **2 New Item** and press **⊙**
- 2 Open a Phone Book entry (see P.5-14 - 5-15)
Icon list appears.
 - When three phone numbers are already saved, the phone number is not added.
 - Complete other fields and save the Phone Book entry.

Note Call History records without Caller ID cannot be saved to Phone Book.

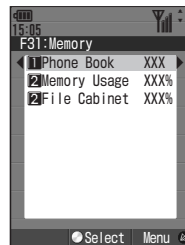
Tip

- Exchange Phone Book entries via infrared with compatible devices (see P.14-2).
- Numbers and mail addresses in received messages or Notepad Memory (see P.2-15) can be saved to Phone Book.

Phone Book Memory Status

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 1

- 1 Select **1 Memory** and press **⊙**
Number of entries appears.
 - To see details, select **1 Phone Book** and press **⊙**. Numbers of saved phone numbers and mail addresses appear (up to 1,500 each).
 - Press **⊙** to exit.



Saving to SD Memory Card

- 1 Enter names, phone numbers and mail addresses, and press **⊙** **Save** (see P.5-3 - 5-5)
- 2 Press **⊙** **☰**
 - **☰** appears only when SD Memory Card is inserted.
 - To switch back to handset, press **⊙** **☰** again.
- 3 Enter Memory Number (0000 - 9999)
Entry is saved to SD Memory Card.

Assign Memory No. Automatically

- Press ***+RE*** to assign the smallest available number.
- To specify a range of numbers, enter thousands, hundreds or tens digit and press ***+RE***.
 - To specify thousands, enter first digit ► Press ***+RE***
Example: Enter **[3 DEF 3] [*+RE*]**. The range is 3000 - 3999.
 - To specify hundreds, enter two digits ► Press ***+RE***
Example: Enter **[2 ABC 1] [*+RE*]**. The range is 2100 - 2199.
 - To specify tens, enter three digits ► Press ***+RE***
Example: Enter **[1 @ 2] [2 ABC 1] [3 DEF 3] [*+RE*]**. The range is 1230 - 1239.

Tip Exchange Phone Book entries between handset and SD Memory Card (see P.12-9).

Option Settings

After entering phone numbers or mail addresses (see P.5-3 - 5-4), move on to Option Settings: Personal Ring Tone, Incoming Notice, Picture Call/Mail, Mail Folder and Auto Reply (see **⊙** P.6-3). Select Set All or One Number/Address.

Set All	Apply the same setting to every number/address in a single Phone Book entry. Set All cancels One Number/Address settings.
One Number/Address	Apply setting to each number/address independently. One Number/Address cancels Set All settings.

Personal Ring Tone

Select incoming call Ring Tones, vibration and Mobile/Small Light patterns for numbers saved in Phone Book.

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Add to Phone Book ▶ Enter name ▶ Enter number/address ▶ Option settings ▶ Personal Ring Tone

1 Apply Same Setting to All

- 1 Select **1 Set All** and press ●

Settings by Number

- 1 Select **2 One Number/Address** and press ●

- 2 Select a number and press ●

- 3 Choose **1 On** and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **2 Off** ▶ Press ● ▶ Proceed to Step 5

Canceling Personal Ring Tone

- 1 Choose **3 Off** and press ●

Option Settings menu returns.

- Proceed to Step 6 to exit.

2 Select **1 Ring Tone** and press ●

3 Select a tone or melody and press ●

■ For details, see P.9-3.

4 For other settings, select from **2 Vibration** to **4 LED Indicator** and press ●

Menu for each setting opens.

■ For details, see P.9-4 - 9-5.

5 Press ● **Set**

Personal Ring Tone is set and Option Settings menu returns.

■ For One Number/Address, press ● **Set** twice to return to Option Settings menu.

6 Press ● **Set**

Note

- When source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved, Ring Tone is set to **Pattern 1**.
- To apply Personal Ring Tone setting to Secret Mode entries, activate Secret Mode first.

Incoming Notice

Customize incoming mail settings for numbers/addresses saved in Phone Book. For phone numbers, Incoming Notice settings apply only to Vodafone handset numbers.

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Add to Phone Book ▶ Enter name ▶ Enter number/address ▶ Option settings ▶ Incoming Notice

1 Apply Same Setting to All

- 1 Select **1 Set All** and press ●

Settings by Number/Address

- 1 Select **2 One Number/Address** and press ●

- 2 Select a number or address and press ●

- 3 Choose **1 On** and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **2 Off** ▶ Press ● ▶ Proceed to Step 5

Canceling Incoming Notice

- 1 Choose **3 Off** and press ●

Option Settings menu returns.

- Proceed to Step 6 to exit.

2 Select **1 Ring Tone** and press ●

3 Select a tone or melody and press ●

■ For details, see P.9-3.

4 For other settings, select from **2 Vibration** to **5 Ring Time** and press ●

Menu for each setting opens.

■ For vibration and Mobile/Small Light patterns, see P.9-4 - 9-5.

■ To set Ring Time, select **5 Ring Time** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter time (01 - 99 seconds) ▶ Press ●

5 Press ● **Set**

Incoming Notice is set and Option Settings menu returns.

■ For One Number/Address, press ● **Set** twice to return to Option Settings menu.

6 Press ● **Set**

Note

- When source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved, Ring Tone is set to **Mail**.
- To apply Incoming Notice to Secret Mode entries, activate Secret Mode first.

Picture Call/Mail

Set Phone Book entry Photo to appear for incoming calls/mail.

- **Picture Call/Mail** can only be selected when an image is set for Photo.
- Picture Call/Mail is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Tel Ops* ▶ *Add to Phone Book* ▶ *Enter name* ▶ *Enter number/address* ▶ *Set image for Photo* ▶ *Option settings* ▶ *Picture Call/Mail*

- 1 Choose **1 On** and press ●
■ To cancel, choose **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

- 2 Press ● **Set**

Note Picture Call/Mail is canceled when source image in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved.

Mail Folder

Specify Mail Folder for each Phone Book entry to sort messages automatically. For phone numbers, Mail Folder settings apply only to Vodafone handset numbers.

Index Menu ▶ *Tel Ops* ▶ *Add to Phone Book* ▶ *Enter name* ▶ *Enter number/address* ▶ *Option settings* ▶ *Mail Folder*

- 1 Select **1 Inbox Auto Sort** or **2 Sent Auto Sort** and press ●
- 2 **Apply Same Setting to All**
1 Select **1 Set All** and press ●

Settings by Number/Address

- 1 Select **2 One Number/Address** and press ●
- 2 Select a number or address and press ●
- 3 Choose **1 On** and press ●
■ To cancel, choose **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

Canceling Mail Folder

- 1 Choose **3 Off** and press ●
Mail Folder menu returns.
 - Proceed to Step 4 to exit.

- 3 Select a folder and press ●

Folder is set and Mail Folder menu returns.

■ For One Number/Address, press ● and ● **Set** to return to Mail Folder menu.

- 4 Press ● **Set**
Option Settings menu returns.

- 5 Press ● **Set**

Auto Reply

Specify numbers/addresses to send a reply automatically to messages from them.

- For phone numbers, Auto Reply settings apply only to Vodafone handset numbers.
- To activate the setting, set Auto Reply in Mail Settings to **On** (see **P.6-3**).
- **Set All** is set by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Tel Ops* ▶ *Add to Phone Book* ▶ *Enter name* ▶ *Enter number/address* ▶ *Option settings* ▶ *Auto Reply*

- 1 **Apply to All**
1 Select **1 Set All** and press ●

Settings by Number/Address

- 1 Select **2 One Number/Address** and press ●
- 2 Select a Vodafone handset number or a mail address and press ●
- 3 Choose **1 On** and press ●
■ To cancel, choose **2 Off** ▶ Press ●
- 4 Press ● **Set**

Canceling Auto Reply

- 1 Choose **3 Off** and press ●
Option Settings menu returns.
 - Proceed to Step 2 to exit.




- 2 Press ● **Set**

Group Settings

Rename Groups and customize Ring Tone settings by Group.
Personal Ring Tone and Incoming Notice settings (see P.5-8 - 5-9) take priority over Group Settings.

Changing Group Name

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 1 ▶ Group Settings ▶ Change Group Name











- 1 Select a Group and press** 
 - Group **0 Untitled** cannot be renamed.
- 2 Enter a name**
 - Enter up to 10 single-byte characters.
- 3 Press** 
 - Repeat Steps 1 - 3 for other Groups.
- 4 Press**  to exit

Group Ring Tone

Set Ring Tone (incoming calls/mail) by Group.

- When Group Ring Tone is **Off**, Ring Tone setting for incoming calls applies.
- Group Ring Tone is **Off** for all Groups by default.

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 1 ▶ Group Settings ▶ Group Ring Tone

- 1 Select a Group and press** 
- 2 Select**  **Incoming Call** or  **Incoming Mail** and press 
 - Disabled menu items cannot be selected.
- 3 Select**  **Call Functions** and press 
 - Disabled menu items cannot be selected.
- 4 Choose**  **On** and press 
 - To cancel, choose  **Off** ▶ Press 

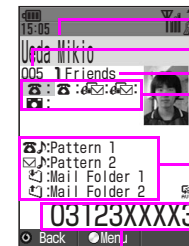
- 5 Select from**  **Ring Tone** to  **Ring Time** and press 
 -  **Ring Time** is available for incoming mail only.
 - For Ring Tone settings, see P.9-3.
 - For vibration and Mobile/Small Light patterns, see P.9-4 - 9-5.
 - For Ring Time setting, see P.9-6.

- 6 Press**  to exit

Using Phone Book

Dialing from Phone Book

Window Description



Name

Memory No.


Group Name



Icon

Select an icon to see contents.

 :  :  : (Phone number)

 : Call,  : Home,  : Mobile,  : Company

 : (Mail address)

 : Internet,  : Mobile







 : Personal Data,  : Photo*




Image set for Photo

**Tone set for Personal Ring Tone or Incoming Notice;
Mail Folders set for Auto Sort**


 : Personal Ring Tone,  : Incoming Notice,  : Inbox Mail Folder,  : Sent Mail Folder

Auto Reply

Phone Number or Mail Address
(Varies by selected icon)

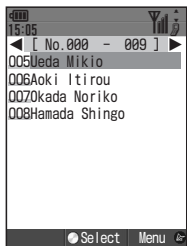
*Personal Data window opens when  : (Personal Data) is selected. Set image appears when  : (Photo) is selected. Press  **Back** to return to Phone Book Entry List.

Tip

- Use  to select items.
- Cancel Phone Book Lock (see P.15-3) to open Phone Book.
- To dial numbers saved in Secret Mode entries, activate Secret Mode first (see P.15-7).

Show Photo

Show the assigned images in Phone Book Entry List.



Entry List
(Memory No. Search)



Entry List with Images
(Memory No. Search)

- 1 Press **(TEL)**, then press **Search**
- 2 Press **Menu**
- 3 Select **Show Pics** and press **Enter**
Images appear in Phone Book Entry List.
To hide images, while list with images appears, press **Menu** → Select **Show List** → Press **Enter**

Phone Book Search

Memory No. Search	Lists Memory Numbers including the one you enter
Katakana Search	Shows entries whose Reading start with katakana you specify or other katakana in the same row
Group Search	Opens entries in a specified Group
Search by Reading	Shows entries starting with the entered Reading

Search method is **Memory No. Search** by default.

- 1 Press **(TEL)**
The method used last appears.
- 2 Press **Menu**
- 3 Select a method and press **Enter**
Selected method appears.
- 4 Start entry search (see P.5-15)
When multiple numbers or addresses are saved, use **Enter** to select other icons.
If entry does not exist, **No Phone Book Entries** appears → Use **Enter** to see other entries

Search Phone Book Entries on SD Memory Card

- After Step 1 in "Phone Book Search" on P.5-14, follow these steps.
Press **Switch** → Select a number range → Press **Enter** → Press **Menu** →
Select a search method
• Phone Book entries on SD Memory Card are grouped by 500 entries. Unused number is skipped and the next number appears.

Memory No. Search

Search by Memory No.

- Set search method to **Memory No. Search** (see P.5-14).

Index Menu → Tel Ops → Entry Search

Enter Memory No. (000 - 499) → Select a name → Press **Enter**

- Press **Enter** to dial.

Katakana Search

Search by katakana row which includes the first character of Reading

- Set search method to **Katakana Search** (see P.5-14).

Index Menu → Tel Ops → Entry Search

Specify a row → Select a name → Press **Enter**

- Press **Enter** to dial.

• Katakana-Key Assignments:

ア (A) row	1	カ (Ka) row	2	サ (Sa) row	3	タ (Ta) row	4
ナ (Na) row	5	ハ (Ha) row	6	マ (Ma) row	7	ヤ (Ya) row	8
ラ (Ra) row	9	ワ (Wa) row	0	Others	#		

- When Reading starts with a roman letter, number or Symbol, or is not entered, select **Others**.

Group Search

Search by Group

- Set search method to **Group Search** (see P.5-14).

Index Menu → Tel Ops → Entry Search

Select a Group → Press **Enter** → Select a name → Press **Enter**

- Press **Enter** to dial.

Search by Reading

Search by Reading saved in **CODE**:

- Set search method to **Search by Reading** (see P.5-14).

Index Menu → Tel Ops → Entry Search

Enter reading (up to 18 single-byte characters) → Press **Enter** → Select a name → Press **Enter**

- Press **Enter** to dial.

Speed Dial

Use Speed Dial to call first phone number saved in Memory Numbers 000 - 099.

1 Dialing Memory No. 000 - 009

1 Enter the last digit (0 - 9)

Dialing Memory No. 010 - 099

1 Enter the last two digits (10 - 99)

2 Press

Name and phone number appear and the number is dialed.

- When no entry is saved, **No Number** appears and Standby returns.
- When multiple phone numbers are saved, the first one is dialed.

Note

- Cancel Phone Book Lock (see P.15-3) to use Speed Dial.
- To dial numbers saved in Secret Mode entries, activate Secret Mode first (see P.15-7).
If not, **Secret Data saved** appears and Standby returns.

Copying Phone Book Contents

Copy and paste Phone Book contents into text entry windows.

Index Menu ▶ *Tel Ops* ▶ *Entry Search* ▶ *Open an entry* ▶ *Select an item* ▶ *Menu (☉)*

1 Select **Copy** and press

Selected item is copied.

Perform from Step 5 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on P.4-16 for more.

Editing Phone Book

Correction/Change

Index Menu ▶ *Tel Ops* ▶ *Entry Search* ▶ *Open an entry* ▶ *Menu (☉)* ▶ *Edit*

1 Select an item and press

Edit contents.

- Procedure is the same as when saving to Phone Book (see P.5-3).

2 Press when finished

Phone Book Details returns.



- To edit other items, repeat Steps 1 - 2.
- To cancel, press  **Cancel** ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press 

3 Press **Save**

4 Press

5 Choose **1 Yes** and press

The entry is overwritten.

- To save to another Memory No. ▶ Choose **2 No** ▶ Press  ▶ Enter another Memory No. (or press )

Note

Edit Reading manually after editing names.

Deleting Entries

Index Menu ▶ *Tel Ops* ▶ *Entry Search* ▶ *Open an entry* ▶ *Menu (☉)* ▶ *Delete*

1 Choose **1 Yes** and press

Next entry appears. If no other entries remain, Standby returns.

Note

The source files remain in Data Folder, even if you delete entries containing Original Ring Tones, Chaku-Uta, Voice files and images set for Personal Ring Tone, Incoming Notice or Picture Call/Mail.



TV & FM Radio

Getting Started

- Handset becomes hot while using TV or FM. Avoid prolonged contact with skin, and do not cover handset with paper, cloth, etc. May cause burns or malfunction.
- Handset TV/FM tuner is exclusively for use in Japan due to differing broadcast frequencies overseas.
- V603SH is compatible with terrestrial analog broadcasting.
- Do not use TV or FM while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result. [Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (effective from 1 November 2004).] Pay attention to the traffic while walking, especially at road/rail crossings to avoid accidents.
- Audio-visual quality may be affected by incoming messages or mobile phones nearby.

Precautions

Battery

When battery is low (🔋), TV and FM do not activate (except while charging). If battery becomes low (🔋) during use, TV or FM ends automatically.

Auto Off Timer

TV and FM ends automatically after 30 or 60 minutes (see **P.6-20**).

Audio

TV and FM audio from speaker and Headphones (with built-in TV antenna) is monaural.

Antenna

- For TV and FM reception, extend Antenna or connect Headphones. Alternatively, connect handset to an external antenna using optional TV Antenna Connection Cable.
- Extend Antenna fully. Adjust the length for better TV reception when broadcast stations are near.
- When using Headphones, straighten cord for better reception.
- Active antenna varies by media. For details, refer to the table on **P.6-4**.

Charging

Use TV and FM while charging (Auto Off Timer remains active).

- Use specified Rapid Charger only (noise can be reduced).
- Keep Rapid Charger cord away from Antenna to prevent distortion.
- Charging takes longer when TV or FM is active.

Calls, Mail, etc.

The following are available while TV or FM is active (TV/FM window returns after operation).

- Placing calls (Headphones are required. See **P.16-45**.)
- Receiving calls
- Receiving mail messages*
- Receiving Station information*
- Receiving Web Information*
- Alarm*
- Opening Inbox (reply, save to Phone Book, etc.)
- Accessing the Mobile Internet (access sites via links or retrieve NOW ON AIR information)

*Available when **Pause Application** is set for Incoming Settings (see **P.6-21**).

At Auto Power Off Time

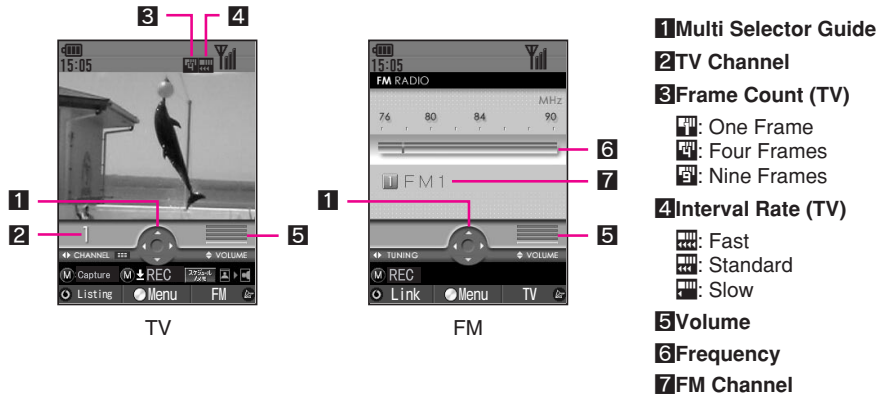
■ **Auto Power Off Time Editing... Turn Power Off?** appears.

- To turn off handset power, choose **1 Yes** and press **⏻** or leave it for a minute.
- To cancel, choose **2 No** and press **⏻**.

Unavailable Functions while TV/FM is Active

- Screen Animation
- Pen Light
- Panel Saving

Window Description



6

TV & FM Radio

Change screen orientation (see the table on P.6-20 for available options).

Signal Reception

Poor Reception Areas

Audio-visual quality degrades and broadcasts may not be available when:

- Far from or too close to broadcasting stations
- In mountainous areas or near buildings
- Aboard trains or in vehicles
- Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless stations
- Near railroad tracks or highways
- In tunnels or underground shopping malls
- In any other areas where jamming signal exists or reception is unstable

Tip Search for channels automatically (see P.6-7 and P.6-12 "Auto Scan").

Reception Devices

Use Headphones or TV Antenna Connection Cable. Input changes according to the device and media.

Device	TV			FM
	VHF	UHF	CATV	
None	Antenna	Antenna	-	Antenna
Headphones	Headphones	Antenna	-	Headphones
TV Antenna Connection Cable	TV Antenna Connection Cable	TV Antenna Connection Cable	TV Antenna Connection Cable	TV Antenna Connection Cable

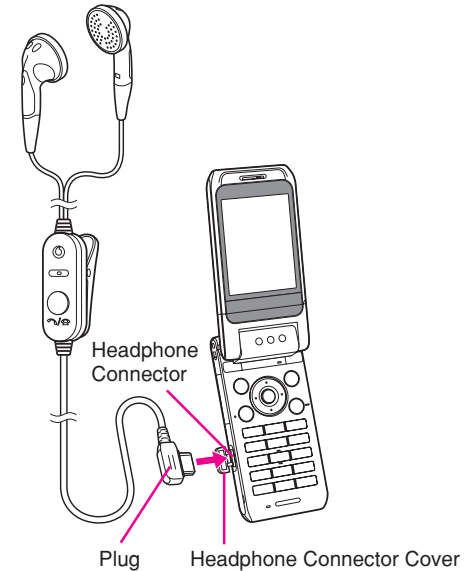
Note To watch CATV, use TV Antenna Connection Cable.

Headphones (with Built-in TV Antenna)

1 Open Headphone Connector Cover

2 Plug Headphones into handset

- To listen to audio through Headphones, activate **Earphone Priority** (see P.6-22 "Sound Out").



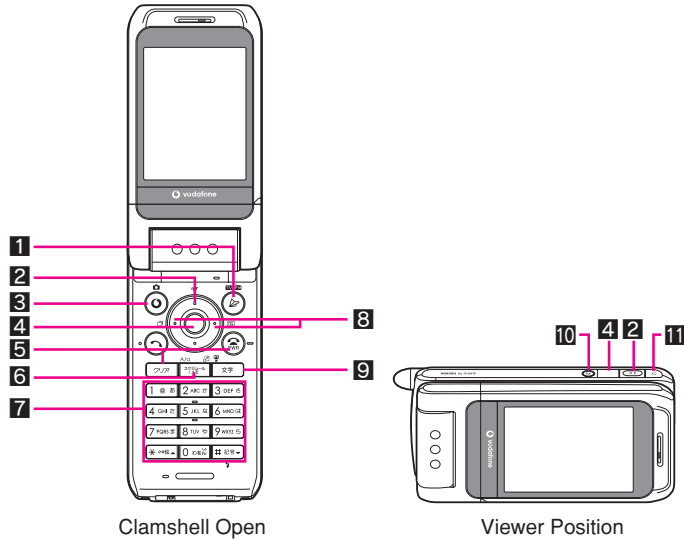
- Note**
- Do not connect supplied Headphones to handsets other than V603SH or V402SH. Malfunction may result.
 - Keep the cord away from handset, Antenna, Rapid Charger and Desktop Holder to prevent signal interference.
 - Do not disconnect Headphones while using TV. The current channel may become unavailable or sensitivity may decrease.

Tip While TV or FM is active, place calls using Headphones. TV or FM window returns after the call ends.

6

TV & FM Radio

Key Assignments



Clamshell Open

Viewer Position

1 Activate & Toggle TV/FM

In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate TV or FM. Press to toggle between TV and FM.

2 Volume Control

Press (up) or (down).

3 TVnano & FM Access Link

- Press for 1+ seconds to open Multi Menu. (Not available while recording or capturing.)

4 Menu & Mute

Open menu. Press for 1+ seconds to mute.

5 Exit TV/FM

6 Horizontal/Vertical Display, Cancel Full Auto (TV) & Frequency Entry (FM)

7 Direct Channel Access

Press $\boxed{1}$ $\boxed{0}$ $\boxed{0}$ - $\boxed{9}$ $\boxed{0}$ $\boxed{0}$ $\boxed{0}$ or $\boxed{\#}$ $\boxed{0}$ $\boxed{0}$ $\boxed{0}$ (see P.6-16 for default key assignments).
 • For FM, press for 1+ seconds to replace assigned frequency with the current one.

8 Channel Advance

Press (reverse) or (forward).
 Press for 1+ seconds to search for channels automatically (see P.6-7 and P.6-12 "Auto Scan").

9 Show Channel/Volume

The current channel and volume appear for horizontal view.
 • Press for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel Manner Mode.

10 Record/Capture (TV) & Record (FM)

Press to capture screenshots or record FM radio, and press for 1+ seconds to record TV programs.

11 Activate/Exit & Channel Advance (only in Viewer position)

- In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate TV or FM. Press for 1+ seconds again to exit.
- Channel advance is one-way only.

Note Press for 1+ seconds to activate TV or FM, whichever used last (default: TV).

Watching TV

Search for TV channels automatically (see "Auto Scan" below) or use TVnano (program guide, in Japanese only). Handset connects to the Network (connection fees apply) to access TVnano.

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM

1 Select **1** Activate TV and press **●**

By default, channel 1 (set in channel group **設定 1**) appears.

- To switch the active channel group, see P.6-18.
- Key Assignments: see P.6-6

2 Select a channel

- Use Keypad for direct channel access (see P.6-6) or to toggle between channels.
- To toggle between all channels regardless of settings, see P.6-8 "Manual Tuning."
- When Skip Channel (see P.6-17) is set for the channel assigned to the key, the current channel remains.

To open program listing on TVnano, press **Listing**

- When a V-Application is paused, choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press **●**

To adjust volume, press (up) or (down).

To mute, press **●** for 1+ seconds.

- To cancel, press **●** for 1+ seconds again.

- Alternatively, press (up) or (down) to cancel mute. Volume returns with one level higher or lower than before (volume 0 and 5 remain the same).

For handy TV functions, see P.6-20.



Auto Scan

Press (reverse) or (forward) for 1+ seconds to search for channels automatically.

No Channel Detected

No Signal Continue Auto Scan? appears. To cancel, choose **2 No** and press **●**.

3 Press **●** or **フツフ** to exit

- Settings (channel, screen orientation, volume and audio output) remain even after exiting TV. However, volume and audio output are affected by changes to the corresponding settings for FM.



Manual Tuning

- Follow these steps to select channels other than those in **設定1** to **設定5**.
Press **☉** **➔** **Select** **1** **Set Channels** **➔** **Press** **☉** **➔** **Select** **3** **Manual Tuning** **➔** **Press** **☉**
 - Use **☉** to toggle between channels (press for 1+ seconds to search automatically). See **P.6-16** for receivable channel ranges.

Recording TV Programs

Record TV programs to handset (up to 28 seconds) or SD Memory Card (up to 60 minutes).

- Image size of recordings is fixed to W 320 x H 240 dots regardless of screen orientation. Files are saved to TV Folder (see **P.6-10**) on handset or on SD Memory Card. Select storage media beforehand (see **P.6-9** "Save to").
- Saved files cannot be edited, attached to mail or exported to other display devices.

Index Menu **▶** **TV/FM** **➔** **Activate TV**

1 Press **☉** for 1+ seconds

Recording starts. (Small Light illuminates green while recording.)

- Volume is fixed for recordings.
- When a V-Application is paused, choose **1** **Yes** **➔** **Press** **☉**
- Handset Responses & Available Operations while Recording: see **P.6-9**



2 Saving to Handset

1 Press **☉** or **M**

Recording stops. When the maximum recording time is reached, recording stops automatically.

- Alternatively, press **☉** or **☺** (**S** in Viewer position).

2 To save, select **1** **Complete** and press **☉**

- To cancel, select **2** **Cancel** **➔** **Press** **☉** **➔** Choose **1** **Yes** **➔** **Press** **☉**

Saving to SD Memory Card

1 Press **☉** or **M**

- Alternatively, press **☉** or **☺** (**S** in Viewer position).
- Recording ends automatically when memory is full. Recorded clip is saved.

2 Press **☉**

Handset Responses while Recording

- Recording stops automatically at Auto Power Off Time and **Auto Power Off Time Editing... Turn Power Off?** appears.
 - When saving to handset:
 - Handset shuts down after a minute of inactivity. Alternatively, choose **1** **Yes** and press **☉**. Recorded clip is not saved.
 - To save, choose **2** **No**, press **☉**, and then follow onscreen instructions.
 - When saving to SD Memory Card:
 - Recorded clip is automatically saved.
 - Handset shuts down after a minute of inactivity. Alternatively, choose **1** **Yes** and press **☉**. To cancel Auto Power Off, choose **2** **No** and press **☉**.
- If Alarm Time arrives during recording, no tone will sound. Alarm will sound when Standby returns.
- In the following cases, recording stops and recorded clip is saved. When saving to handset, a confirmation appears. Select **1** **Complete** or **2** **Cancel** and press **☉**.
 - Call arrives
 - Information, mail or Alarm Time arrives when **Pause Application** is set for Incoming Settings (see **P.6-21**)
 - Auto Off Timer time has elapsed (see **P.6-20**)
 - Handset is closed (clamshell closed), then opened again while Close to Turn Off (see **P.6-21**) is active.

Available Operations while Recording

- Adjusting volume (Mute is not available.)
- Activating/canceling Manner Mode

Record Settings

Save to Select handset or SD Memory Card

Default: Handset

Index Menu **▶** **TV/FM** **➔** **Activate TV** **➔** **Menu** (**☉**) **➔** **Record & Capture** **➔** **Record Settings** **➔** **Save to**

Select **1** **Handset** or **2** **Memory Card** **➔** **Press** **☉**

Incoming Calls Receive or block incoming calls, mail, etc. while recording.

Default: Receive Calls

Index Menu **▶** **TV/FM** **➔** **Activate TV** **➔** **Menu** (**☉**) **➔** **Record & Capture** **➔** **Record Settings** **➔** **Incoming Calls**

Select **1** **Receive Calls** or **2** **Block Calls** **➔** **Press** **☉**

- For **Receive Calls**, handset responds as set in Incoming Settings (see **P.6-21**).

Playing Recorded TV Programs

Default file name is the recorded date and time.

Index Menu ▶ *My Files*

1 Select **TV Folder** and press **⊙**

■ To switch to SD Memory Card, press **⊲** **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **⊙**

2 Select a file and press **⊙**

• For operations during playback, see P.7-34 "Playback Operations."

Deleting Recorded TV Programs

- To delete a file on handset, after Step 1 above, select a file ▶ Press **⊲** **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **⊙**
- To delete a file on SD Memory Card, after Step 1 above, press **⊲** **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **⊲** **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **⊙**

Capturing Screenshots

Capture screenshots while watching TV.

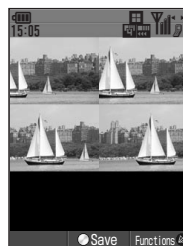
- See P.6-11 to select the number of frames that can be captured at a time (1, 4 or 9 frames).
- Captured images cannot be set as Wallpaper, saved to SD Memory Card, edited, attached to mail or exported to other devices.
- Image size is 240 x 180 dots (vertical view) or 320 x 240 dots (horizontal view).
 - Single-frame images are saved to Data Folder (Images).
 - Sequential frames are saved to Data Folder (連写).

Index Menu ▶ *TV/FM* ▶ *Activate TV*

1 Press **Ⓜ**

Captured image appears.

- When Frame Count is set to **Four Frames** or **Nine Frames**, Index Image appears.
Use **⊲** to view single frames.
- During capture, no operation is available other than to stop capturing.
■ To stop capturing, press **⊙** or **Ⓜ**.



2 Press **⊙** to save

Opening Captured Screenshots

- Files are saved to Images or 連写 in Data Folder (see P.6-10).
For operations, see P.13-6.

Deleting Captured Screenshots

- To delete a file in Images folder, press **⊙** ▶ Select **My Files** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select **Data Folder** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select Images folder ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **⊲** **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **⊙**
- To delete a file in 連写 folder, press **⊙** ▶ Select **My Files** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select **Data Folder** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select 連写 folder ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **⊲** **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **⊙**

Capture Settings

Frame Count

Select the number of frames that can be captured at a time (**One Frame**, **Four Frames** or **Nine Frames**)

Default One Frame

Index Menu ▶ *TV/FM* ▶ *Activate TV* ▶ **Menu** (Ⓜ) ▶ *Record & Capture* ▶ *Capture Settings* ▶ *Frame Count*

Select a number ▶ Press **⊙**

- Setting returns to default when TV ends.

Interval Rate

For Frame Count **Four Frames** or **Nine Frames**, select a capture interval rate (speed) from **Fast** to **Slow**

Default Standard

Index Menu ▶ *TV/FM* ▶ *Activate TV* ▶ **Menu** (Ⓜ) ▶ *Record & Capture* ▶ *Capture Settings* ▶ *Interval Rate*

Select a speed ▶ Press **⊙**

- Setting returns to default when TV ends.

Listening to FM Radio

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM

1 Select **2** Activate FM and press **1**

- Key Assignments: see P.6-6
- NOW ON AIR: see P.6-13



2 Select a channel

- Use Keypad for direct channel access (see P.6-6) or **1** to adjust frequency by 0.1 MHz.
 - To adjust volume, press **2** (up) or **3** (down).
 - To mute, press **4** for 1+ seconds.
 - To cancel, press **4** for 1+ seconds.
 - Alternatively, press **2** or **3** to cancel mute. Volume returns with one level higher or lower than before (volume 0 and 5 remain the same).
- For handy FM functions, see P.6-20.



Press Keypad for 1+ seconds to replace assigned frequency with the current one. (Channel name, URL, etc. remain.)

Auto Scan

Press **5** or **6** for 1+ seconds to search for channels automatically.

No Channel Detected

No Signal Continue Auto Scan? appears. To cancel, choose **2** No and press **1**.

3 Press **7** or **8** to exit

- Settings (channel, volume and audio output) remain even after exiting FM. However, volume and audio output are affected by changes to the corresponding settings for TV.

Preset Frequencies

- Assigned channel name (default: see P.6-16) appears for the current frequency.
 - Save a URL for each channel. Press **9** Link to access the Mobile Internet site.

Direct Frequency Entry

- Activate FM and press **8**. Enter a frequency and press **1** (see P.6-16 for frequency range).

NOW ON AIR

Reception Area

Set a reception area automatically (Auto Update) or manually (Manual Update) to access information (music title, artist name, etc.) on the current broadcast.

- For Auto Update, handset connects to the Network (connection fees apply) to detect reception area based on Location Info.
- For Manual Update, select an area and prefecture (see the table below).

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate FM ▶ Menu **1** ▶ NOW ON AIR ▶ Set Area

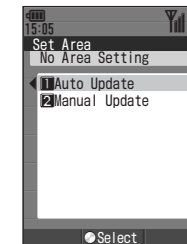
1 Select **1** Auto Update or **2** Manual Update and press **1**

- For **1** Auto Update, prefecture is set. (Skip the following steps.)

2 Select an area and press **1**

3 Select a prefecture and press **1**

Reception area is set.



Now ON AIR Reception Area

Area	Prefecture
1 Hokkaido/Tohoku	1 Hokkaido, 2 Aomori, 3 Iwate, 4 Miyagi, 5 Akita, 6 Yamagata, 7 Fukushima
2 Hokuriku/Koshinetu	1 Niigata, 2 Yamanashi, 3 Nagano, 4 Toyama, 5 Ishikawa, 6 Fukui
3 Kanto	1 Ibaraki, 2 Tochigi, 3 Gunma, 4 Saitama, 5 Chiba, 6 Tokyo, 7 Kanagawa
4 Tokai	1 Shizuoka, 2 Aichi, 3 Gifu, 4 Mie
5 Kansai	1 Shiga, 2 Kyoto, 3 Osaka, 4 Hyogo, 5 Nara, 6 Wakayama
6 Chugoku	1 Tottori, 2 Shimane, 3 Okayama, 4 Hiroshima, 5 Yamaguchi
7 Shikoku	1 Tokushima, 2 Kagawa, 3 Ehime, 4 Kochi
8 Kyushu/Okinawa	1 Fukuoka, 2 Saga, 3 Nagasaki, 4 Kumamoto, 5 Oita, 6 Miyazaki, 7 Kagoshima, 8 Okinawa

Accessing NOW ON AIR

Access information (music title, artist name, etc.) on the current broadcast. Some programs may not provide information. Most content is in Japanese.

- Set a reception area before accessing information.
- URLs of accessed NOW ON AIR source sites are not saved to Log.

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate FM ▶ Menu (⊙) ▶ NOW ON AIR

1 Select **Acquire Info** and press **⊙**

2 Choose **Yes** and press **⊙**

Stations supporting NOW ON AIR appear.

- After checking information, press **⊙** to exit.

Recording FM Radio

Record FM radio to handset (up to 10 minutes) or SD Memory Card (up to 60 minutes).

- Files are saved to Voice Folder (see P.6-15) on handset or on SD Memory Card. Select storage media beforehand (see P.6-15 "Save to").
- Saved files cannot be used as Ring Tone, edited, copied, transferred or attached to mail.

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate FM

1 Press **M**

Recording starts. (Small Light illuminates orange while recording.)

- Volume is fixed for recordings.

Handset Responses & Available Operations while Recording: see P.6-9

2 Press **⊙** or **M** to stop

Recording stops. When the maximum recording time is reached, recording stops automatically.

- Alternatively, press **S** in Viewer position.



Record Settings

Save to Select handset or SD Memory Card

Default Handset

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate FM ▶ Menu (⊙) ▶ Record Settings ▶ Save to

Select **1** **Handset** or **2** **Memory Card** ▶ Press **⊙**

Incoming Calls

Receive or block incoming calls, mail, etc. while recording.

Default Receive Calls

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate FM ▶ Menu (⊙) ▶ Record Settings ▶ Incoming Calls

Select **1** **Receive Calls** or **2** **Block Calls** ▶ Press **⊙**

- For **Receive Calls**, handset responds as set in Incoming Settings (see P.6-21).

Playing Recorded FM Radio

Index Menu ▶ My Files

1 Select **Voice Folder** and press **⊙**

To switch to SD Memory Card, press **⊙** **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **⊙**

2 Select **FM** and press **⊙**

- Files are saved in FM folder (automatically created when FM is recorded for the first time).

3 Select a file and press **⊙**

For operations during playback, see P.11-7 "Playback Operations."

4 Press **⊙**

Deleting Recorded FM Radio

To delete a file on handset, after Step 2 above, select a file ▶ Press **⊙** **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **⊙**

To delete a file on SD Memory Card, after Step 1 above, press **⊙** **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select **FM** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **⊙** **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **⊙**

Presets

Preset frequently used channels and frequencies for easy access. Receivable channel/frequency ranges:

TV	VHF channels 1 - 12, UHF channels 13 - 62, CATV channels 13 - 63*
FM	76.0 MHz - 90.0 MHz

*Available when TV Antenna Connection Cable is connected.

- For TV, save up to five channel groups (設定 1 to 設定 5). Reassign channels to other keys (see P.6-19 "Switch Position").
- Default settings:

TV

Name	Key	Channel	On Display
設定1 - 設定5	1	V1 (VHF channel 1)	1
	2	V2 (VHF channel 2)	2
	3	V3 (VHF channel 3)	3
	4	V4 (VHF channel 4)	4
	5	V5 (VHF channel 5)	5
	6	V6 (VHF channel 6)	6
	7	V7 (VHF channel 7)	7
	8	V8 (VHF channel 8)	8
	9	V9 (VHF channel 9)	9
	*	V10 (VHF channel 10)	✕
	0	V11 (VHF channel 11)	0
	#	V12 (VHF channel 12)	#

FM

Name	Key	Frequency (MHz)	On Display
FM 1	1	77.8 (FM Nagoya)	1
FM 2	2	78.7 (FM Kyushu)	2
FM 3	3	80.0 (FM Tokyo)	3
FM 4	4	80.2 (FM 802)	4
FM 5	5	80.7 (FM Aichi or FM Fukuoka)	5
FM 6	6	81.3 (J-WAVE)	6
FM 7	7	81.9 (NHK Yokohama)	7
FM 8	8	82.5 (NHK Tokyo or NHK Nagoya)	8
FM 9	9	84.7 (FM Yokohama)	9
FM *	*	84.8 (NHK Fukuoka)	✕
FM 0	0	85.1 (FM Osaka)	0
FM #	#	88.1 (NHK Osaka)	#

Presetting TV Channels

Setting by Reception Area

Channels in the selected area are saved automatically.

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV ▶ Menu () ▶ Set Channels

- 1 Select from 設定 1 to 設定 5 and press Menu
- 2 Select Set Area and press

Set Area window opens. Perform Steps 1 - 3 in "Reception Area" on P.6-13.

 - In some areas, Auto Update is not available. In this case, update manually.
 - For Manual Update, select an area ▶ Press

- 3 Choose Yes or No and press

Setting Automatically

According to the area and reception, 12 channels are saved automatically.

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV ▶ Menu () ▶ Set Channels

- 1 Select from 設定 1 to 設定 5 and press Menu
- 2 Select Auto Set and press
- 3 Choose Yes and press

Setting Stations... appears. Detected channels are assigned to keys starting from 1.

 - If there is no channel detected, choose Yes or No ▶ Press

- Tip**
- When less than 12 channels are detected, the current assignments remain for the rest.
 - To rename channel groups (設定 1 to 設定 5), see P.6-18.

Setting Manually

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV ▶ Menu () ▶ Set Channels

- 1 Select from 設定 1 to 設定 5 and press Menu
- 2 Select Manual Set and press
- 3 Select a channel and press
- 4 Select Set Station and press

TV returns.

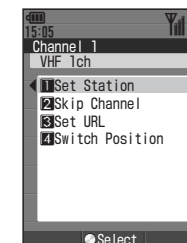
- 5 Select a channel

 - Use to select a channel manually or automatically (see P.6-7).

- 6 Press

Channel is set.

- Tip**
- Skip Channel**
- To skip unwanted channels while selecting channels with , follow these steps.
- After Step 3 above, select Skip Channel ▶ Press ▶ Choose On ▶ Press
- Skip up to 11 channels per group.



Switching the Active Channel Group

設定 1 is active by default.

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV ▶ Menu (●) ▶ Set Channels

1 Select from 設定 1 to 設定 5 and press ●

Renaming Channel Groups

- Press ● ▶ Select TV/FM ▶ Press ● ▶ Select 1 Activate TV ▶ Press ● twice ▶ Select 1 Set Channels ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a group (設定 1, etc.) ▶ Press ● ▶ Menu ▶ Select 4 Change Name ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter a name (up to 18 single-byte characters) ▶ Press ●
- If ● is pressed without entry, default name returns.
- Entering area names will help you identify where channels were received.

Presetting FM Stations

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV ▶ Menu (●) ▶ Set Channels ▶ Select a channel

1 Select 2 Set Station and press ●

FM window returns.

2 Select a frequency

- Use ● to select a channel manually or adjust frequency by 0.1 MHz (see P.6-12).

3 Press ●

Tip

Renaming Channels

- Select 1 Channel Name ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter a name (up to 14 single-byte characters) ▶ Press ●
- If ● is pressed without entry, default name returns.

Additional Settings

Set URL

Save a URL to each channel for easy access to the site

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV/FM ▶ Menu (●) ▶ Set Channels

TV

- Select a group ▶ Press ● ▶ Menu ▶ Select 3 Manual Set ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a channel ▶ Press ● ▶ Select 3 Set URL ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose 1 On ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter a URL ▶ Press ●

FM

- Select a channel ▶ Press ● ▶ Select 3 Set URL ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose 1 On ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter a URL ▶ Press ●

Switch Position

Reassign channels to other keys

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV/FM ▶ Menu (●) ▶ Set Channels

TV

- Select a group ▶ Press ● ▶ Menu ▶ Select 3 Manual Set ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a channel ▶ Press ● ▶ Select 4 Switch Position ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a channel ▶ Press ●

FM

- Select a channel ▶ Press ● ▶ Select 4 Switch Position ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a channel ▶ Press ●

Reset

Return all settings to their defaults

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV/FM ▶ Menu (●) ▶ Set Channels

TV

- Select a group ▶ Press ● ▶ Menu ▶ Select 5 Reset ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose 1 Yes ▶ Press ●

FM

- Press ● ▶ Reset ▶ Choose 1 Yes ▶ Press ●

Note

All channels return to their default states.

6

TV & FM Radio

6

TV & FM Radio

Handy TV/FM Functions

Some functions are available only for TV.

Function	Description	TV	FM
Horizontal/Vertical Display	Toggle between vertical and horizontal views (see P.6-24)	Available	N/A
Hide Picture	Turn off Display (see P.6-22)	Available	Available
Viewer Display	Rotate vertical view in Viewer position (see P.6-22)	Available	Available
Horizontal Display	Rotate horizontal view (see P.6-24)	Available	N/A
Full Auto	Change screen orientation automatically (see P.6-24)	Available	N/A
TV Backlight	Select Brightness (see P.6-23)	Available	N/A
Sound Out	Select audio output (see P.6-22)	Available	Available
Record Settings (TV)	Select storage media and a handset response to incoming mail, etc. (see P.6-9)	Available	N/A
Capture Settings	Select the number of frames to be captured and a capture interval speed (see P.6-11)	Available	N/A
Record Settings (FM)	Select storage media and a handset response to incoming mail, etc. (see P.6-15)	N/A	Available
Activate TV/FM	Toggle between TV and FM (see P.6-23)	Available	Available
Access Link	Access the Mobile Internet site (see P.6-23)	Available	Available
NOW ON AIR	Access information on the current broadcast (see P.6-13)	N/A	Available

Functions Available for TV & FM

Auto Off Timer TV and FM end automatically after 30 or 60 minutes

Default: 30 Minutes

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Auto Off ▶ Auto Off Timer

Select **1** 30 Min or **2** 60 Min ▶ Press ●

Note Auto Off Timer setting applies to TV and FM (cannot be set separately).

Close to Turn Off

Set TV and FM to end when handset is closed (clamshell closed)

Default: Off (TV/FM remains active.)

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Auto Off ▶ Close to Turn Off

Choose **1** On (TV or FM ends when handset is closed) or **2** Off ▶ Press ●

Note Close to Turn Off setting applies to TV and FM (cannot be set separately).

Disable TV

Restrict access to TV

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Disable TV

Enter Security Code ▶ Choose **1** On ▶ Press ●

▶ To cancel, enter Security Code ▶ Choose **2** Off ▶ Press ●

Disable FM

Restrict access to FM

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Disable FM

Enter Security Code ▶ Choose **1** On ▶ Press ●

▶ To cancel, enter Security Code ▶ Choose **2** Off ▶ Press ●

Incoming Settings

Select a handset response to incoming mail, etc. while using TV or FM

Default: Show Message

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Incoming Settings

Select from **1** Incoming Mail to **4** Alarm ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1** Pause Application or **2** Show Message ▶ Press ●

Pause Application TV or FM pauses for mail, information or alarm

Show Message A message appears for mail, information or alarm (available only for vertical view)

Note

- Incoming Settings setting applies to TV and FM (cannot be set separately).
- While recording TV/FM, Alarm is automatically set to Show Message.

Hide Picture Turn off Display (audio is available)

Default Display is active.

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ *Activate TV/FM* ▶ *Menu* (⊙) ▶ *Hide Picture*

Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press (⊙)

- When Display is off, adjust volume or mute sounds as follows:
To adjust volume, use (⊕) with handset open or press (◀) or (▶) in Viewer position. To mute, press (⊙) for 1+ seconds with handset open or press (S) for 1+ seconds in Viewer position.
- To reactivate Display, press a key other than (⊕), (◀) and (▶).



With Close to Turn Off (see P.6-21) inactive, Display always turns off when handset is closed (clamshell closed), and turns back on when opened. However, Display remains off when Hide Picture is active.

Viewer Display Manually or automatically rotate vertical view 180 degrees in Viewer position

Default Orientation 1 (same as view for clamshell open)

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ *Activate TV/FM* ▶ *Menu* (⊙)

TV

Select **5 Display Direction** ▶ Press (⊙) ▶ Select **1 Viewer Display** ▶ Press (⊙) ▶ Select **1 Orientation 1**, **2 Orientation 2** or **3 Full Auto** ▶ Press (⊙)

- **Viewer Display** can be selected only when **Full Auto** in Display Direction is inactive (see P.6-24).

FM

Select **4 Viewer Display** ▶ Press (⊙) ▶ Select **1 Orientation 1**, **2 Orientation 2** or **3 Full Auto** ▶ Press (⊙)



When Viewer Display is set to **Full Auto**, Viewer Setting (see P.16-4) returns to default.



- View for clamshell open remains unchanged even after setting.
- Viewer Display in Display Settings changes accordingly (see P.8-8).

Sound Out Select *Earphone Priority* or *Speaker* to listen to audio

Default Earphone Priority

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ *Activate TV/FM* ▶ *Menu* (⊙) ▶ *Sound Out*

Select **1 Earphone Priority** or **2 Speaker** ▶ Press (⊙)

- Audio is heard through Headphones even in Manner Mode.



- When **Speaker** is set, plugging in Headphones does not redirect the audio output. Select **Earphone Priority** in the above operation.
- Sound Out setting applies to TV and FM (cannot be set separately).

Access Link Access the Mobile Internet site saved for each channel

Save a URL beforehand (see P.6-19).

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ *Activate TV/FM* ▶ *Menu* (⊙) ▶ *Access Link*

Accessing Preset Mobile Internet Site

Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press (⊙) ▶ Select **1 Send** ▶ Press (⊙)

- To cancel, press (⊕) **Menu** ▶ Select **Activate TV** or **Activate FM** ▶ Press (⊙)
- Either **Activate TV** or **Activate FM** can be selected regardless of the original window.
- To return to the site, press (⊙) ▶ Select **Return to Web** ▶ Press (⊙)
- Accessed URLs are saved to Log (see (⊕) P.7-8).
- Save URLs to channels to use Access Link (see P.6-19).

Accessing Other Mobile Internet Sites

Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press (⊙) ▶ Select **2 Edit** ▶ Press (⊙) ▶ Perform from Step 3 on (⊕) P.7-7

- To cancel, press (⊕) **Menu** ▶ Select **Activate TV** or **Activate FM** ▶ Press (⊙)
- Either **Activate TV** or **Activate FM** can be selected regardless of the original window.
- To return to the site, press (⊙) ▶ Select **Return to Web** ▶ Press (⊙)
- Saved URLs (see P.6-19) remain.



- Access Link is disabled when Manual Tuning is active in Set Channels (see P.6-8) or during Auto Scan (see P.6-7 and P.6-12).
- Activate Web and disable Link Limiter before accessing the Mobile Internet sites.

Activate TV/FM Toggle between TV and FM

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ *Activate TV/FM* ▶ *Menu* (⊙)

Select **0 Activate FM** or **1 Activate TV** ▶ Press (⊙)

- Alternatively, press (⊕) to toggle (see P.6-6).

Handy TV Functions

Adjust settings for comfortable TV viewing.

TV Backlight Select Brightness from three levels

Default Level 3

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ *Activate TV* ▶ *Menu* (⊙) ▶ *TV Backlight*

Press (⊕) (Brighter) or (⊖) (Darker) ▶ Press (⊙)



- Setting does not affect Brightness set in Light Settings (see P.8-6).

Horizontal/Vertical Display

Toggle between vertical and horizontal views

Default Vertical Display

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV ▶ Menu (⊙)**Select** ② **Horizontal Display** or ② **Vertical Display** ▶ Press (●)

- Alternatively, press to switch the view (see P.6-6).

Horizontal View (TV)

- With Manual Tuning active (see P.6-8), the current channel and volume appear at the top and bottom respectively for three seconds (press to hide) when is pressed or when:
 - Channel or volume is changed
 - TV is activated
 - TV window returned from menu or by pressing (⊙) or (⊂)
 - Screen orientation is changed automatically (see "Full Auto" below).
- With Manual Tuning inactive, a keypad number to which the current channel assigned appears at the top first. Press to show current channel and press again to hide.

Horizontal Display

Manually or automatically rotate horizontal view 180 degrees in Viewer position

Default Orientation 1

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV ▶ Menu (⊙) ▶ Display Direction ▶ Horizontal Display**Select** ① **Orientation 1**, ② **Orientation 2** or ③ **Full Auto** ▶ Press (●)

- Orientation for vertical view remains unchanged even after setting.

Note

- When Horizontal Display is set to **Full Auto**, Viewer Setting in MC Settings (see P.16-4) returns to default.
- **Horizontal Display** can be selected only when **Full Auto** in Display Direction is inactive (see below).

Full Auto

Set view to rotate automatically according to handset orientation

Index Menu ▶ TV/FM ▶ Activate TV ▶ Menu (⊙) ▶ Display Direction**Select** ③ **Full Auto** ▶ Press (●)

- To cancel, activate TV and press .
- View rotates automatically by 90 degrees in any of the following Display positions: clamshell open, Self Portrait position and Viewer position.

Tip

- View may not rotate properly depending on the handset angle or when:
- Aboard trains or in vehicles
 - Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
 - In steel-framed buildings
 - Near or inside elevators
 - Near magnetized objects (see P.1-13)
- When view does not rotate properly, adjust MC Sensor (see P.16-4 "Adjusting Sensor").



Mobile Camera

Getting Started

V603SH features a 2.02 megapixel auto focus CCD camera. Capture still images and record video.

- Still Images: see **P.7-9**
- Video: see **P.7-19**
- Viewfinder & Key Assignments: see **P.7-5**
- Shooting Options: see **P.7-25**

Some key operations are indicated for Viewer position and clamshell open.

Example: Press **S** or **●**

File Formats & Save Locations (Handset or SD Memory Card)

Mode	Format	Save Location
Sha-mail	JPEG (.jpg)	Data Folder (Images) See P.13-3
Camera	JPEG (.jpg)	Camera folder See P.12-7
Movie Sha-mail	MPEG-4 (.3gp)	Data Folder (Movies) See P.13-3
Motion Camera	MPEG-4 (.3gp)	Motion Camera folder See P.12-7
Video Camera	MPEG-4 (.ASF)	Video Camera folder See P.12-8

Mobile Camera Basics

- Check that lens cover (see **P.1-7**) is clean before image capture. Use a soft cloth to wipe fingerprints and oil off.
- If handset moves while shooting, images may blur. Hold handset firmly or place it on a stable surface and use Self Timer (see **P.7-26**).
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument. However, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's color filter.

Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture, mobile camera ends after five minutes of inactivity and Standby returns.

Call Arrives before Saving Image or while Recording Video

- Captured image/recorded video is temporarily saved. To save a folder, end the call and press **●**.
- When mail arrives, a message appears at the top of Display.

Camera/Video Camera Mode Image Orientation

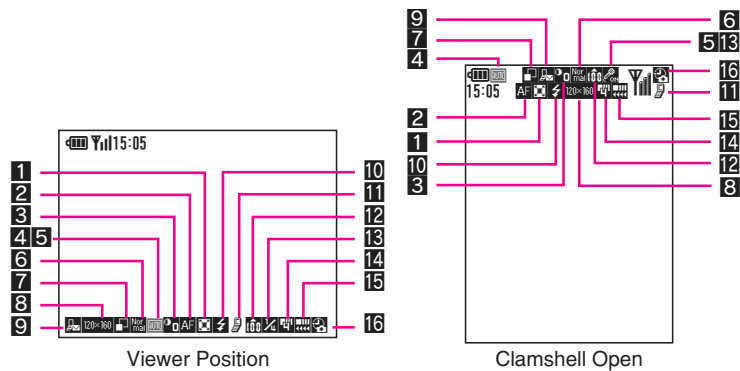
- Camera mode images and Video Camera mode video appear rotated 90 degrees when captured with clamshell open (held vertically) and viewed on PCs. To compensate for this, hold handset horizontally in Viewer position for image capture.

Exporting Images

- View images and video on PCs, TVs or other display devices via Video Cable (see **P.16-43**).

Tip Even in Viewer position, some windows appear with a longer vertical and shorter horizontal.

Indicators



1 Optical Zoom (see P.7-28)

2 Auto Focus (see P.7-28)

AF: Standard, MF: Manual, : Macro, : Landscape

3 Brightness (see P.7-29)

Dark ◀ Standard ▶ Bright

4 Shoot by Scene (see P.7-29)

: Full Auto, : Night View, : Action, : Text

5 Microphone (see P.7-30)

: Mic On (Mic On Standard for Motion Camera), : Mic On Fine (Motion Camera)
: Mic Off

6 Image Quality (see P.7-30) & Record Settings (see P.7-30)

: Standard, : Fine, : High Quality (Camera)
: High 15 fps, : Standard 10 fps (Video Camera)

7 Toggle Preview (see P.7-25)

: 100%, : 200% (Sha-mail)
: 100%, : Enlarged (Movie Sha-mail/Motion Camera)

8 Image Size (see P.7-29) & Movie Mask (see P.7-16, P.7-24)

: Movie Mask active (Sha-mail/Movie Sha-mail)

9 Select Mode (see P.7-31)

: Sha-mail, : Camera
: Movie Sha-mail/Motion Camera/Video Camera

10 Mobile Light (see P.7-27)

: Portrait, : Full Auto, : Macro

11 Save to (see P.7-31)

: Handset, : SD Memory Card

12 Capacity (Sha-mail/Camera: see P.7-10, Movie Sha-mail: see P.7-20)

Number of images savable

- : More than 100
- : Red background: 5 or less

13 Picture Count*

- : Captured/Total

: Index Image (composite image for Overlap) is on Display.

14 Burst Mode*

: 4-Burst Mode, : 9-Burst Mode, : 25-Burst Mode

: Auto Bracket, : Overlap

15 Burst Speed*

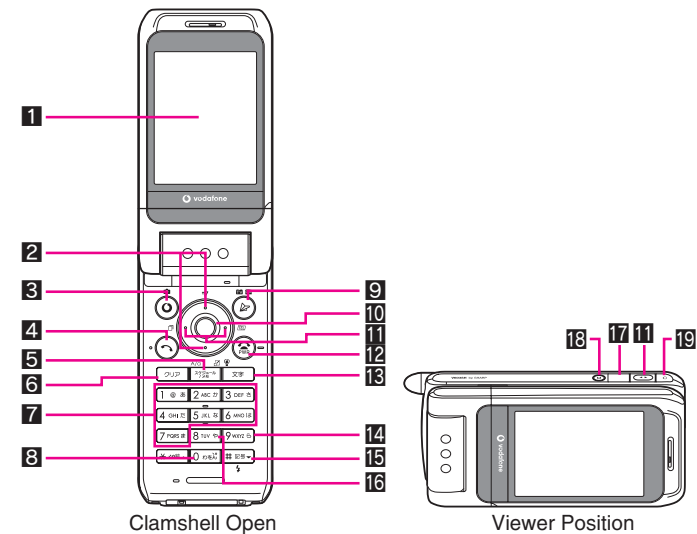
(red): Rapid, (yellow): Slightly Fast, : Normal, : Moderate, : Slow, : Manual

(red): Rapid, : Normal (Auto Bracket/Overlap)

16 Self Timer (see P.7-26)

*Indicators in 13 to 15 appear for Burst Modes (Sha-mail/Camera).

Viewfinder & Key Assignments



1 Viewfinder

2 Brightness (see P.7-29)

(brighter), (darker)

3 Camera Startup & Movie Mask Placement

In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate the mode used last (default: Sha-mail).
• When handset is open (clamshell open), press to fit Movie Mask to subjects (see P.7-16, P.7-24).

4 Focus Lock (see P.7-8)

Lock focus on subjects.

5 Toggle Preview (see P.7-25) & Show/Hide Indicators (see P.7-25)

Press to toggle as follows:

- Sha-mail (except when Image Size is **240x320**)
200% (with indicators) → 200% (no indicators) → 100% (with indicators)
- Movie Sha-mail/Motion Camera
Enlarged (with indicators) → Enlarged (no indicators) → 100% (with indicators)
- Sha-mail (Image Size: **240x320**)/Camera/Video Camera
Press to show or hide indicators.

6 Cancel

Press to start over or end camera.

7 Select Mode (see P.7-31)

While mobile camera is active, press keys to activate the corresponding modes.

1 [M] [R]	Sha-mail (see P.7-9)	5 [JKL] [R]	Video Camera (see P.7-19)
2 [AC] [Z]	Camera (see P.7-9)	6 [M] [L]	Scan Code (see P.16-29)
3 [DEF] [R]	Movie Sha-mail (see P.7-19)	7 [PQRS] [R]	Text Scanner (see P.16-37)
4 [GHI] [Z]	Motion Camera (see P.7-19)		

8 Image Size (see P.7-29)

Press before image capture to toggle size as follows:

- Sha-mail: **120x128** → **240x320** → **120x160**
- Camera: **768x1024** → **960x1280** → **1224x1632** → **480x640**
- Movie Sha-mail: **80x60** ⇄ **128x96**
- Motion Camera: **176x144** ⇄ **128x96**

9 Menu**10 Shutter****11 Digital Zoom**

◀ or ⦿: Zoom out, ▶ or ⦿: Zoom in

- In Viewer position, select menu items.

12 End**13 Auto Focus (see P.7-28)**

Press to toggle modes as follows: **Manual** → **Macro** → **Landscape** → **Standard**

- **Macro** is not available when Optical Zoom is active.

14 High Speed Zoom (zoom in)

Press [9 WXYZ] [R]. In Sha-mail mode, press ⦿ for the maximum zoom.

15 Mobile Light (see P.7-27)

Press to toggle modes as follows: **Portrait** (📷) → **Full Auto** (📷) → **Macro** (📷) → **Off**

- **Full Auto** is not available for recording video.

16 High Speed Zoom (zoom out)**17 Camera Startup & Shutter**

Half press to lock focus and press further to capture images. Open selected menu items or execute functions.

- In Standby (Viewer position), press for 1+ seconds to activate mobile camera.

18 Optical Zoom On/Off

In Viewer position, press to toggle Optical Zoom on/off.

- Optical Zoom is not available when Auto Focus is set to **Macro**.

19 Menu/Cancel/End

Before image capture, press to open menu (or press for 1+ seconds to end camera).

Before saving, press to start over (or press for 1+ seconds to open menu).



- In Viewer position, open menu to use functions. See the corresponding pages for details.
- Accessible functions vary by mode. Refer to P.7-14 "Still Image Functions" and P.7-23 "Video Recording Operations."
- View a summary of key assignments while using camera (see P.7-31 "Key Ops Guide").

Optical Zoom

V603SH mobile camera features an Optical Zoom function.

- Optical Zoom lens moves to change the focal length maintaining the image quality.
- Use Optical Zoom with Digital Zoom.

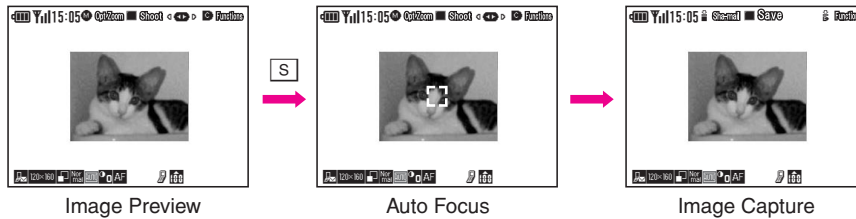


- Optical Zoom is not available when Auto Focus is set to **Macro** (see P.7-28).
- When using Optical Zoom, maintain enough distance from subject to focus.
- Camera motor may be audible when Optical Zoom or Auto Focus is in use or when mobile camera shuts down.
- Even if microphone is active during video recording, sound is temporarily paused when lens moves.

Auto Focus

Mobile camera **Auto Focus (AF)** measures the distance between subjects and camera to adjust focus.

Focus adjusts automatically when you press **[S]** or **[●]** for image capture.



Switch to **Macro** or **Landscape** depending on subject and environment. Alternatively, adjust focus manually for more flexibility (see **P.7-28**).

Focus Lock

Lock focus then recompose and capture image.

	Viewer Position	Clamshell Open
Activate Focus Lock	Half press and hold [S]	Press [↺]
Focus Lock Active	A white frame appears in the center and focus adjusts. When in focus, frame turns green and a beep sounds.	
Image Capture	Press [S] fully	Press [●]

- Once focus locks, image is captured immediately after shutter is released.
- To cancel Focus Lock, release **[S]** or press **[↺]** again.

Note

When recording moving subjects or shooting too close to subject, in poor lighting conditions or because of camera shake, camera may not focus properly.

Still Images

Still Image Modes

Sha-mail

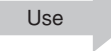
Attach to Mail or save as Wallpaper
Use Burst Shot and Picture Effects
Resize Images to Display



Capture images for Mail, Display, etc.

Camera

Maximum Image Size:
W 1632 x H 1224 dots
Transfer images to PC, etc.
via SD Memory Card
V603SH is DPOF compatible



Edit or print images on other devices

Tip

- Camera mode images meet **Design rule for Camera File system (DCF)** set by Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA) to ensure image compatibility with digital cameras, printers, and other devices. Complete compatibility is not guaranteed.
- Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) allows print settings (number of prints, etc.) to be saved to media.

Movie Mask is powered by N-Vision's Virtual Accessory Engine.



Mode Comparison

	Sha-mail	Camera
Image Size	W 240 x H 320 dots (QVGA) W 120 x H 160 dots (QQVGA) W 120 x H 128 dots	W 1632 x H 1224 dots ¹ W 1280 x H 960 dots (SXGA) ¹ W 1024 x H 768 dots (XGA) ¹ W 640 x H 480 dots (VGA) ¹
Save Location	Data Folder (Images)	Camera folder
Image Quality	Standard/Fine	Standard/Fine/High Quality
Optical Zoom	2x (on/off)	
Digital Zoom	W 240 x H 320 dots: 1x - 10x W 120 x H 160 dots: 1x - 20x W 120 x H 128 dots: 1x - 20x	W 1632 x H 1224 dots: None W 1280 x H 960 dots: None W 1024 x H 768 dots: 1x - 1.6x W 640 x H 480 dots: 1x - 2.5x
Attach to Super Mail	OK	OK ²
Format	JPEG (.jpg)	
Memory Capacity	1,900 files ³	310 files ³

¹ For Camera mode images, thumbnails (W 120 x H 160 dots) are saved with the original images.

² Attach thumbnails, reduced images (W 240 x H 320 dots) or images saved to Data Folder.

³ Values are approximate for handset Data Folder, with default image size and quality.

- Tip**
- Saving video, animations, melodies or V-Applications reduces memory for still images.
 - To check memory status, see P.7-35.

File Names

Sha-mail	Default file name is also the captured date and time. Example: 05-03-15_12-34.jpg indicates the image was captured at 12:34, March 15, 2005.*
Camera	Default file name starts from VFSH0001.JPG then VFSH0002.JPG , and so on

*If the same name already exists, **XX** (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name. Sha-mail image files can be renamed (see P.13-46).

- Note** Camera mode images may not appear on handset if file names are changed on PCs, etc. (Camera mode files cannot be renamed on handset.)

Capturing Still Images

Viewer Position

View a summary of key assignments while using camera (see P.7-31 "Key Ops Guide").

1 In Viewer position (see P.1-11), press **[S]** for 1+ seconds

The mode used last activates (default: Sha-mail).

2 Press **[C]** **Functions**, select **Select Mode** and press **[S]**

3 Select **[1]** Sha-mail or **[2]** Camera and press **[S]**

4 Frame image on Display

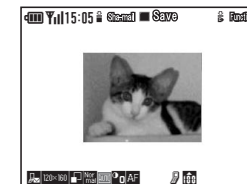
- Viewfinder & Key Assignments: see P.7-5
- Shooting Options: see P.7-25
- Manual Focus Control: see P.7-28
- Focus Lock: see P.7-8



5 Press **[S]** fully

After focus adjustment (see P.7-8), shutter clicks and the captured image appears on Display.

- Change Shutter Click sound (see P.7-25).
- To start over, press **[C]** → Choose **[1]** Yes → Press **[S]**
- Editing Images: see P.13-23 - 13-30
- To save to SD Memory Card, press **[C]** (Long Press) → Select **Save to** → Press **[S]** → Select **[2]** Memory Card → Press **[S]** (Images are saved to SD Memory Card until switched backed to handset.)



- Note** Shutter Click sounds even in Manner Mode (volume is fixed).

- Tip** Set handset to save captured image automatically (see P.7-32 "Auto Save").

6 Press **[S]** to save image

Saving... appears and the image is saved. Viewfinder returns for another shot.

7 Press **[C]** for 1+ seconds to exit

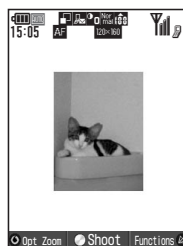
Clamshell Open & Self Portrait Position

Index Menu ▶ Camera

1 Select **1** *Sha-mail* or **2** *Camera* and press **●**

2 Frame image on Display

- Viewfinder & Key Assignments: see P.7-5
- Shooting Options: see P.7-25
- Manual Focus Control: see P.7-28
- Focus Lock: see P.7-8



3 Press **●**

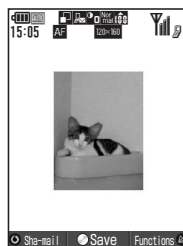
After focus adjustment (see P.7-8), shutter clicks and the captured image appears on Display.

• Change Shutter Click sound (see P.7-25).

• To start over, press **⏮** → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press **●**

• Editing Images: see P.13-23 - 13-30

• To save to SD Memory Card, press **⏮** **Functions** → Select **Save to** → Press **●** → Select **2** *Memory Card* → Press **●**
(Images are saved to SD Memory Card until switched backed to handset.)



Note Shutter Click sounds even in Manner Mode (volume is fixed).

Tip Set handset to save captured images automatically (see P.7-32 "Auto Save").

4 Press **●** to save image

Saving... appears and the image is saved. Viewfinder returns for another shot.

5 Press **⏮** to exit

Note **Self Portrait**
Your image appears on Display as a mirror image. After shutter is released, preview image appears reversed.

Tip **When Captured Image is Unsaved**
Exit? appears.

- Choose **1** *Yes* and press **●** to end. Standby returns.
- Choose **2** *No* and press **●** to return to the captured image.

Before Saving

Add to Phone Book Save images to Phone Book

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ *Sha-mail* → *Capture an image*

Press **⏮** (Long Press) or **⏮** **Functions** → Select **5** *Add to Phone Book* → Press **S** or **●** → Perform Step 4 on P.5-6

Save As Thumb Save only thumbnails (W 120 x H 160 dots) to Data Folder (Images)

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ *Camera* → *Capture an image*

Press **⏮** (Long Press) or **⏮** **Functions** → Select **1** *Save As Thumb* → Press **S** or **●**

Rotate Thumb Rotate and save thumbnails (W 120 x H 160 dots) to Data Folder (Images)

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ *Camera* → *Capture an image*

Press **⏮** (Long Press) or **⏮** **Functions** → Select **2** *Rotate Thumb* → Press **S** or **●**

• To rotate further, press **⏮** for 1+ seconds or **⏮** **Rotate**.
• Press **S** or **●** to save rotated thumbnails.

Note To use the above functions, cancel Auto Save (see P.7-32) before image capture.

Still Image Functions

Before Image Capture

Press **[C]** or **[F]** **Functions** to use the following functions:

Image Quality	Select Standard, Fine or High Quality (see P.7-30)
Image Size	Select image size (see P.7-29)
Auto Focus	Select auto or manual focus (see P.7-28)
Optical Zoom On/Off	Activate or deactivate Optical Zoom (see P.7-28)
Mobile Light	Select mode, color and lighting time (see P.7-27)
Movie Mask*	Decorate faces with graphic items (see P.7-16)
Shoot by Scene	Select a mode according to lighting or subject (see P.7-29)
Toggle Preview	Switch Viewfinder size (see P.7-25)
Self Timer	Set Self Timer (see P.7-26)
Set Burst Mode	Select mode and speed (see P.7-16)
Frame*	Add frames (see P.7-15)
Shutter Click	Change Shutter Click sound (see P.7-25)
Save to	Select handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-31)
Auto Save	Save the captured image automatically (see P.7-32)
Auto Reset	All settings return to defaults when mobile camera shuts down (see P.7-32)
Delete	Delete files on handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-35)
Key Ops Guide	View a summary of key assignments (see P.7-31)
Brightness	Adjust amount of light (see P.7-29)
Select Mode	Switch to other mobile camera modes (see P.7-31)

*Available for Sha-mail mode.

Before Saving

Press **[C]** for 1+ seconds or **[F]** **Functions** to use the following functions:

Sha-mail

1 Toggle Preview	Switch Viewfinder size (see P.7-25)
2 Picture Effect	Edit images (see P.13-23 - 13-30)
3 Save to	Select handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-31)
4 Attachment	Attach images to Super Mail (see P.7-42)
5 Add to Phone Book	Save images to Phone Book (see P.7-13)
6 Delete	Delete files on handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-35)

Camera

1 Save As Thumb	Save only thumbnails (see P.7-13)
2 Rotate Thumb	Rotate thumbnails by 90 degrees (see P.7-13)
3 Attachment	Attach thumbnails or reduced images to Super Mail (see P.7-44)
4 Save to	Select handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-31)
5 Delete	Delete files on handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-35)
6 Toggle Preview	Switch Viewfinder size (see P.7-25)

Adding Frames

Available for Sha-mail Mode

- In addition to Preset Frames, use transparent PNG files obtained via Web or Super Mail.
- In Burst Mode, frame is added to each image.

Index Menu ▶ **Camera** ▶ **Sha-mail** ▶ **Functions (C or F)** ▶ **Special Features**
▶ **Frame**

1 Preset Frames

1 Select 1 Preset Frames and press [S] or [O]

2 Select a frame and press [S] or [O]

Selected image (frame) appears on Display.

■ To toggle between frames, press **[L]** or **[R]**, or press **[O]** **Back** or **[F]** **Next**.

3 Press [S] or [O]

Original Frames

1 Select 2 Original Frames and press [S] or [O]

• Some images may not be used as a frame.

2 Select a frame and press [S] or [O]

Selected image (frame) appears on Display.

■ To change image (frame), press **[C]** or **[O]** **Back** ▶ **Select a file** ▶ **Press [S] or [O]**

3 Press [S] or [O]

• When Image Size is **240x320**, frames smaller than W 120 x H 160 dots are enlarged.

Canceling

1 Choose 3 Off and press [S] or [O]

Movie Mask

Available for Sha-mail Mode

- In addition to Preset Items, use MSK files obtained via Web or Super Mail.
- While Movie Mask is active, Image Size is fixed to **240x320**. Burst Mode and frame are not available, and mobile camera mode cannot be switched.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Sha-mail ▶ Functions (C or B) ▶ Movie Mask

- 1 Select **1** Preset Items or **2** Original Items and press [S] or ●
- 2 Select an item and press [S] or ●
 - Only MSK files can be selected.
 - To toggle between items, press ◀ or ▶, or press ● Back or ● Next.
- 3 Press [S] or ●

Selected item appears on Display.

 - Frame a face and lock focus (see P.7-8) or press ● Place with handset open to fit Movie Mask.
 - To cancel, press C or B Functions ▶ Select Exit ▶ Press [S] or ●

Burst Mode

Use Burst Mode to capture images sequentially.

Press [S] or ● for the first shot. Handset captures the rest automatically.

Mode	Description	Sha-mail	Camera
4-Burst Mode	Capture four separate images	Available	*1
9-Burst Mode	Capture nine separate images	Available	N/A
25-Burst Mode	Capture 25 separate images	*2	N/A
Auto Bracket	Capture nine separate images. Brightness and Mobile Light color vary slightly for each shot.	Available	N/A
Overlap	Capture five images to create a composite image	Available	N/A

*1 Available when Image Size is **480x640**.

*2 Not available when Image Size is **240x320**.

Tip From a Burst Shot file, select an image to save individually (see P.13-22) or send as a Super Mail attachment (see P.7-42).

Activating Burst Mode

Select a mode and shutter interval speed.

- In 4-Burst or 9-Burst Mode, select shutter interval from five levels, or select **Manual** to release shutter manually.
- In 25-Burst Mode, shutter interval is fixed.
- Burst Speed is **Normal** by default.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Functions (C or B) ▶ Special Features ▶ Set Burst Mode

- 1 **In Sha-mail Mode**
 - 1 Select from **1** 4-Burst Mode On to **5** Overlap On and press [S] or ●

For 25-Burst Mode, viewfinder returns with the corresponding indicator (see P.7-5).

 ■ To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press [S] or ●

In Camera Mode

- 1 Select **1** 4-Burst Mode On and press [S] or ●

■ To cancel, choose **2** Off ▶ Press [S] or ●
- 2 Select speed and press [S] or ●

Viewfinder returns with the corresponding indicator (see P.7-5).

Note In low light or while Mobile Light is on, Burst Speed may slow down.

Capturing Burst Mode Images

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Activate Burst Mode

1 Frame image on Display and press [S] fully or [C]

The first frame is captured with subsequent frames captured at selected interval.

■ To cancel, press [C] or [Stop].

■ Press [S] or [C] to save captured images.

■ To cancel during manual shutter control, press [C] (Long Press) or [Cancel] ▶ Choose

1 Yes ▶ Press [S] or [C] (Captured images are deleted.)



Manual Shutter Control (4-Burst Mode & 9-Burst Mode)

Press [S] fully or [C] for each frame.

2 Index Image or a composite image appears

In Camera mode, the first captured image appears.

■ Use [Left], [Right] or [Rotate] to toggle between frames and Index Image.

■ To save images individually, select a frame or Index Image with

[Left], [Right] or [Rotate] ▶ Press [C] (Long Press) or [Functions] ▶ Select

1 Save Image ▶ Press [S] or [C]

■ To send images via Super Mail, select a frame or Index Image with

[Left], [Right] or [Rotate] ▶ Press [C] (Long Press) or [Functions] ▶

Select 2 Attach Image ▶ Press [S] or [C] (Attachment options may appear depending on the image size.)



4-Burst Mode

3 To save, press [S] or [C]

Viewfinder returns with selected Burst Mode active.

• In Sha-mail mode, captured frames are saved to Data Folder (連写) with Index Image.

• In Camera mode, captured frames are saved to Camera folder individually.

Before Saving

Press [C] for 1+ seconds or [Functions] to use the following functions:

1 Save Image	Save a selected image
2 Attach Image	Attach images to Super Mail
3 Save to	Select handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-31)
4 Delete	Delete files on handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-35)
5 Toggle Preview	Switch Viewfinder size (see P.7-25)

Video

Video Mode

Movie Sha-mail

Max Image Size: W 128 x H 96 dots

Record up to 5 or 10 seconds

MPEG-4 Compatible

Attach to Super Mail

Use

Shoot video and attach files or casual video recording

Motion Camera

Record up to 30 minutes

Attach single frames from video to Super Mail or edit video

Use

Use handset as a video camera

Video Camera

Max Image Size: W 320 x H 240 dots

Edit video clips

Use

Record high quality video

Video recording and playback are based on MPEG-4.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA. See <http://www.mpegla.com>. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



For best results, record within 1.5 meters, in well-lit conditions.

Mode Comparison

	Movie Sha-mail	Motion Camera	Video Camera
Image Size	W 128 x H 96 dots (SubQCIF) W 80 x H 60 dots	W 176 x H 144 dots (QCIF) W 128 x H 96 dots (SubQCIF)	W 320 x H 240 dots (QVGA)
Save Location	Data Folder (Movies) ¹	Motion Camera folder	Video Camera folder
Recording Time (per shot)	5 seconds (W 128 x H 96 dots) 10 seconds (W 80 x H 60 dots)	Approx. 3 minutes & 45 seconds (handset) Up to 30 minutes (SD Memory Card)	Approx. 30 seconds (handset) Capacity-based (SD Memory Card)
Image Quality	-	Standard/Fine	-
Optical Zoom	2x (on/off)		
Digital Zoom	1x - 9.5x (W 128 x H 96 dots) 1x - 15x (W 80 x H 60 dots)	1x - 6.9x (W 176 x H 144 dots) 1x - 9.5x (W 128 x H 96 dots)	1x - 2.5x (Record Settings: High) 1x - 5x (Record Settings: Standard)
Attach to Super Mail	OK	Clipped portion only	N/A
Format	MPEG-4 (.3gp)		MPEG-4 (.ASF)
Memory Capacity	380 files ²	Approx. 30 minutes ³	Approx. 200 seconds ³

¹Select handset or SD Memory Card when saving.

²When recorded to Data Folder with no files or recordings.

³When recorded to handset Data Folder with no files or recordings, with default Image Quality (Motion Camera mode), Image Size and Mic Settings.



- Saving still images, animations, melodies or V-Applications reduces memory for video.
- To check memory status, see P.7-35.

File Names

Movie Sha-mail/ Motion Camera	Default file name is also the captured date and time. Example: 05-03-15_12-34.jpg indicates the image was captured at 12:34, March 15, 2005.*
Video Camera	Default file name starts from MOL001.ASF then MOL002.ASF , and so on

*If the same name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name. Movie Sha-mail and Motion Camera files can be renamed (see P.13-46).

Recording Video

Make sure battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory before recording video. When battery is low (🔋), Motion Camera and Video Camera modes are not available. If battery becomes low (🔋) or memory becomes full while recording video, a warning appears and recording stops.

- In Viewer position (see P.1-11), press [S] for 1+ seconds**
The mode used last activates (default: Sha-mail).
When handset is open, press [📞] ➔ Select **Camera** ➔ Press [📞] ➔ Proceed to Step 3
- Press [C] Functions, select Select Mode and press [S]**
- Select [3] Movie Sha-mail, [4] Motion Camera or [5] Video Camera and press [S] or [📞]**
For [4] Motion Camera or [5] Video Camera, **Receive Call while Recording?** appears. Choose [1] Yes or [2] No ➔ Press [S] or [📞]
To prevent disruptions, choose [2] No to activate Off-Line Mode.
- Frame image on Display**
Viewfinder & Key Assignments: see P.7-5
Shooting Options: see P.7-25
Manual Focus Control: see P.7-28
Focus Lock: see P.7-8



Movie Sha-mail Mode



Remaining Recording Time for Motion Camera & Video Camera

- **-000** indicates less than 1 minute left.
- In Motion Camera mode, maximum recording time is 30 minutes regardless of time on Display (when saving to SD Memory Card). Recording ends and **30 minutes passed End** appears.
- Actual recording time may differ from that shown on Display depending on the subject.



Recording Time
Remaining Time (minutes)
Motion Camera Mode

5 Press **S** fully or **●**

Focus adjusts (see P.7-8) and recording begins after a tone.

- To record sounds (Mic Settings is **On**), keep handset within approximately 50 cm from sound source.

Note

Start and end tones sound even in Manner Mode (volume is fixed).

Tip

When Memory is Full

Memory Full Cannot Record appears and Viewfinder returns. Perform Steps 1 - 5 in "When Memory is Full" on P.7-35 to delete files and try again.

In Motion Camera or Video Camera

Recording stops automatically and **Memory Full Cannot Record** appears. Select **1 Complete** and press **S** or **●** to save captured video.

6 Movie Sha-mail Mode

1 To stop, press **S** fully or **●**

Recording stops with a tone.

- Recording automatically ends when the limit is reached.

To play the video, select **2 Check Image** → Press **S** or **●**

To start over, select **3 Cancel** → Press **S** or **●** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **S** or **●**

To add telops, select **6 Telop Edit** → Press **S** or **●** → Perform from Step 4 on P.7-40

2 Select **1 Save** and press **S** or **●**

Video is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.



Tip

When Memory is Full

- Perform Steps 1 - 5 in "When Memory is Full" on P.7-35 to delete files and try again.
- When SD Memory Card is inserted, select **4 Save to** after recording and press **S** or **●** to switch storage media.

Motion Camera/Video Camera Mode

1 To stop, press **S** fully or **●**

Recording stops with a tone.

To save to SD Memory Card, a confirmation appears → Press **S** or **●** (Skip the following step.)

To start over (when saving to handset), select **2 Cancel** → Press **S** or **●** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **S** or **●**

2 Select **1 Complete** and press **S** or **●**

Video is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

7 Press **C** for 1+ seconds or **☰** to exit

Off-Line Mode is canceled if set by choosing **2 No** in Step 3 on P.7-21.

Video Recording Operations

Before Recording

Press **C** or **☰** **Functions** to use the following functions:

Image Quality¹	Select Standard or Fine (see P.7-30)	
Image Size²	Select video image size (see P.7-29)	
Auto Focus	Select auto or manual focus (see P.7-28)	
Optical Zoom On/Off	Activate or deactivate Optical Zoom (see P.7-28)	
Mobile Light	Select mode, color and lighting time (see P.7-27)	
Movie Mask³	Decorate faces with graphic items (see P.7-24)	
Self Timer	Set Self Timer (see P.7-26)	
Toggle Preview²	Switch Viewfinder size (see P.7-25)	
Show/Hide Indicators⁴	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (see P.7-25)	
Mic Settings	Activate to record sounds (see P.7-30)	
Record Settings⁴	Select High or Standard (see P.7-30)	
Option Settings	Save to	Select handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-31)
	Auto Reset	All settings return to defaults when mobile camera shuts down (see P.7-32)
Delete	Delete files on handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-35)	
Key Ops Guide	View a summary of key assignments (see P.7-31)	
Brightness	Adjust amount of light (see P.7-29)	
Select Mode	Switch to other mobile camera modes (see P.7-31)	

¹ Available for Motion Camera mode.

² Available for Movie Sha-mail and Motion Camera modes.

³ Available for Movie Sha-mail mode.

⁴ Available for Video Camera mode.

Before Saving

For Movie Sha-mail mode, the following menu items appear after recording:

1 Save	Save video (see P.7-22)
2 Check Image	Play video (see P.7-22)
3 Cancel	Start over (see P.7-22)
4 Save to	Select handset or SD Memory Card (see P.7-31)
5 Attachment	Attach video to Super Mail (see P.7-44)
6 Telop Edit	Set telops to appear while playing video (see P.7-39)

Movie Mask

Available for Movie Sha-mail Mode

- In addition to Preset Items, use MSK files obtained via Web or Super Mail.
- While Movie Mask is active, Image Size is fixed to **128x96**, and mobile camera mode cannot be switched.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Movie Sha-mail ▶ Functions (C or B) ▶ Movie Mask

- 1 Select 1 Preset Items or 2 Original Items and press [S] or [O].**
- 2 Select an item and press [S] or [O].**
 - Only MSK files can be selected.
 - To toggle between Preset Items, press [Left] or [Right], or press [O] **Back** or [B] **Next**.
- 3 Press [S] or [O].**

Selected item appears on Display.

 - Frame a face and lock focus (see P.7-8) or press [O] **Place** with handset open to fit Movie Mask.
 - To cancel, press [C] or [B] **Functions** ▶ Select **Exit** ▶ Press [S] or [O].

Shooting Options

Available options vary by mode.

Toggle Preview Switch Viewfinder size or hide indicators

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>		

Default 100% (with indicators)

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Functions (C or B)

Select **Toggle Preview** ▶ Press [S] or [O]

- Setting returns to default when mobile camera shuts down.

Show/Hide Indicators Hide indicators to frame image on full Display

Sha-mail	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>		

Default Show Indicators

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Video Camera ▶ Functions (C or B)

Select **5 Show Indicators** or **5 Hide Indicators** ▶ Press [S] or [O]

- Setting returns to default when mobile camera shuts down.

Shutter Click Change Shutter Click sound

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>		

Default Pattern 1

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Sha-mail or Camera ▶ Functions (C or B) ▶ Option Settings ▶ Shutter Click

Select a pattern ▶ Press [S] or [O]

- To check sound, press [O] **Play**.
- Press [O] **Stop** to stop.

Note

- Volume is fixed.
- Shutter Click sound for Burst Mode is unique and fixed.

Self Timer

Release shutter automatically

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>		

Default Off/10 Seconds

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Functions (C) or (P)

Activating Self Timer (Still Image)

Select **Special Features** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select **Self Timer** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select **Self Timer On** ▶ Press [S] or (P)

- Viewfinder returns (P appears).

Activating Self Timer (Video)

Select **Self Timer** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select **Self Timer On** ▶ Press [S] or (P)

- Viewfinder returns (P appears).

Timer Countdown (Still Image)

Select **Special Features** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select **Self Timer** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select **Set Time** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select time ▶ Press [S] or (P)

Timer Countdown (Video)

Select **Self Timer** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select **Set Time** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select time ▶ Press [S] or (P)

Self Timer Shooting (Still Image)

Press [S] (Full Press) or (P)

- Tone sounds and shutter is released after set time.

To save images, press [S] or (P).

Self Timer Recording (Video)

Press [S] (Full Press) or (P) ▶ Tone sounds and video recording starts after set time ▶ Press [S] or (P)

To save video (to handset), select **Complete** or **Save** ▶ Press [S] or (P)

Self Timer Details

- To cancel Self Timer during countdown, press (C), (P) **Cancel** or (P).
 - Viewfinder returns. (Self Timer setting remains.)
- To release shutter manually during countdown, press [S] or (P). Image is captured or video recording starts and Self Timer is canceled.
- Incoming calls and Alarm interrupt countdown (Sha-mail, Camera and Movie Sha-mail modes). Self Timer setting remains. In Motion Camera and Video Camera modes, Alarm operates after mobile camera shuts down.
 - During countdown, the following settings are not available: Brightness, Mobile Light and Select Mode.

Mobile Light

Select mode, color and lighting time

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>		

*Full Auto is not available.

Default Off/1 Minute/Lychee

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Functions (C) or (P) ▶ Mobile Light

Mobile Light

Select from **Portrait Mode to Off** ▶ Press [S] or (P)

Portrait Mode	Mobile Light activates and brightens for still image capture
Full Auto (for Still Images)	Mobile Light activates when light is low and brightens for image capture
Macro Mode	Mobile Light activates and brightness is constant

Lighting Time

Select **Strobe Light** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select **Lighting Time** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select time ▶ Press [S] or (P)

Color

Select **Strobe Light** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select **Color** ▶ Press [S] or (P) ▶ Select a color ▶ Press [S] or (P)

Note Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.

Tip Select shorter Lighting Time to lengthen Battery Time.

Auto Focus Select auto or manual focus

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>		

Default Standard

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ *Select a camera mode* ▶ *Functions (C or B)* ▶ Auto Focus

Select a mode ▶ Press **S** or **●**

- **Macro** is not available when Optical Zoom is active.

Standard	Distance between subjects and mobile camera is measured to adjust focus (default setting)
Manual	Adjust focus manually (see "Manual Focus Control" below)
Macro	Focus adjusts faster for close-up shots
Landscape	Focus adjusts faster for far subjects

Manual Focus Control

- **Frame image on Display** ▶ **Adjust focus with** **◀**, **▶** or **⊕** ▶ Press **S** or **●**
 - Zoom functions are disabled during focus adjustment.
 - For more, see Step 5 and onward on **P.7-11** or Step 3 and onward on **P.7-12** (for capturing still images), or see Step 5 and onward on **P.7-22** (for recording video).

Optical Zoom Activate or deactivate 2x Optical Zoom

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>		

Default Optical Zoom Off

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ *Select a camera mode* ▶ *Functions (C or B)*

Select Optical Zoom On or Optical Zoom Off ▶ Press **S** or **●**

- In Viewer position, press **Ⓜ** to toggle Optical Zoom on/off.
- Optical Zoom is not available when Auto Focus is set to **Macro**.
- When using Optical Zoom, maintain enough distance from subject to focus.

Tip

Use Optical Zoom with Digital Zoom (see **P.7-6**). For more, see **P.7-10**, **P.7-20**.

Image Settings

Available settings vary by mode.

Brightness Adjust light sensitivity for still images and video

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>		

Default 0 (standard)

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ *Select a camera mode* ▶ *Functions (C or B)* ▶ Brightness

Select from five levels ▶ Press **S** or **●**

- Setting returns to default when mobile camera shuts down.

Image Size Select image size

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>		

Default Sha-mail: 120x160, Camera: 480x640
Movie Sha-mail & Motion Camera: 128x96

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ *Select a camera mode* ▶ *Functions (C or B)* ▶ Image Size

Select a size ▶ Press **S** or **●**

Shoot by Scene Select a mode according to lighting or subject

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>		

Default Full Auto

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ *Sha-mail or Camera* ▶ *Functions (C or B)* ▶ Shoot by Scene

Select a mode ▶ Press **S** or **●**

1 Full Auto	Automatic adjustment
2 Night View	Use in low light conditions
3 Action	Best suited for action sports or fast-moving subjects
4 Text	Most suitable for high contrast black and white subjects

Image Quality

Select image or video quality

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

Default Standard (Fine for Sha-mail 240 x 320)

Index Menu

▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Functions (ⓐ or ⓑ) ▶ Image Quality

Select quality ▶ Press **S** or **●**

• In Camera mode, **High Quality** is available.

■ To cancel image correction (Camera mode only), open Image Quality menu ▶ Press ⓐ (Long Press) or ⓑ **Filter** ▶ Choose **Off** ▶ Press **S** or **●**



The image quality increases as follows: **Standard** → **Fine** → **High Quality**. Saving higher quality images/video requires more space in memory.

Record Settings

Set priority to recording moving subjects or image quality

Sha-mail	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Motion Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Default High

Index Menu

▶ Camera ▶ Video Camera ▶ Functions (ⓐ or ⓑ) ▶ Record Settings

Select **1 High (15 fps)** or **2 Standard (10 fps)** ▶ Press **S** or **●**

• Moving subjects appear smoother in **High (15 fps)** and the image quality is better in **Standard (10 fps)**.

Mic Settings

Record sounds when recording video

Sha-mail	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="checkbox"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Default Mic On

Index Menu

▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Functions (ⓐ or ⓑ) ▶ Mic Settings

Choose **Mic On** or **Mic Off** ▶ Press **S** or **●**

• When activating microphone in Motion Camera mode, select sound quality (Standard or Fine).



• Image quality is slightly different between Mic On and Mic Off.
• Mic On (Fine) recording requires more space in memory and shortens recording time.

Additional Settings

Available settings vary by mode.

Key Ops Guide

View a summary of key assignments for operations with handset open (clamshell open)

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>		

Index Menu

▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Functions (ⓐ or ⓑ)

Select **Key Ops Guide** ▶ Press **S** or **●**

Save to

Select handset or SD Memory Card to save image/video files

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>		

Default Handset

Index Menu

▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Functions (ⓐ or ⓑ) ▶ Option Settings ▶ Save to

Select **1 Handset** or **2 Memory Card** ▶ Press **S** or **●**

Select Mode

Switch to other mobile camera modes

Sha-mail	<input type="checkbox"/>	Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="checkbox"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>		

*Not available when Movie Mask is active.

Index Menu

▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Functions (ⓐ or ⓑ) ▶ Select Mode

Select a mode ▶ Press **S** or **●**

• Mode used last activates whenever mobile camera is activated with Camera Startup key.

Auto Save Set handset to save captured images automatically

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="checkbox"/>
Motion Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Sha-mail or Camera ▶ Functions (C) or (M) ▶ Option Settings ▶ Auto Save

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ▶ Press [S] or (M)

Auto Reset All settings return to defaults when mobile camera shuts down

Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>	Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Movie Sha-mail	<input type="radio"/>
Motion Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>		

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Select a camera mode ▶ Functions (C) or (M) ▶ Option Settings ▶ Auto Reset

Choose **1 On (activate Auto Reset)** or **2 Off** ▶ Press [S] or (M)

- Auto Reset setting applies to all mobile camera modes.
- Setting does not affect Auto Save setting.

Opening Images & Playing Video

Opening Still Images

- To open files from Data Folder, see P.13-6.
- View images on PCs, TVs or other display devices (see P.16-43).

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files

1 Select **1 Sha-mail Images** or **2 Camera Images** and press [S] or (M)

- For **2 Camera Images**, select a folder ▶ Press [S] or (M)
- To switch to SD Memory Card, press (C) (Long Press) or (M) **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press [S] or (M)

2 Select a file and press [S] or (M)

- Image appears.
- To open other files, press (C) or (M).



Sha-mail Images

Tip To view available functions, open a file and press (C) for 1+ seconds or (M) **Menu**. For more, see P.13-21 - 13-34.

Opening Burst Shot Files

- Sha-mail mode Burst Shot images are saved to Data Folder (連写). To open images in Data Folder, see P.13-6.
- To open Camera mode Burst Shot images, see P.7-32 "Opening Still Images."

Camera Mode Images

- Images are reduced to fit Display. To restore the original size, see "Thumbnail or Original Size View" below.
- Use (M) to scroll up, down, left and right.
- Press [S] or (M) to rotate images 90 degrees clockwise.

Thumbnail or Original Size View

Available for Camera mode images.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Camera Images ▶ 100IMAGE ▶ Open a file

1 Press (C) for 1+ seconds or (M) **Menu**

- #### 2 Select **Show Thumbnails** or **Original Size** and press [S] or (M)
- To return to the reduced size (Standard view), press (C) (Long Press) or (M) **Menu** ▶ Select **Standard** ▶ Press [S] or (M)

Saving as Wallpaper or Data Folder File

Use Camera mode images as Wallpaper or save to Data Folder to send as Super Mail attachments.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Camera Images ▶ 100IMAGE ▶ Open a file

1 Press (C) for 1+ seconds or (M) **Menu**

- #### 2 Select **Save As Wallpaper** or **To Data Folder** and press [S] or (M)
- For **Save As Wallpaper**, press [S] or (M).
 - For **To Data Folder**, select a folder ▶ Press [S] or (M)

- Tip**
- Image quality may change when used as Wallpapers or saved to Data Folder.
 - From Standard view, the reduced image is saved.
 - When saving from Thumbnail view, select **Wallpaper Thumbs** or **Data Folder Thumbs**. For Wallpaper, select a display type. For Data Folder, the image in W 120 x H 160 is saved.
 - When saving from Original Size view, select **Save as Wallpaper** or **Data Folder Images**. Only the portion on Display (W 240 x H 320) is saved.

Playing Video

- To open files from Data Folder, see **P.13-6**.
- View video on PCs, TVs or other display devices (see **P.16-43**).

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files

1 Select **3** *MovieSha-mail Data*, **4** *Motion Camera Data* or **5** *Video Camera Data* and press **S** or **●**

- For **5** *Video Camera Data*, select a folder ▶ Press **S** or **●**
- To switch to SD Memory Card, press **C** (Long Press) or **⌂** **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **S** or **●**

2 Select a file and press **S** or **●**

Video plays and stops automatically at the end.

- For Video Camera files on SD Memory Card, playback resumes from where it was stopped.
- While playing Movie Sha-mail video, press **⏮** or **⏪** to open next or previous files.

- To rotate video images, press **C** (Long Press) or **⌂** **Menu** ▶ Select **Rotate Image** ▶ Press **S** or **●** ▶ Select amount to rotate or **Use Current** (no rotation) ▶ Press **S** or **●**
- To play from the beginning (Video Camera files only), press **C** (Long Press) or **⌂** **Menu** ▶ Select **Play from Start** ▶ Press **S** or **●**
- To add telops (Movie Sha-mail files only), press **C** (Long Press) or **⌂** **Menu** ▶ Select **Other Edit Functions** ▶ Press **S** or **●** ▶ Perform from Step 3 on **P.7-40**
- To open other files, press **C** or **⏪** **Back**.



Movie Sha-mail Images

Note

Among Motion Camera files, V603SH plays only **MPEG-4** video files. Nancy video files are not supported.

Tip

Press **⏮** for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel Manner Mode during playback.

Playback Operations

Fast Forward¹	Press ⏩ . During fast forward, press ● to pause.
Fast Reverse¹	Press ⏮ . During fast reverse, press ● to pause.
Stop	Press ● to pause
Adjust Volume	Press ⏮ (up) or ⏭ (down) to adjust volume (with Mic On). Select from six levels (0 - 5).
Change Display Size²	Press ⏮ to toggle display size as follows: enlarged (with indicators) → enlarged (no indicators) → 100% (with indicators) (When enlarged, images may not fit Display.)

¹Not available for Movie Sha-mail files.

²For Video Camera files, press to show or hide indicators.

Memory Status

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 1 ▶ Memory

1 Select **3** *File Cabinet* and press **S** or **●**

Memory usage status appears as a percentage (%).

- To check SD Memory Card status, select **3** *File Cabinet* ▶ Press **C** (Long Press) or **⌂** **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **S** or **●**

When Memory is Full

When saving images, memory shortage warning may appear. To save images, press **C** or **⌂** and follow these steps to delete files.

1 Press **C** for 1+ seconds or **⌂** **Functions**

2 Select *Delete* and press **●**

3 Select a file type and press **S** or **●**

- To switch to SD Memory Card, press **C** (Long Press) or **⌂** **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **S** or **●**

4 Select a file and press **S** or **●**

5 Choose **1** *Yes* and press **S** or **●**

Editing Video

Edit ¹	Save portion of 5 or 10 seconds from selected frame as a new file
Still Image ¹	Save selected frame as a new file
Select 2 points ²	Save portion between two points as a new file
Delete Front Delete Back ²	Save portion before or after selected frame as a new file
Delete All ²	Delete video being played
Telop Edit ³	Add telops (text) to video

¹ Available for Motion Camera files.

² Available for Motion Camera and Video Camera files.

³ Available for Movie Sha-mail files.

Note

- Some files may not be edited.
- Edited video may not play properly if SD Memory Card is not formatted for V603SH.

Tip

Clipped Motion Camera video portions are saved to Data Folder (Movies) as MPEG-4 files with a .3gp extension. Use them as Super Mail attachments or add telops.

Clipping Video

Set a size of portion to clip, reduce the entire video image or cut out center portions.

- If the original video was captured with **Mic On (Fine)**, sound is disabled in clipped portions.
- Clip up to 10 seconds when Image Size (see **P.7-37**) is **80x60** and up to 5 seconds when **128x96** is selected.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Motion Camera Data ▶ Play video

- 1 Press** **to start clipping**
Video pauses.
- 2 Press** **Edit**
- 3 Select** **1 Edit** and press
- 4 Choose** **1 Yes** and press
- 5 Use** **to select a frame**
To cancel, press **Back**.

6 Press

Starting from the selected frame, portion of 5 or 10 seconds is clipped depending on the image size. Press to stop manually.

- To play clipped portion before saving, select **2 Check Image** ▶ Press
- To start over, select **3 Cancel** ▶ Press
- To switch storage media, select **4 Save to** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Handset** or **Memory Card** ▶ Press
- To send via Super Mail, select **5 Attachment** ▶ Press ▶ Perform Step 2 in "Video Clips" on **P.7-44**
- To add telops, select **6 Telop Edit** ▶ Press ▶ Perform from Step 4 on **P.7-40**



7 To save, select 1 Save and press

The portion is processed into the size set in Image Size (see below) and saved to Data Folder (Movies).

Edit Setting

When clipping video, select **80x60** or **128x96** in Image Size.

When original image is larger than selected size, use these options:

Reduce	Entire video image is reduced
Clipping	Center portion is cut out

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Motion Camera Data ▶ Play video

- 1 Press** **to start clipping**
Video pauses.
- 2 Press** **Edit**
- 3 Select** **2 Edit Setting** and press
- 4 Selecting Clipping Options**
 - 1 Select** **1 Mode Setting** and press
 - 2 Select** **1 Clipping** or **2 Reduce** and press

Selecting Size

- 1 Select** **2 Image Size** and press
- 2 Select** a size and press

Saving Images from Video

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Motion Camera Data ▶ Play video

- 1 Press **○** to select a frame
Video pauses.
 - Use **◀▶** to select other frames.
- 2 Press **▶** **Edit**
- 3 Select **Still Image** and press **○**
- 4 Press **○**
Selected frame is saved to Data Folder (Images) and Viewfinder returns.

Clipping Portions between Two Points

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Motion Camera or Video Camera Data ▶ Play video

- 1 Press **○** to select a frame
Video pauses.
 - Use **◀▶** to select other frames.
- 2 Press **▶** **Edit**
- 3 Select **Select 2 points** and press **○**
- 4 Choose **Yes** and press **○**
 - Use **◀▶** to change start point.
- 5 Press **○**
Playback resumes.
- 6 Press **○** at the end point
 - Use **◀▶** to change end point.
- 7 Press **▶** **Set**
Clipped portion is saved and Viewfinder returns.

Cropping Video Clips

Delete the portion before or after the selected frame to save the rest as a new file.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Motion Camera or Video Camera Data ▶ Play video

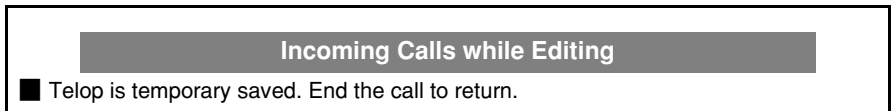
- 1 Press **○** to select a frame
Video pauses.
 - Use **◀▶** to select other frames.
- 2 Press **▶** **Edit**
- 3 Select **Delete Front** or **Delete Back** and press **○**
 - To delete the entire file, select **Delete All** ▶ Press **○** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **○**
(Skip the following steps.)

Note The first and last frames cannot be selected for this operation.

- 4 Choose **Yes** and press **○**
- 5 Use **◀▶** to select start point
 - Select **Delete Front** or **Delete Back** to delete the portion before or after the selected frame.
 - To cancel, press **○** **Back**.
- 6 Press **○**
- 7 Choose **Yes** and press **○**
A confirmation appears and the remaining portion is saved as a new file.

Editing Telops

Set telops to appear while playing video. Select timing, add effects, etc.
Telops are available for Movie Sha-mail files.



Note Telops do not appear in Viewer position.

Entering Text

Save up to 10 telops of up to 48 single-byte alphanumeric within three lines per entry.

- After text entry, set timing and time period for telops.
- To enter telops before saving Movie Sha-mail video, start from Step 3.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Movie Sha-mail Data

- 1 Select a file and press** **Menu**
- 2 Select *Other Edit Functions* and press**
- 3 Select *Telop Edit* and press**
- 4 Select a number and press**
 - To edit saved telops, press **Menu** ▶ Select **2 Change** ▶ Press
 - To delete saved telops one by one, press **Menu** ▶ Select **3 Delete** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press (Skip the following steps.)
 - To delete all saved telops, press **Menu** ▶ Select **4 Delete All** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press (Skip the following steps.)
- 5 Select **1 Telop Text** and press**
- 6 Enter text and press**
- 7 Select **2 Show Time** and press**

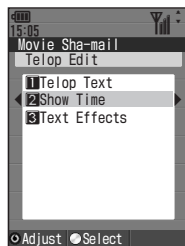
Video file opens.
- 8 Use to select start point and press** **Start**
 - Use (**Play / Stop**) or to adjust start point.

Note **Start** does not appear if telops are already set in the selected positions.

- 9 Select end point and press** **End**
 - To add effects, see P.7-41.
- 10 Press **Adjust****

Telop is added.

 - To add more telops, repeat Steps 4 - 10.
 - Press **Set** to exit.
 - To cancel, press or ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press



Adding Effects

- More than one effect can be applied per telop entry.
- Among Select Text (in Font Color), Highlight and Blink, two effects can be used together.
- Setting Highlight disables Scroll setting, and vice versa.

Telop Effects

Change font color and size or add effects

■ Follow these steps after Step 9 on P.7-40.

Changing Color of Entire Telop

Select **3 Text Effects** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Font Color** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 All** ▶ Press ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

Changing Color of Portion

Select **3 Text Effects** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Font Color** ▶ Press ▶ Select **2 Select Text** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select the first character ▶ Press ▶ Use to specify text ▶ Press ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

Changing Background Color

Select **3 Text Effects** ▶ Press ▶ Select **2 Background Color** ▶ Press ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

Highlighting

Select **3 Text Effects** ▶ Press ▶ Select **4 Highlight** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select the first character ▶ Press ▶ Use to specify text ▶ Press ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

Flashing Telop

Select **3 Text Effects** ▶ Press ▶ Select **5 Blink** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select the first character ▶ Press ▶ Use to specify text ▶ Press

Changing Font Size

Select **3 Text Effects** ▶ Press ▶ Select **6 Size** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Standard** or **2 Tiny** ▶ Press

Telop Scroll

Select a direction and visual effect for telop scroll

■ Follow these steps after Step 9 on P.7-40.

Scroll Direction

Select **3 Text Effects** ▶ Press ▶ Select **3 Scroll** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Direction** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Left to Right** or **2 Right to Left** ▶ Press

Scroll Effects

Select **3 Text Effects** ▶ Press ▶ Select **3 Scroll** ▶ Press ▶ Select **2 Effect** ▶ Press ▶ Select an option ▶ Press

Frame In	Telop comes in from an end, then disappears in the center
Frame Out	Telop appears in the center and scrolls out
Rolling	Telop scrolls from end to end

Cancel Effect

Cancel all Text Effects

■ Follow these steps after Step 9 on P.7-40.

- Select **3** **Text Effects** → Press **⊙** → Select **7** **Cancel Effect** → Press **⊙**
 → Choose **1** **Yes** → Press **⊙**

Sending Images & Video

Sha-mail Mode Images

Capture and send images as Super Mail attachments.

- To attach Burst Shot images, use **⊙** to select a frame or Index Image.
- To attach images in Data Folder, see P.13-10.

Index Menu → Camera → Sha-mail → Capture an image

1 Before saving, press **⊙** Sha-mail

Image is saved to Data Folder and Super Mail Composition window opens with image attached.

- To send images without saving to Data Folder, see **⊙** P.6-8 "Save & Send Image."

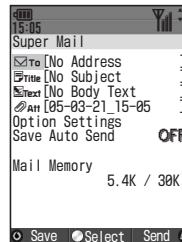
Tip

2-Touch Mail List

- Select a recipient and press **⊙**. Super Mail Composition window opens (see **⊙** P.3-3).
- 2-Touch Mail: see **⊙** P.6-2

When Recipient is not in 2-Touch Mail List

Select **⊙** <Mail Address> and press **⊙**.



2 Complete other fields and send Super Mail (see **⊙** P.3-3)

Tip

For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.18-21).

QVGA Size Images

Send W 240 x H 320 images or reduce to W 120 x H 160 dots first.

Some Vodafone handsets may not be able to handle QVGA size images.

Index Menu

→ Camera → Sha-mail → Capture an image → Functions (⊙) → Attachment

1 Select **1** Attach Full Image or **3** Attach 1/4 Size and press **⊙**

Image is saved to Data Folder and Super Mail Composition window opens with image attached.

- To send images without saving to Data Folder, see **⊙** P.6-8 "Save & Send Image."
- 2-Touch Mail List: see P.7-42

2 Complete other fields and send Super mail (see **⊙** P.3-3)

Split Images

Split W 240 x H 320 images into four and attach to Super Mail.

Split Mail transmission charges are equivalent to sending four Super Mail messages.

Index Menu

→ Camera → Sha-mail → Capture an image → Functions (⊙) → Attachment

1 Select **2** Attach Split Mail and press **⊙**

Image is saved to Data Folder and Select Address window opens (image attached).

- To send images without saving to Data Folder, see **⊙** P.6-8 "Save & Send Image."
- 2-Touch Mail List: see P.7-42

2 Select or enter a recipient (see **⊙** P.3-4)

Four messages with split images are saved to Outbox.

Tip

For each Split Mail message, subject is automatically entered as: **Upper Left, Upper Right, Lower Left** and **Lower Right**.

3 Sending Messages from Outbox

1 Choose **1** Yes and press **⊙**

- Outbox opens. See **⊙** P.4-20 to send Super Mail.

Saving Messages to Outbox

1 Choose **2** No and press **⊙**

7

Mobile Camera

7

Mobile Camera

Camera Mode Images

Send thumbnails or reduced images (W 240 x H 320 dots).

Some Super/Long Mail compatible Vodafone handsets may not be able to handle W 240 x H 320 images.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera ▶ Capture an image ▶ Functions (Ⓢ) ▶ Attachment

- 1 Select **1** Attach Thumbnail or **2** Attach 240 x 320 and press **Ⓢ****
Image is saved to Camera folder and Super Mail Composition window opens with image attached.
 - To send images without saving to Camera folder, see **Ⓢ**P.6-8 "Save & Send Image."
2-Touch Mail List: see **P.7-42**

- 2 Complete other fields and send Super Mail (see **Ⓢ**P.3-3)**

Tip For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.18-21**).

Video Clips

Send Movie Sha-mail files via Super Mail.

- To attach video files saved in Data Folder, see **P.13-10**.
- Some Super Mail compatible Vodafone handsets may not be able to handle attached video.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Movie Sha-mail ▶ Record video

- 1 Before saving, press **Ⓢ** Sha-mail**
Video is saved to Data Folder and Super Mail Composition window opens with the image attached.
 - To send video clips without saving to Data Folder, see **Ⓢ**P.6-8 "Save & Send Image."
2-Touch Mail List: see **P.7-42**

- 2 Complete other fields and send Super Mail (see **Ⓢ**P.3-3)**

Note

- Send video clips to Super Mail compatible Vodafone handsets.
- Only MPEG-4 compatible Vodafone handsets support Movie Sha-mail files.

Tip

- To send Motion Camera files, clip portions (see **P.7-36 - 7-37**) and send to MPEG-4 compatible Vodafone handsets.
- For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.18-21**).

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) is a standard specification for requesting prints from digital cameras. Select Camera mode images and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

- DPOF does not support images downloaded via Web or Super Mail.
- If SD Memory Card capacity becomes insufficient during operation, a warning message appears. Delete files and try again.
- For printing procedures, see the printer manual.

Selecting Images & Prints

- To specify the same number of copies for all DCF images on SD Memory Card, see **P.7-46**.

Index Menu ▶ Memory Card ▶ Specify DPOF Prints

- 1 Select a folder and press **Ⓢ****
Thumbnails appear.
- 2 Use **Ⓢ** to select an image and press **Ⓢ** Copies**
- 3 Enter a number of copies to print (01 - 99) and press **Ⓢ****
To cancel, enter **00** and press **Ⓢ**.
- 4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 for other images**
- 5 Press **Ⓢ** Set**
- 6 Press **Ⓢ** Set**

Note

- Print settings made on other devices cannot be changed on handset.
- Print settings on handset replace those made on other devices.
- Some settings may not be supported depending on the printer or printing services.
- Process may take a while if print settings are made for many images.
- If image files are deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, print settings change. Perform Cancel All (see **P.7-46** "Number of Copies") and start over with settings.

Print Settings

Number of Copies Apply a number to all DCF images to print the same number of copies

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *SpecifyDPOF Prints* ▶ *DCIM*

Select **1** *Number of Copies* ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Enter a number (00 - 99) ▶ Press **⏏**

To cancel all print settings, select **2** *Cancel All* ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Select **1** *Ok* ▶ Press **⏏**

Add Date Add dates to prints

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *SpecifyDPOF Prints* ▶ *DCIM* ▶ *Add Date*

Choose **1** *On (add date)* or **2** *Off (no date)* ▶ Press **⏏**

Index Print Create Index Print (a print with thumbnails)

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *SpecifyDPOF Prints* ▶ *DCIM* ▶ *Index Print*

Choose **1** *On (create Index Print)* or **2** *Off* ▶ Press **⏏**

Check Settings View current print settings

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *SpecifyDPOF Prints* ▶ *DCIM*

Select **5** *Check Settings* ▶ Press **⏏**

Postcard & Calendar

Add text or calendar mask to Camera mode images to create original Postcards or Calendars.

- Created Postcard/Calendar images are saved to Camera folder as new files.
- Postcard images are compressed when created and the quality may change.

Postcard

Index Menu ▶ *Camera* ▶ *Camera Files* ▶ *Camera Images* ▶ *100IMAGE*

1 Select an image and press **⏏**

- Alternatively, select an image and press **⏏** **Menu**. Proceed to Step 3.

To rotate images 90 degrees clockwise, press **⏏** to rotate images 90 degrees clockwise.

2 Press **⏏** **Menu**

3 Select *Postcard* and press **⏏**

4 Select **1** *Text* and press **⏏**

5 Enter text and press **⏏**

- Enter up to 200 single-byte alphanumeric characters (up to five lines are available).

• Animated Pictographs stay still in Postcard images.

6 Select a color combination and press **⏏**

- To not to outline text, select **0** *Border* ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Choose **2** *Off* ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Select a color combination ▶ Press **⏏**

7 Select a size and press **⏏**

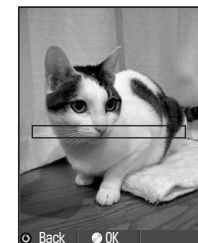
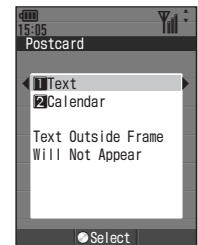
A rectangle appears indicating the location of text.

8 Use **⬅** to move the rectangle to target location and press **⏏**

- Text appears for confirmation.

9 Press **⏏**

10 Select **1** *Handset* or **2** *Memory Card* and press **⏏**






Tip

Postcard images are saved with thumbnails (see P.7-10). Portions of thumbnails may turn black depending on the size of original images.

Calendar




Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Camera Images ▶ 100IMAGE

- 1 Select an image and press** 
- Alternatively, select an image and press  **Menu**. Proceed to Step 3.
 - Press  to rotate images 90 degrees clockwise.

2 Press  **Menu**

3 Select *Postcard* and press 



4 Select  *Calendar* and press 

5 Select  *Month (Small)* or  *2-Month* and press 

Current month appears.




6 Enter month and press 

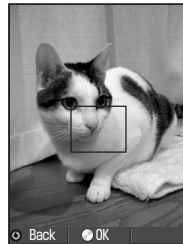
A rectangle appears indicating the location of calendar mask.

7 Use  to move the rectangle to target location and press 

Calendar mask appears for confirmation.

8 Press 

9 Select  *Handset* or  *Memory Card* and press 



Tip

- Change color for days of the week in Set Color (see **P.8-3**).
- Calendar images are saved with thumbnails (see **P.7-10**). Portions of thumbnails may turn black depending on the size of original images.



Display

Wallpaper

Use Wallpaper to show an image or animation in Standby. Choose from preset images, images captured with mobile camera, and images or animation downloaded via Web or Super Mail.

- Select **Original** to set up to 4 images at one time. When multiple images are selected, Wallpaper changes every 2 hours (the interval is adjustable).
- Some images may not be used.
- Wallpaper is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Settings 2** ▶ **Display Settings** ▶ **Wallpaper**

1 Preset Images

- 1 Select **1 Preset Images** and press ●
- 2 Select an image and press ●

Original Images

- 1 Select **2 Original** and press ●
 - To change the interval between images, press **Menu** ▶ Select **3 Interval Setting** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter time (01 - 24 hours) ▶ Press ●
- 2 Select **1** and press ●
 - To delete an existing entry, select a number ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **2 Delete** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press ● (Delete **2** to **4** first to delete **1**.)
- 3 Select an image from Data Folder (see P.13-6) and press ●

The following display options appear. Options do not appear for some images, depending on size. (In this case, skip ahead to Step **5**.)

Centered	Image appears at the center in its original size
Tile	Duplicates of the image are arranged like tiles over Display
Full Screen	Image is enlarged to cover the full display area
Enlarge Display	Image is enlarged until the width or height reaches the edges of Display

- 4 Select an option and press ●
- 5 Press ●
 - Existing image is replaced. (Images not saved to Data Folder are deleted.)
 - To save more images, repeat Steps **2** - **5**. (In Step **2**, select from **2** - **4**.)
- 6 Press ● **Set** to end

Cancel

- 1 Choose **3 Off** and press ●

Tip

- Even if Wallpaper is not set, it is automatically activated when an image from Vodafone live! or Data Folder is saved as Wallpaper.
- When a V-Application is set for Standby, Wallpaper may not appear.
- Using Wallpaper shortens Battery Time. Using animation or multiple images consumes more handset power.
- Wallpaper does not appear when Calendar (**Large Stamp** or **Schedule & Stamps**) appears in Standby (see "Calendar" below).
- Animation may stop after 15 seconds of inactivity. Calendar (**Month (Large) - 6-Month**) does not appear during animation (see "Calendar" below).

Clock & Calendar

Choose a Clock type and layout or use Calendar for Standby.

Clock Display

Clock Display is **Large 1** by default.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Clock** ▶ **Clock Display**

- 1 Select from **1 Large 1** to **4 Small 2** and press ●
 - To hide Clock, choose **3 Off** ▶ Press ●

Tip

When **3 Off** is set, Calendar (see below) is also hidden.

Calendar

Select from seven Calendars: Month (**Large Stamp**, **Schedule & Stamps**, **Large** and **Small**), 2-Month, 4-Month and 6-Month.

- Select **Large Stamp** to show stamps on Large Calendar. Select **Schedule & Stamps** to show Schedule as well as stamps.
- For **Month (Small)** and **2-Month**, select a display position.
- Calendar is **Large Stamp** by default.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Clock** ▶ **Clock Display**

- 1 Select **5 Calendar** and press ●
 - To hide Calendar, choose **3 Off** ▶ Press ●

Tip

When **3 Off** is set, Clock (see above) is also hidden.

- 2 Select from **1 Large Stamp** to **7 6-Month** and press ●
 - For **4 Month (Small)** and **5 2-Month**, select a display position ▶ Press ●
 - To customize colors of the days of the week, select **3 Set Color** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a day ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a color ▶ Press ●

Calendar Contents



- Current Date**
 - Highlighted
- Scheduled Date**
 - Underlined, except when stamp appears (see P.16-14 for more about Schedule)
- Stamp (see P.16-15)**

Schedule & Stamps

- Press once to open the previous month, and press once to open the next month. Use to toggle between months. (In 2-Month Calendar, display changes by one month at a time. In 4-Month and 6-Month Calendars, display changes by two months at a time.) Press to return to the current month.
- Press to hide Calendar temporarily. While Calendar is hidden, press to open User Shortcut or to open Call History. (Press again to show Calendar.)

- Tip**
- Calendar appears on Wallpaper. However, Wallpaper does not appear when Calendar is **Large Stamp** or **Schedule & Stamps**.
 - Calendar does not appear while a Wallpaper animation is active.
 - When a V-Application is set for Standby, Calendar may not appear.

Fonts

Change the size, weight and style of handset fonts.

- Change font size for menus and lists, text entry, mail messages and Web. They share the same font weight and style.
- Kanji fonts are not affected by this setting.
- **Standard** is set for size, weight and style by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Font Settings*

1 Font Size

- 1 Select **1 Font Size** and press .
- 2 Select from **1 Menus & Lists** to **4 Web Menus & Text** and press .
- 3 Select a size and press .

Font Weight

- 1 Select **2 Font Weight** and press .
- 2 Select from **1 Thin** to **4 Bold** and press .

Font Style

- 1 Select **3 Font Style** and press .
- 2 Select **1 Standard** or **2 Pop** and press .

Changing Font Size during Text Entry

- In a text entry window, press **Menu** ▶ **Select Font Size** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Tiny**, **2 Standard** or **3 Large** ▶ Press
 - The setting remains even after exiting text entry.

- Note**
- Fonts used in V-Applications, E-Animation files, SMAF files, etc. are fixed.
 - Font style of E-Books are fixed.

- Tip**
- V603SH employs LC Fonts for easing viewing of handset menus and messages. LC Font/LC FONT, as well as the LC logo are all registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.



Display Images

Select images to use them for Power On/Off, incoming calls and Alarm windows. Use images captured with mobile camera or received via Web or Super Mail. Display Images is **Off** for all items by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Display Images*

- 1 Select an item and press .
- 2 Select **1 Fixed Graphic 1**, **2 Fixed Graphic 2** or **3 Original** and press
 - For **1 Fixed Graphic 1** and **2 Fixed Graphic 2**, skip ahead to Step 5.
 - To cancel Display Images, choose **4 Off** and press . (Skip the following steps.)
 - When Original image is already saved, press **Change** to use other image.
- 3 Select an image from Data Folder (see P.13-6) and press

Image appears with a rectangle indicating display size (see below).

Power On	W 120 x H 130 dots	Incoming Call	W 120 x H 38 dots
Power Off	W 120 x H 130 dots	Alarm	W 120 x H 51 dots

- Unavailable images do not appear. E-Animation and MNG files cannot be used for **3 Incoming Call** and **4 Alarm**.
- Display Images appear 200% larger.
- To toggle display size between 100% and 200%, press .

4 Use to specify display area

- Display area may not be specified depending on image size.
- Press to select another image ▶ Start over from Step 3

5 Press ●

- Existing Original image is replaced. (Images not saved to Data Folder are deleted.)



Picture Call/Mail setting takes priority over Display Images when receiving calls (with caller ID) from callers with Picture Call/Mail set while **3 Incoming Call** is **3 Original**.

Light Settings

Activate or deactivate Backlight and Keypad Light. Adjust Active Time and Brightness.

- Specify Active Hours to activate lights for a set period of time each day. (Set Clock first. See P.1-26.)
- Backlight and Keypad Light are **On** (15 seconds) by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Light Settings*

1 Backlight

- Select **1 Backlight** and press ●

Keypad Light

- Select **2 Keypad Light** and press ●

2 Changing Active Time

- Choose **1 On** and press ●
- Enter Active Time (01 - 99 seconds) and press ●

Active Time is set.

Backlight Off

- Choose **2 Off** and press ●
- Backlight remains on while using mobile camera even if **Off** is set.

Specifying Active Hours and Active Time

- Select **3 Active Hours** and press ●
- Enter Start Time and End Time, then press ●
- Enter Active Time (01 - 99 seconds) and press ●

Backlight and Keypad Light are available between Start Time and End Time.



- Active Hours is ignored if Clock is not set.
- Keypad Light does not illuminate when Display is in Viewer position.
- Shorten Active Time to lengthen Battery Time.

Brightness

Select Display Brightness from four levels

Default Level 4

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Light Settings* ▶ *Brightness*

Press ● (Brighter) or ● (Darker) ▶ Press ●

In-Car Backlight

Set Backlight/Keypad Light to illuminate while using In-Car Charger

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Light Settings* ▶ *In-Car Backlight*

Choose **1 On** ▶ Press ●

▶ To cancel In-Car Backlight, choose **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

Display Patterns

Menu Background

Select from nine background patterns for menus, lists, etc.

Default Background 1

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Display Patterns* ▶ *Menu Background*

Select from **1 Background 1** to **9 Background 9** ▶ Press ●

Frames

Select from five frame patterns for menus

Default Menu Frame 1

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Display Patterns* ▶ *Frames*

Select from **1 Menu Frame 1** to **5 Menu Frame 5** ▶ Press ●

Menu Design

Select from five number key patterns for menu items

Default Menu Design 1

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Display Patterns* ▶ *Menu Design*

Select from **1 Menu Design 1** to **5 Menu Design 5** ▶ Press ●

Cursor

Select from five cursor patterns for highlighted menu items

Default Cursor 1

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Display Patterns* ▶ *Cursor*

Select from **1 Cursor 1** to **5 Cursor 5** ▶ Press ●

Other Display Settings

Show Indicators Show or hide indicators in Standby while Wallpaper is set

Default Standby Display: On, Battery Level: Icon 1, Signal Strength: Icon 1

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Show Indicators*

Standby Display

Select **1** *Standby Display* ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **1** *On* or **2** *Off* ▶ Press ●

Tip While indicators are hidden, press Ⓢ. Indicators appear for five seconds.

Battery Level

Select **2** *Battery Level* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select from **1** *Icon 1* to **5** *Icon 5* ▶ Press ●

Signal Strength

Select **3** *Signal Strength* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select from **1** *Icon 1* to **5** *Icon 5* ▶ Press ●

Viewer Display Manually or automatically rotate vertical view 180 degrees in Viewer position

Default Orientation 1

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Viewer Display*

Select **1** *Orientation 1*, **2** *Orientation 2* or **3** *Full Auto* ▶ Press ●

Orientation 1	Same as view for clamshell open
Orientation 2	Rotate 180 degrees from view for clamshell open
Full Auto	View rotates 180 degrees automatically according to which way handset is held

Note

- Full Auto may not work correctly when:
 - Aboard trains or in vehicles
 - Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
 - In steel-framed buildings
 - Near or inside elevators
 - Near magnetized objects (see P.1-13)
- 2** *Orientation 2* and **3** *Full Auto* are disabled while mobile camera is active, while playing video, while Instant Display appears after calls, when receiving or placing calls and during calls.
- When Full Auto does not work correctly, adjust MC Sensor (see P.16-4 "Adjusting Sensor").
- When set to **Full Auto**, Viewer Setting (see P.16-4) returns to default.

Tip

- View for clamshell open remains unchanged even after setting.
- Viewer Display in TV Settings changes accordingly (see P.6-22).

Screen Animation Animation appears on Display when left open for a specified period of inactivity

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Animation* ▶ *Screen Animation*

Preset Animation

Choose **1** *On* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1** *Animation* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1** *Hoop-de-do* or **2** *Box Man Walking* ▶ Press ● twice

Original Animation

Choose **1** *On* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1** *Animation* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **3** *Original* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ● twice

Period of Inactivity

Choose **1** *On* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **2** *Start Time* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a period ▶ Press ●

Cancel

Choose **2** *Off* ▶ Press ●

- Only E-Animation files (.nva) are available.
- While animation appears, press any key to stop it.
- Animation may not appear depending on handset status (in Standby, mobile camera active, etc.).

Tip

Using Screen Animation shortens Battery Time.

Vodafone live! Animation Show or hide animations when sending/receiving mail or receiving Web/Station information. Set for each occasion separately.

Default On (All)

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Animation* ▶ *Vodafone live!*

Select **1** *Send Mail* to **5** *Station Info* ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **1** *On* or **2** *Off* ▶ Press ●

Index Menu Display

Change Index Menu appearance

Default 3D-1

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Index Menu Display*

Select from **1** *3D-1* to **3** *2D* ▶ Press ●

Dialing Display Set phone number to appear in 2D or 3D when dialing

Default: 2D Dialing Display

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Dialing Display*

Select **1** *3D Dialing Display* or **2** *2D Dialing Display* ▶ **Press** ●

Standby Animation Set animation to appear in menu backgrounds for Index Menu items

Default: On

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Animation* ▶ *Standby Animation*

Choose **1** *On* or **2** *Off* ▶ **Press** ●

- Animation may not appear when SD Memory Card is in use.

Power On Message Create a short text message to appear on Display each time handset power is activated

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Power On Message*

Choose **1** *On* ▶ **Press** ● ▶ **Enter text** ▶ **Press** ●

- Enter up to 16 single-byte characters.
- To cancel, choose **2** *Off* ▶ **Press** ●

Language Switch handset user interface between Japanese and English

Default: 日本語 (Japanese)

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ 言語選択

Select **1** 日本語 or **2** English ▶ **Press** ●



Sounds & Related Functions

Call Functions

Use Call Functions menu items to adjust Ring Tones, Vibration, Mobile or Small Light, and Ring Time settings. See below for the default settings.

	Incoming Call	Incoming Mail	Incoming Web	New Station Info	Received Complete	Confirm Delivery
Ring Tone	Pattern 1	Mail	Web	Station	Pattern 5	Report
Ring Tone Level	Level 5	Level 5	Level 5	Level 5	Level 1	Level 5
Vibration	Off					
Vibration Pattern	Vibration 1	Vibration 2	Vibration 3	Vibration 4	Vibration 5	Vibration 2
LED Indicator	Mobile Light	Small Light				
Mobile Light Color Pattern	Muscat	N/A				
Mobile/Small Light Blink Patterns	Pattern 1					
Ring Time	N/A	10 Seconds	10 Seconds	10 Seconds	1 Second	10 Seconds

• **Received Complete** settings apply after you:

- Retrieve complete messages or acquire Unretrieved List
- Delete Server Mail
- Manually update Station Main List or Location Info
- **Confirm Delivery** settings apply to Delivery Reports (see P.4-20).
- Settings remain even after handset power is turned off.
- Manner Mode settings (see P.3-4) take priority over.

Tip V-Application set for Standby that also responds to incoming communications may take priority over Ring Tone and Vibration Pattern set in Call Functions.

Ring Tone Level

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ *Select an item* ▶ Ring Tone Level

1 Use to adjust level

- **Level 5** is maximum. When **Rising Tone** is set, volume increases in the order of Level 1 - Level 5 every three seconds.
- To check volume, press **Play**.
- Press **Stop** to stop.
- In Manner Mode, volume set in Manner Settings applies.

2 Press

When Ring Tone Level is **Rising Tone** for Incoming Call, appears in Standby, and appears for **Silent**.

Ring Tone

Select from preset patterns, preset melodies (see P.9-4), Original Ring Tones, Chaku-Uta, Voice files, etc.

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ *Select an item* ▶ Ring Tone

1 Preset Patterns

1 Select **Preset Tones** or **Preset Melodies** and press

Melodies in Data Folder

1 Select **Melody Folder** and press

- 永遠にともに (Towani Tomoni) is preset on handset.

License No. T-0510083

Chaku-Uta in Data Folder

1 Select **Audio Folder** and press

Voice Files in Voice Folder

1 Select **Voice Folder** and press



- Files on SD Memory Card are not supported.
- Chaku-Uta and Voice files cannot be used for Received Complete.
- FM recordings are not supported.
- Files cannot be selected if the file name exceeds 24 single-byte characters.
- Some files may not be used.

2 Select a tone or melody

- To play preset tones or melodies, press **Play**.
- Press **Stop** to stop.
- To play files in Data Folder or Voice Folder, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Play** ▶ Press
- Press **Stop** to stop.
- When Manner Mode is active or Ring Tone Level is **Silent** or **Rising Tone**, sounds play at **Level 1**.



For some preset melodies, handset vibrates to the melody when Vibration (see P.9-4) is set to **SMAF Link**.

3 Press



If source file in Data Folder or Voice Folder is deleted or renamed, Ring Tone returns to default.

Preset Melodies

Title	Composer	On Display
Kidoairaku	Hiroki Furukawa	喜怒哀楽-HUNGRY DAYS
THE BEAR SONG	AMERICAN FOLK SONG	森のくまさん
Amazing Grace	NEWTON JOHN	アメージンググレース
Je Te Veux	SATIE ERIK ALFREDI LE	ジュ・トゥ・ヴ
Gymnopedies	SATIE ERIK ALFREDI LE	ジムノペディ
Annen Polka	STRAUSS JUN JOHANN	アンネンポルカ
Jupiter (from The Planets)	HOLST GUSTAV	組曲「惑星」より「木星」
Nocturne	CHOPIN FREDERIC FRANCOIS	ノクターン
JAZZY HOLIDAY	TJK	JAZZY HOLIDAY
ROMANTIC CITY	TJK	ROMANTIC CITY

Kidoairaku (HUNGRY DAYS)
Words, music & arrangement by Hiroki Furukawa
Licensed by TOSHIBA-EMI LTD.

License No.
T-0510083



Handset Vibration

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ Select an item ▶ Vibration

1 Choose 1 On and press ●

- To cancel, choose 2 Off ▶ Press ●
- To link to SMAF files, select 3 SMAF Link ▶ Press ●

Tip

- When vibration is on for Incoming Call, appears in green in Standby. It appears in yellow for **SMAF Link**.
- Select 3 **SMAF Link** to allow compatible SMAF files to control Vibration.

Note Disable vibration when charging.

Vibration Pattern

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ Select an item ▶ Vibration Pattern

1 Select a pattern and press ●

Pattern	Operation (repeated)
Vibration 1	Vibrate (0.75 Sec) → Stop (0.75 Sec)
Vibration 2	Vibrate (0.25 Sec) → Stop (0.25 Sec) → Vibrate (0.25 Sec) → Stop (1 Sec)
Vibration 3	Vibrate (1 Sec) → Stop (2 Sec)
Vibration 4	Vibrate (1 Sec) → Stop (1 Sec) → Vibrate (1 Sec) → Stop (2 Sec)
Vibration 5	Vibrate (0.5 Sec) → Stop (0.5 Sec) → Vibrate (0.5 Sec) → Stop (1 Sec)

Mobile/Small Light

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ Select an item ▶ LED Indicator

1 Mobile Light

- Select 1 Mobile Light and press ●
- Select a color and press ●

Small Light

- Select 2 Small Light and press ●
 - Small Light color (green) cannot be changed.

Disable Both

- Choose 3 Off and press ●
 - Skip the following steps.

2 Select a blink pattern

- To check patterns, press ● Light.
- Press ● Stop to stop.

Pattern	Blink Patterns
Pattern 1	On (0.75 Sec) → Off (0.75 Sec)
Pattern 2	On (0.25 Sec) → Off (0.25 Sec) → On (0.25 Sec) → Off (1 Sec)
Pattern 3	On (1 Sec) → Off (2 Sec)
Pattern 4	On (1 Sec) → Off (1 Sec) → On (1 Sec) → Off (2 Sec)
Pattern 5	On (0.5 Sec) → Off (0.5 Sec) → On (0.5 Sec) → Off (1 Sec)
SMAF Link	Flashes according to SMAF files (Mobile Light only)

Tip

Select 4 SMAF Link to allow compatible SMAF files to control Mobile Light.

3 Press ●

Ring Time

Ring Time settings are not available for Incoming Call.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Call Functions*

- 1 Select an item other than **1 Incoming Call** and press ●
- 2 Select **4 Ring Time** and press ●
- 3 Enter time (01 - 99 seconds) and press ●

Sound Effects

Adjust sounds and volume for handset operations.

	Keypad Sound	Error Tone	Power On	Power Off	Sound Volume	Set LED to Sound	MC Shortcut Tone
Setting	On	On	On	On	Level 5	Small Light	On
Sound	Push Tones	Error Tone	Opening 1	Ending 1			N/A
Volume	Level Medium	Level Medium	Level 5	Level 5			Level Medium
Time	0.05 Seconds	0.5 Seconds	3 Seconds	3 Seconds			N/A

- **Power On** is when turning on handset, and **Power Off** is when turning off.
- **Sound Volume** applies to sounds in Data Folder, mail attachments, Web, etc.
- **Set LED to Sound** is for flashing Mobile or Small Light with sounds (except Chaku-Uta®).
- **MC Shortcut Tone** is a recognition tone for MC Shortcut (see P.16-23).
- Settings remain even after handset power is turned off.

Sounds

Most operation sounds can be muted.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Sound Effects*

- 1 Select **1 Keypad Sound**, **2 Error Tone**, **3 Power On**, **4 Power Off** or **7 MC Shortcut Tone** and press ●
 - To adjust sound volume, select **5 Sound Volume** ▶ Press ● ▶ Use to adjust level ▶ Press ● (Skip the following steps.)
 - For light settings, select **3 Set LED to Sound** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1 Mobile Light**, **2 Small Light** or **3 Off** ▶ Press ● (Skip the following steps.)
 - For **1 Mobile Light**, then select a color ▶ Press ● (Skip the following steps.)



Blink pattern for **Set LED to Sound** is fixed to **SMAF Link** for Mobile Light and **Pattern 1** for Small Light.

- 2 Choose **1 On** and press ●
 - To cancel, choose **2 Off** ▶ Press ● (Skip the following steps.)
 - For MC Shortcut Tone, adjust volume with ▶ Press ● (Skip the following steps.)

- 3 Select **1 Sound** and press ●

4 Preset Patterns

- 1 Select **1 Preset Tones** or **2 Preset Melodies** and press ●
 - 喜怒哀楽 -HUNGRY DAYS cannot be used.

Melodies in Data Folder

- 1 Select **3 Melody Folder** and press ●



- Files on SD Memory Card are not supported.
- Files cannot be selected if the file name exceeds 24 single-byte characters.
- Some files may not be used.

Push Tones

- 1 Select **4 Push Tones** and press ●

Pattern is set (skip the following steps).

5 Select a tone or melody

- To play preset tones or melodies, press ● **Play**.
- Press ● **Stop** to stop.
- To play files in Data Folder, press ● **Menu** ▶ Select **Play** ▶ Press ●
 - Press ● **Stop** to stop.

6 Press ●



If source file in Data Folder is deleted or renamed, sound pattern returns to default.

Basic Sound Settings

Volume

Adjust Sound Effect volume

Default See P.9-6.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Sound Effects*

For Keypad Sound/Error Tone/Power On/Power Off

Select from **1 Keypad Sound** to **4 Power Off** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **1 On** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **2 Volume** ▶ Press ● ▶ Use to adjust level ▶ Press ●

For MC Shortcut Tone

Select **7 MC Shortcut Tone** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **1 On** ▶ Press ● ▶ Use to adjust level ▶ Press ●

Time Set Sound Effect duration

Default See P.9-6.

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Sound Effects

For Keypad Sound/Error Tone

Select **1** Keypad Sound or **2** Error Tone → Press ● → Choose **1** On → Press ● → Select **3** Time → Press ● → Select time → Press ●

For Power On/Power Off

Select **3** Power On or **4** Power Off → Press ● → Choose **1** On → Press ● → Select **3** Time → Press ● → Enter time (01 - 10 seconds) → Press ●

Tip

- Operation sounds may not be heard if time is too short.
- When Keypad Sound is set to **4** Push Tones, tone sounds for 0.05 seconds regardless of your choice.

Original Voice

Record sounds for up to 30 seconds and use as Ring Tones.

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Original Tones ▶ Original Voice

- 1 Enter title and press ●**
 - Title is also the file name.
 - Enter up to 24 single-byte characters.
- 2 Press ●**

Recording starts.
- 3 Press ● to stop**

Sound is saved to Voice Folder (フォルダ 1).

 - When maximum recording time is reached, recording stops automatically and sound is saved to Voice Folder (フォルダ 1).

Playing Recorded Sounds

- After Step 3, select a Voice file → Press ●
 - Press ● Back to stop.

Voice Ring Tone

- To use as Ring Tone, follow these steps after Step 3.
 - Select a Voice file → Press ● Menu → Select Incoming Tone → Press ● → Select an item → Press ●
 - Voice files cannot be used for *Received Complete*.

Note When interrupted by incoming transmissions, recording stops and recorded material is lost.

Original Ring Tone

Create melodies to use as Ring Tones, or to send via Super Mail.

- Use up to 95 sounds x 32 chords, 190 sounds x 16 chords, or 380 sounds x 8 chords.
- Original Ring Tones are saved to Data Folder (see P.13-3).

Note

- Original Ring Tones are saved in SJM format. To send Original Ring Tones to handsets other than Vodafone live! packet-enabled Sharp handsets, convert them to Melody files or SMAF files. Some chords may be deleted or other settings may be changed when converted. Refer to **P.3-12** "Changing Attachment Formats."
- Converted files may not play on recipient handsets.

Basics

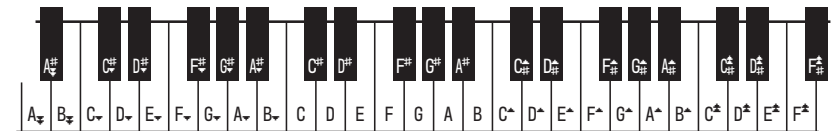
Window Description

The screenshot shows a window for creating a ring tone. It includes a list of chords (Chord 1 to Chord 32), a piano keyboard interface, and various settings like 'Tone Level?', 'Entered Notes/Rests', 'Cursor', and 'Duration'. Labels with arrows point to these elements from the text on the left and right.

- Melody Chord**
 - : Chord 1, : Chord 2
 - : Chord 3... : Chord 32
- Tone**
- Loudness**
- Pitch**
 - (Low) ↓ → ↓ → no symbol → ↑
 - ♯ (High)
 - # : Semitone
 - (R) : Rest
- Sound at Cursor**
- Entered Notes/Rests**
- Cursor**
 - Move to enter/edit sounds
- Duration**
 - Varies by note or rest
 - ³ : Triplet, _ : Slur
- Sound**
 - Indicated by pitch and note

Pitch Range

Use the following scales (range: approximately 4 octaves including semitones).



Notes & Rests

Note	Rest	Duration	Note	Rest	Duration
		Whole note/rest			Dotted half note/rest
		Sixteenth note/rest			Whole note triplet/rest
		Eighth note/rest			Sixteenth triplet/rest
		Dotted eighth note/rest			Eighth triplet/rest
		Quarter note/rest			Quarter triplet/rest
		Dotted quarter note/rest			Half note triplet/rest
		Half note/rest			

Tones

Handset contains 128 basic tones and 61 extra tones preset.

- Create tones and save as Instrument Effects (up to 8 types to 3 locations).
- Adjust octave of tones (see P.9-22).

Procedure

1 Enter title

- The entered title will appear when selecting Ring Tone.
- Enter up to 24 single-byte characters.

2 Select tempo

♩: Number of quarter notes played per minute

1 Fast	♩=150	3 Slightly Slow	♩=107
2 Standard	♩=125	4 Slow	♩=94

3 Select number of chords

- Type: **8 Phonetic Chord**, **16 Phonetic Chord** and **32 Phonetic Chord**

4 Enter sounds one by one for melody chord 1 (♩)

- Arrange pitch, octave or duration of each sound, and use semitones and triplets (see P.9-11 - 9-12).
- Press **Play** to play all entered sounds. When you press , sounds are played up to cursor. Adjust playback volume in Sound Volume (see P.9-6). Sounds play even in Manner Mode. (When Sound Volume is **Silent**, sounds play at **Level 1**.)
- To change tone or loudness while creating melodies, press **Menu**.

5 For harmony, enter sounds in other melody chords

(Melody chord 2: ♩, melody chord 3: ♩...melody chord 32: ♩)

- Press to move to other melody chords.
- Enter sounds in the same way as melody chord 1.

6 Select tone

- **Piano** is set for all melody chords by default.
- Select preset tones or Instrument Effects (see P.9-17) created beforehand.
- Selected tone applies to two melody chords (pairs: 1&17, 2&18, 3&19...16&32).

7 Adjust loudness

- **Strong** is set for all melody chords by default.
- Select **Strong**, **Standard** or **Faint** for each melody chord.

8 Save melody as Original Ring Tone

- To use as Ring Tone, select from Data Folder (see P.9-3).

Entering Sounds

This section describes how to enter a sound.

The same procedure applies to melody chord 1 to 32.

1 Pitch & Rest

Key Assignments:

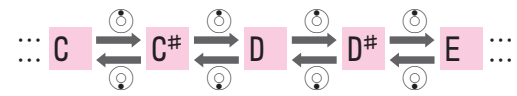
Do	Re	Mi	Fa	Sol	La	Ti	Rest

<Changing Pitch>

- Press a key once to enter a quarter note. Press the same key repeatedly to adjust the octave.



- Use to change pitch by semitone.

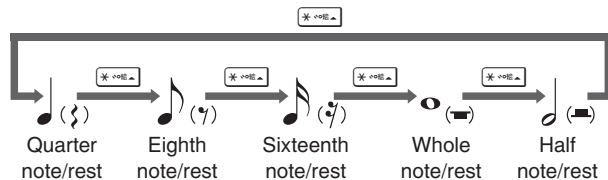


<Entering Rests>

- Press . A quarter rest (with) is entered.

2 Note/Rest Type

Press or repeatedly to change type.



<Using Dotted Notes or Triplets>

- Enter a note and press .

The dotted version is available for half/quarter/eighth notes and rests.



Standard Dotted Triplet Standard

- Connect 3 triplets as follows:



Note

Melodies may not play properly, or may not attach to Super Mail if contained triplets are not a set of three. Use triplets of similar pitch to avoid failure.

<Using Slurs>

- Enter a note and press . _ appears on the right connecting the note to the next.



Standard Slur Standard

A sound is entered.

To enter more, press to move cursor and repeat the same procedure.

- Use to enter the same sound as the one on the left.

Note

- Sounds may not play properly if notes of the same scale/pitch play in some melody chords simultaneously.
- Distortion may occur when multiple melody chords play simultaneously.

Tip

In Manner Mode (see P.3-3), Keypad sound is muted.

Creating an Original Ring Tone

Make sure there is enough free memory. When Data Folder is full, delete files and try again (see P.13-47).

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Sounds** ▶ **Original Tones** ▶ **New**

- Enter title and press**
 - Enter up to 24 single-byte characters.
 - Title is also the file name, which can be changed afterward (see P.13-46).
- Select tempo (see P.9-10) and press**
- Select number of chords and press**
- Enter pitch or rest (see P.9-11)**
- Specify note or rest type (see P.9-12)**
- Press** **to set**
Cursor moves right.
- Repeat Steps 4 - 6 to enter more**
 - To adjust tone or loudness here, press **Menu** and skip ahead to Step 9 (tone) or 14 (loudness).
 - Press **Play** to play sounds in all melody chords.
 - Press **Stop** to stop.
 - To play current melody chord up to cursor, press .
 - Press **Stop** to stop.
 - To move to other melody chords, press (repeatedly).
- Press** **when finished**
 - To save melody without adjusting tone or loudness, proceed to Step 19 on P.9-14.
 - To edit entered sounds, select **Edit** ▶ Press (For details, see Step 4 and onward on P.9-15 - 9-16.)
- Select Tone and press**
- Select a melody chord and press**
- Select a genre with** **and a tone with**
 - To use Instrument Effects, select **Original (FM)** or **Original (WT)**.
 - To check tones, press **Set** ▶ Handset plays Do Re Mi Fa Sol La Ti Do
 - Press **Stop** to stop.
- Press**
 - Repeat Steps 10 - 12 for other melody chords.
 - To play melody, press **Play**.
 - Press **Stop** to stop.

13 Press **Set**
 • Skip ahead to Step 19 when not adjusting loudness.

14 Select *Adjust Loudness* and press

15 Select a melody chord and press

16 Select from 1 *Strong* to 3 *Faint*

- To check loudness, press **Play**.
- Press **Stop** to stop.

17 Press

- Repeat Steps 15 - 17 for other melody chords.
- To play melody, press **Play**.
- Press **Stop** to stop.

18 Press **Set**

19 Select 1 *Save* and press

20 Press

- Melody is saved to Data Folder (Melodies).
- Select other folders or SD Memory Card to save melodies.

Tip If the same file name already exists, ~**XX** (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

When Calls Arrive

- Data is saved. Continue to create melodies after the call ends.

Note Although most tones are named after musical instruments, they may sound different. Also, playback volume may vary or distortion may occur depending on the tone/scale.

Tip When you press **Play**, **Cannot play back too many Phonetic chords** may appear, and when you press **Save**, **Cannot save too many Phonetic chords** may appear. Delete melody chords, replace short notes with longer notes, or reduce triplets.

Editing an Original Ring Tone

Make sure there is enough free memory. When Data Folder is full, delete files and try again (see P.13-47).

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Sounds** ▶ **Original Tones** ▶ **Data Folder**

1 Select a file and press **Menu**

- Original Ring Tones are marked with .
- To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press

2 Select *Other Edit Functions* and press

3 Select *Edit* and press

- To change tone, perform Steps 9 - 13 on P.9-13 - 9-14 (skip the following steps).
- To change loudness, perform Steps 14 - 18 on P.9-14 (skip the following steps).

4 Edit title and press

5 Select tempo and press

6 Select number of chords and press

- To edit other melody chords, press .

7 Move cursor to sound

When Changing Number of Chords

- When changing the number of phonetic chords, a warning of possible data loss may appear. To proceed, choose **1 Yes** and press (see table below).
 - To cancel, choose **2 No** ▶ Press

Current Chords	Changed to	Data to be Lost
8	16	Sounds after the 191st
8	32	Sounds after the 96th
16	32	Sounds after the 96th
16	8	Melody chords 9 - 16
32	8	Melody chords 9 - 32
32	16	Melody chords 17 - 32

- Tone may alter when number of chords is changed.

8 Editing Sounds

1 Use to change pitch and switch type with

(see P.9-12)

- Keys - are not available for this operation.

Adding Sounds

1 Enter sound

Sound is entered at the cursor position.

- Refer to entry limit (see P.9-9).

Deleting Sounds

1 Press

Sound at the cursor position is deleted.

- To delete all sounds, press for 1+ seconds.

■ To delete sound sequence before or after cursor, press → Select

Delete Posterior or **Delete Previous** → Press twice

Copy/Cut & Paste Melodies

1 Press , select **Copy** or **Cut** and press

2 Move cursor to the first sound of a portion and press

3 Move cursor to the last sound of the portion and press

Portion disappears when cut.

4 Open a window to paste the melody

- When pasting into other melodies, close the current melody and open another window.

5 Press , select **Paste** and press

6 Press at target location

9 Press when finished

- To edit tone or loudness, perform Steps 9 - 18 on P.9-13 - 9-14.

10 Select **Save** and press

11 Select **Overwrite** and press

Original Ring Tone is overwritten.

Tip

To save edited melody separately, select **New Entry** and press and then select a save location and press . The original melody remains and the edited melody is saved as a new file [appended with ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) automatically].

Deleting an Original Ring Tone

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Sounds** ▶ **Original Tones** ▶ **Data Folder**

1 Select a file and press **Menu**

- To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press

2 Select **Delete** and press

3 Choose **Yes** and press

Instrument Effects

Create original tones for Original Ring Tones and other melodies.

Save up to eight tones per chord type (8/16 Chords, 32 Chords, and WT Original Tone).

Basics

This system, based on FM synthesis, allows you to select **Algorithm** and **Effect Level** and adjust parameters of **Operator** to create Instrument Effects.

- Select and arrange preset tones or Instrument Effects you have already created.
- Play sounds as you arrange tones and check effects of changes.
- Use WT synthesis by selecting WT Original Tone.

Procedure

1 Select chord

- Type: **8/16 Chords**, **32 Chords**, and **WT Original Tone**

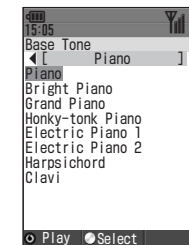
2 Select a location to save

3 Enter name

- Name appears when selecting tones.
- Enter up to 12 single-byte characters.

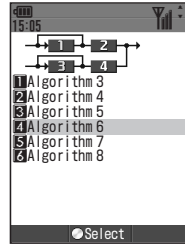
4 Select source tone

- Select from preset tones if this is your first time.



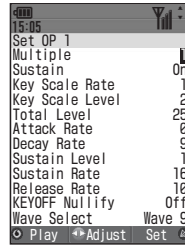
5 Select Algorithm

- Choose from six types for 8/16 Chords, and two types for 32 Chords.
- Algorithm setting is not available for WT Original Tone.



6 Adjust parameters of each Operator (OP)

- There are four types of Operators for 8/16 Chords and two types for 32 Chords.
- Default parameters are the same as those of the source tone.
- Use to select parameter and to adjust.
- Press **Play** to check effects of parameter changes.



7 Set Effect Level, Basic Octave, etc.

8 Save tone (Instrument Effects)

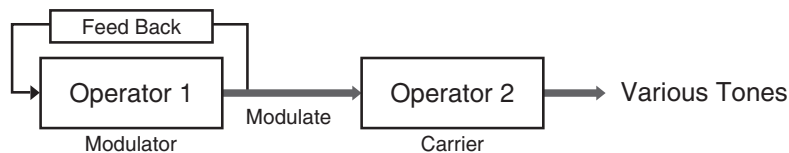
- Select Instrument Effects from tones to use for Original Ring Tone, etc.

WT Synthesis

- WT synthesis is based on recorded waveform data from musical instruments, etc. which are close to original sounds.

FM Synthesis

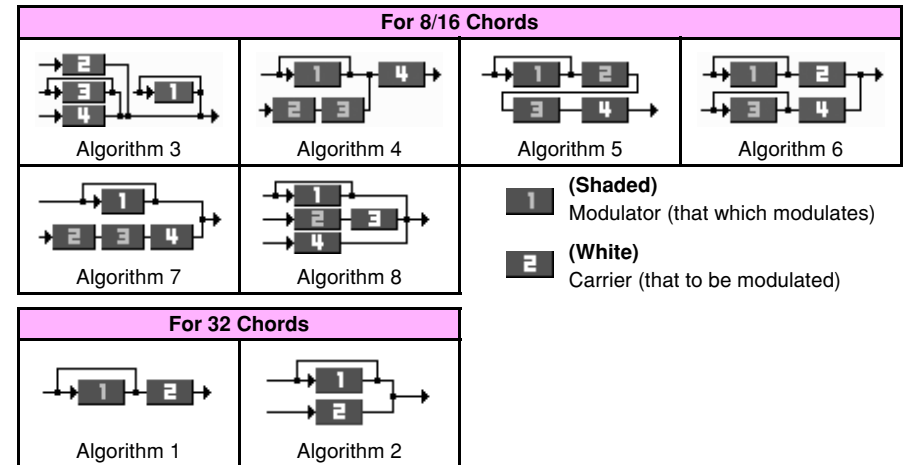
This system synthesizes various tones by generating a sine wave called **Operator**. **Algorithm** is a combination of Operators. Depending on the Algorithm, Operators work either as **Modulator** (that which modulates) or **Carrier** (that to be modulated).



- Adjust a variety of parameters including Multiple and Sustain.
- Some Operators have a parameter called Feed Back for more effects.

Algorithm

Select a combination of Operators from six types (8/16 Chords) or two types (32 Chords).



- Available Operators vary depending on the combination.
- Algorithm setting is not available for WT Original Tone.

Operator (OP)

See the table for details. Available parameters vary by the number of chords.

Parameter	Description
Multiple (13 levels)	Multiple affects tones most. The higher the Carrier level, the higher the pitch. Adjust the Modulator level for a variety of tones.
Sustain (On/Off)	When Sustain is set, sound continues after produced. Choose On to provide sustaining effects to tones in Piano, Glockenspiel, etc.
Key Scale Rate (two levels)	Set Key Scale Rate high to shorten the rise and fall time. Select 2 to emphasize this effect.
Key Scale Level (four levels)	The higher the Key Scale Level, the lower the volume level. Select 0 to disable this effect.
Total Level (64 levels)	<p>(1) Carrier The higher the Carrier value, the higher the volume level. Normally set 64 (maximum value), and select smaller values to use tones effectively at low volume for accompaniments, etc.</p> <p>(2) Modulator Increasing Modulator value brightens tones. Select smaller values for softer tones. Normally set between 40 and 64 to enjoy effects of tone changes.</p>

Creating Instrument Effects

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Instrument Effects

- 1 Select **1** 8/16 Chords, **2** 32 Chords or **3** WT Original Tone and press **⏵**
If Instrument Effects are already saved and renamed, they appear in Effects list.
- 2 Select a location to save and press **⏵** twice
 - To leave the name unchanged, press **⏵** once and skip ahead to Step 4.
- 3 Enter name and press **⏵**
 - Enter up to 12 single-byte characters.
- 4 Select **Base Tone** and press **⏵**
- 5 Select a genre with **⏵** and a tone with **⏵**
 - To check tones, press **⏵** **Play**.
 - Press **⏵** **Stop** to stop.
- 6 Press **⏵**
- 7 Select **Tone** and press **⏵**
 - To keep Algorithm unchanged, skip ahead to Step 10.
- 8 Select **Algorithm** and press **⏵**
- 9 Select **Algorithm** and press **⏵**
 - To keep each Operator (OP) unchanged, skip ahead to Step 14.
- 10 Select **Operator (OP 1, etc.: see P.9-18)** and press **⏵**
Default parameters are the same as those of the source tone.
- 11 Select a parameter with **⏵** and adjust it with **⏵**
 - For parameter descriptions, see P.9-19 - 9-20.
- 12 Repeat Step 11 to adjust other parameters
 - Press **⏵** **Play** to check effects of parameter changes.
 - Press **⏵** **Stop** to stop.
- 13 Press **⏵** or **⏵** **Set**
- 14 Select **Effect Level** (see P.9-20) and press **⏵**
- 15 Select a frequency for tremolo/Vibrato (see P.9-20) and press **⏵**
Confirmation appears.
- 16 Select **Basic Octave** (see P.9-20) and press **⏵**
- 17 Select a level and press **⏵**

Parameter	Description
Attack Rate (15 levels)	The higher the Attack Rate, the longer sounds take to reach the maximum volume. When using tones with Attack Rate high, use longer notes or select slower tempo.
Decay Rate (16 levels)	Lower Decay Rate to shorten the time sounds reach down to Sustain Level
Sustain Level (16 levels)	The Sustain Level for a Normal Tone equals the sustained volume. For Step-Down Tones, Sustain Level measures the volume at which Ring Tone begins to decrease. The higher the Sustain Level, the higher the volume.
Sustain Rate (16 levels)	The lower the Sustain Rate, the longer the Sustain Level volume is sustained. 16 is Normal Tone, and other levels are Step-Down Tones.
Release Rate (16 levels)	The Release Rate for a Normal Tone equals the time from beginning to end of a sound. For Step-Down Tones, Release Rate measures the time from when a sound begins to decrease until it ends completely. The lower the Release Rate, the sooner the sound ends. For sustaining effects, increase Release Rate.
KEYOFF Nullify (On/Off)	Choose On to avoid sound skipping of Step-Down Tones including those in DRUM
Wave Select (29 types)	Select from 29 waveforms
Vibrato (four levels/Off)	Vibrato is a periodic variation in pitch
AM Modulation (four levels/Off)	The higher the AM Modulation level, the stronger the tremolo (periodic changes in loudness)
Feed Back (eight levels)	Set Feed Back (not available for some Operators)

Tip When Release Rate is set high for Normal Tones, rests may be ignored in playback.

Additional Settings

Parameter	Description
Effect Level (four levels)	Effect Level affects cycle time of wavering quality in pitch or loudness. Select high level to shorten the cycle.
Basic Octave (four levels)	Adjust octave of tones
Panpot (31 levels)	Panpot measures the position of sounds, which varies by combination of L (left) and R (right). Sound bias is emphasized as the value difference increases.
Sustain (On/Off)	Set On to extend sounds
Vibration Level (four levels/Off)	Select higher level for stronger Vibrato

Basic Octave, Sustain and **Vibration Level** settings are not available for WT Original Tone.

- 18 Select *Panpot* and adjust with
- 19 Select *Sustain* and choose *On* or *Off* with
- 20 Select *Vibration Level* and adjust with
- 21 Press **Set**
- 22 When finished with all settings, press **Set**
 - To create more, repeat Steps 2 - 22 on P.9-21 - 9-22.

Other Sound Related Functions

Speaker Phone/ Speaker Select whether to activate Speaker Phone (for handsfree conversations) or Speaker (to listen only)

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Speaker*

Select **1 Speaker Phone** or **2 Speaker** ▶ Press

To use Earpiece and Microphone for phone conversations, choose **3 Off** ▶ Press

9

Sounds & Related Functions

Talk with Speaker

- Before or during calls, press for 1+ seconds.
 - : Speaker Phone is active. : Speaker is active.
 - When speaker is **3 Off**, use Earpiece and Microphone for phone conversations.
- When calls end, speaker talk is canceled.
- To cancel manually during a call, press for 1+ seconds.

Note

- Speaker is not available when Headphones are in use.
- When Speaker Phone is active, ringback tone may not sound. Handsfree conversations may be hampered by ambient noise. Keep handset as close as possible when using Speaker Phone.
- When Speaker is active, handset microphone is muted.

Tone Octave Select an octave for each tone from four levels

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Tone Octave*

Select a genre with and a tone with ▶ Press ▶ Select a level ▶ Press

To check tone or octave, press **Play**.

■ Press **Stop** to stop.

• Adjust octave of Instrument Effects in Basic Octave setting (see Steps 16 - 17 on P.9-21).



Music Player

Music Player Basics

Basic Functions

Use Music Player to record music onto and play music from SD Memory Cards. An SD Memory Card must be inserted to open and use Music Player.

- Record tracks in Secure MP3 format from CD players, PC hard disks, etc. to SD Memory Card. Music Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Music may not play depending on the SD Memory Card status.
- V603SH encryption technology complies with Secure Digital Music Initiative (SDMI) for copyright protection. This technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback through data encryption and authentication.

Basic Requirements

- Vodafone live! subscription
- Download of Music Key (fee-based)
- SD Memory Cards (Not included. Purchase 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, or 512 MB cards.)

Required Cables for Recording

Digital Input	Optical Conversion Cable (see P.10-6) and Optical Digital Connecting Cable (sold separately)
Analog Input	Analog Conversion Cable (see P.10-7) and Connecting Cable (sold separately)

Music Key & Music Player

Music Key must be purchased to use Music Player. To download, see below.

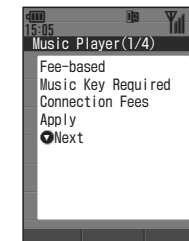
- Download Music Key via Web. Make sure signal is strong.
- After Music Key is downloaded, select Music Player from Handy Features.

Index Menu ▶ Handy (☺)

1 Select Music and press ●

Fee-based Music Key Required Connection Fees Apply appears.

- Music Player menu opens when Music Key is already downloaded.



2 Press Ⓞ three times to open Music Player (4/4)

- Read through the precautions on each page.

3 Press ● Yes

Handset connects to the Network and Music Key download page opens (Japanese only).

- Music Key download page contains the following information:
 - Music Key price
 - Payment method
 - Terms of service
 - Link to customer inquiry service (e-mail only)
- To cancel, press Ⓞ No.

4 Read through terms of service and download Music Key following online instructions

5 After download, choose 1 Yes and press ●

Music Player starts.

- Choose 2 No and press ● to return to Standby.



Music Player Menu

- Play tracks on SD Memory Card (see P.10-14)
- From output devices, record tracks onto SD Memory Card (see P.10-8)
- Manage tracks on SD Memory Card (see P.10-17)

- To close Music Player, press Ⓞ.



Standby returns after five minutes of inactivity.

Recording Music

Preparation

Charge handset while recording.

- Recording stops when battery level falls too low. Always use Rapid Charger when recording to ensure a stable power supply.
- When battery is low (🔋), Music Player does not record. If battery becomes low (🔋) while recording, **Low Battery** appears and recording stops.

Tracks are recorded onto SD Memory Card.

To start Music Player, insert an SD Memory Card formatted for V603SH (see P.12-3, P.12-6).

Activate Off-Line Mode to prevent disruptions (see P.10-8).

Incoming communications may disrupt recording or damage outputs of audio sources. (To place calls or send mail, stop recording and cancel Off-Line Mode.)

Do not remove SD Memory Card while recording.

Doing so may damage the card or result in lost information.

Note

- Under copyright law, duplicated material is limited to private use. Unauthorized reproduction or use is prohibited.
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recordings.
- Tracks recorded onto SD Memory Card cannot be copied to other media digitally.

10

Music Player

Recording Time

Estimated recording time for SD Memory Card with no files or recordings:

Card Capacity	Bit Rate	Recording Time
64 MB	96 kbps	80 minutes
	128 kbps	60 minutes

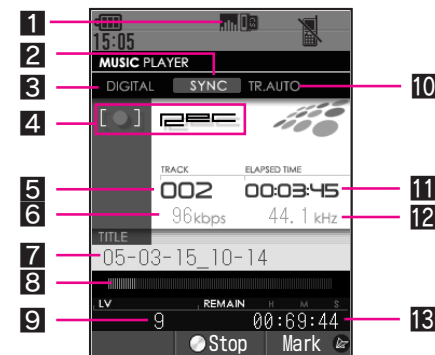
- Recording time varies by SD Memory Card capacity (measured in megabytes) and bit rate (measured in kilobytes per second).
- Bit rate measures audio compression rate or the quality of audio data recorded per second. Sound quality improves at higher rates.

Digital & Analog Recording

Select digital or analog recording according to output types of audio sources.

Digital Input	Use Optical Digital Audio Toslink-Mini or Mini-Mini Cables with Optical Conversion Cable to compress and record high quality digital signals from CD players, PCs, stereo systems, etc. onto SD Memory Card
Analog Input	Convert analog signals to digital with Analog Conversion Cable and Stereo Mini-Phono or Stereo Mini-Stereo Mini Cable, etc. to record onto SD Memory Card from audio sources with analog outputs

Recording Window



1 Recording in Progress

2 Synchro Recording (see P.10-10)

Synchro Recording On

3 Input Source

DIGITAL/ANALOG

4 Status

[●] [■] / [■] [■] stop

5 Track Number

6 Bit Rate (see P.10-10)

7 Title

8 Recording Level Meter (see P.10-8)

9 Recording Level (see P.10-8)

10 Track Bookmark (see P.10-11)

11 Elapsed Time

12 Sampling Frequency (see P.10-11)

13 Remaining Recording Time

Reduces after each recording

10

Music Player

Connecting to Audio Sources

V603SH supports digital recording and analog recording.

Precautions

Plug an Optical Digital Connecting Cable into Optical Conversion Cable, or plug a connecting cable into Analog Conversion Cable. Then gently connect the plug into handset. When disconnecting, hold the plug firmly and pull straight out.

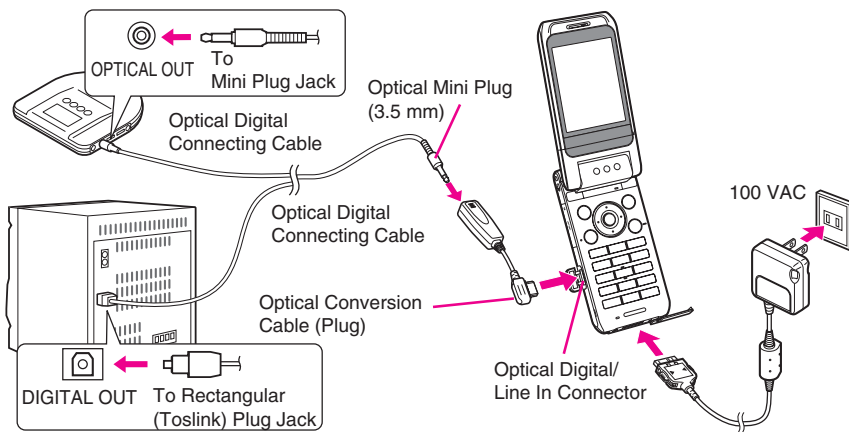
Do not pull on the cables. Doing so may damage the cable, Mini Plug or Headphone/Optical Digital/Line In Connector.

Use specified Conversion Cables only.

Other converters may not function properly and damage may result.

Digital Input

Use Optical Digital Audio Toslink-Mini or Mini-Mini Cables (sold separately) with Optical Conversion Cable to connect output sources to handset.

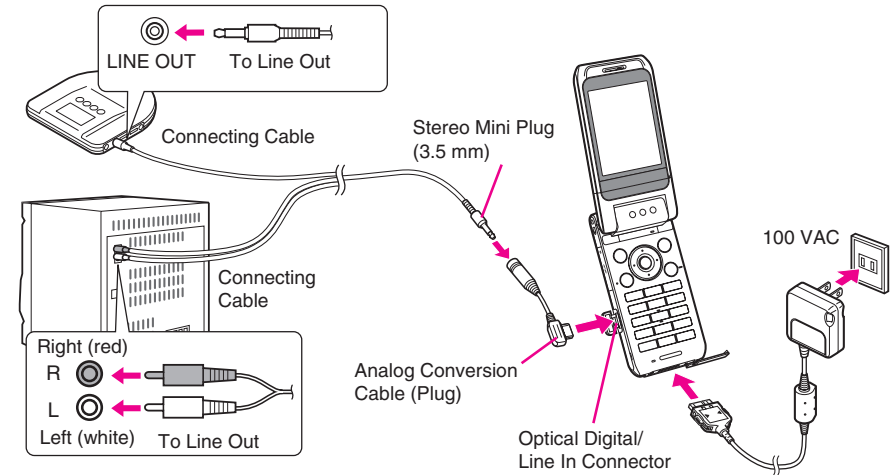


Note

- Use Optical Conversion Cable only for recording music.
- Optical Conversion Cable is designed exclusively for V603SH and other specified Vodafone handsets. Do not use for other devices to prevent damage or malfunction.

Analog Input

Use Stereo Mini-Phono (Y-Adapter) or Stereo Mini-Stereo Mini Cable, etc. (sold separately) and Analog Conversion Cable to connect output sources to handset. Before connecting handset to audio sources, activate Off-Line Mode (see Steps 1 - 2 on P.10-8).



Note

Use a device-to-device connecting cable. Do not use speaker or headphone cables.

Recording

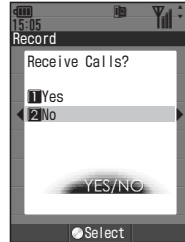
- Read precautions (see **P.10-4**) before recording.
- To listen to music while recording, adjust Monitor Level before recording (see **P.10-10**).
- Prepare an audio source and pause playback at the beginning of a track.

Index Menu ▶ Handy (📞) ▶ Music

1 Select **2** Record and press **⏻**

Receive Calls? appears.

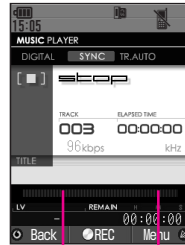
- To prevent disruption by calls, choose **2** No to activate Off-Line Mode (see **P.10-4**).
- If Off-Line Mode is already active, skip ahead to Step 3 (see **P.3-6**).



2 Choose **2** No and press **⏻**

Recording window opens.

- Customize settings before recording (see **P.10-10** "Recording Settings").
- To accept incoming calls, mail, etc. while recording, choose **1** Yes ▶ Press **⏻**



Red Bar
Recording Level Meter

3 Connect handset to the audio source, and play music to check the recording level

Tip

- For digital sources, recording level adjusts automatically.
- For analog sources, use **🔊** to adjust the level (not available while recording).
 - Make sure the red bar does not appear in the level meter.
- Standby returns after 20 minutes of inactivity.

4 Press **⏻**

Handset is ready for Synchro Recording (see **P.10-10**).

- When Synchro Recording is **On**, recording stops after 15 seconds of pause.
- When Synchro Recording is **Off**, press **⏻** ▶ Start playback
 - To stop recording, press **⏻**.

Note

- Do not remove SD Memory Card or battery while recording. Doing so may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Do not touch cables or plugs while recording. May cause noise or skipping.

5 Start playback

Recording starts automatically when handset detects sound. After a period of silence, recording stops.

- For analog sources, recording may start even while playback is paused.
- Off-Line Mode is canceled after recording if set in Step 2 on **P.10-8**.
- Press **⏻** to stop recording.

Tip

Manual Track Bookmark Creation (see P.10-11)

Press **🔍** **Mark** while recording.

Note

- When recording from PCs or BS/CS digital tuners, recording level may decrease.
- Unchecked tracks recorded with J-SH51/J-SH52 will be deleted when the SD Memory Card is used for V603SH Music Player.

Tip

- Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts when Standby returns.
- Default title (file name) of recorded track is also the recorded date and time. To rename, see **P.10-18** "Rename Play List Items."

Recording Settings

Monitor Level Set volume level to listen to music while recording

Default Level 3

Index Menu ▶ Handy (📶) ➔ Music ➔ Open Recording window ➔ Menu (⏮) ➔ Monitor Level

Select a level with (🔊) ➔ Press (⏮)

Synchro Recording Start recording automatically when playback starts on audio sources

Default On

Index Menu ▶ Handy (📶) ➔ Music ➔ Open Recording window ➔ Menu (⏮) ➔ Synchro Recording

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ➔ Press (⏮)

Bit Rate Select a bit rate (see P.10-4 "Recording Time")

Default 96 kbps

Index Menu ▶ Handy (📶) ➔ Music ➔ Open Recording window ➔ Menu (⏮) ➔ Bit Rate

Select **1 96 kbps** or **2 128 kbps** ➔ Press (⏮)

- Sound quality is better at 128 kbps. However, recording time shortens as more space is required in memory.

Track Break Level Select sensitivity to detect silence for creating Track Bookmarks

Default -41 dB

Index Menu ▶ Handy (📶) ➔ Music ➔ Open Recording window ➔ Menu (⏮) ➔ Track Break Level

Select **1 -41 dB** or **2 -59 dB** ➔ Press (⏮)

- Select **-59 dB** for soft tracks to prevent unintended Track Bookmark creation.

Track Bookmarks

Number tracks in Play List for Repeat or Random Play. Track Bookmarks are created in the following conditions:

Digital Input	A period of silence is detected between tracks. When recording from CD/MD players, etc., track numbers remain the same as the original.
Analog Input	A period of silence is detected between tracks

- If Music Player does not detect a period of silence, recorded tracks are all combined and saved as a single track.
- When Synchro Recording is **On**, recording pauses after a period of silence. Recording resumes when sound (track) is detected.
 - When Synchro Recording is **On**, recording stops after 15 seconds of pause.
- Brief sound dropouts occur when Track Bookmarks are created.
- Track Bookmarks may not be created automatically depending on the connected audio source. In this case, number tracks manually (see P.10-9 "Manual Track Bookmark Creation").

Note Recording may result in silence or a single track with a low volume level if the source tracks consist of long periods of silence or sustained low volume level.

Sampling Frequency

Sampling frequency is the number of times an audio signal is measured (sampled) per second, expressed in kilo Hertz (kHz). Similar to bit rate, higher rates translate into better sound quality. Sampling frequency is set automatically according to the recording method or audio source.

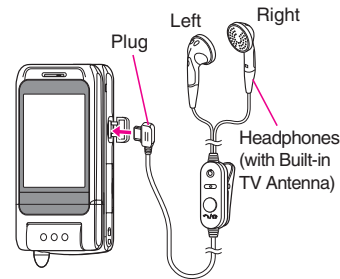
Recording	Sampling Frequency
Digital Input	32 kHz, 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz is set according to the audio source status. When recording from DVD players, cancel DTS.
Analog Input	44.1 kHz (fixed)

Note Digital recording results may not be satisfactory depending on the signal format.

Playing Music

Play music on SD Memory Card.

- Use Headphones (with built-in TV antenna) to listen to music without bothering others. Connect to handset as shown to the right.
- Alternatively, play music from handset speaker.



Precautions

- Grasp the plug when connecting or disconnecting Headphones. Do not bend the plug to avoid damaging the cord or Headphone Connector.
- Use only the specified Headphones. Other devices may not function properly and cause damage to Headphone Connector.
- When battery is low (🔋), Music Player does not play. If battery becomes low (🔋) during playback, **Low Battery** appears and Music Player shuts down automatically.

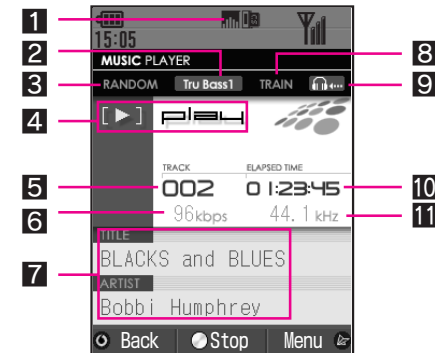
Tip

- To answer calls with Headphones, press Call Button for 1+ seconds.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in speaker sound.

10

Music Player

Playback Window



1 Playback in Progress

2 Sound Effect (see P.10-16)

- **Tru Bass1**: Bass 1, **Tru Bass2**: Bass 2, **SRS**: Surround, **WOW**: Surround Bass
- Indicator does not appear for Normal (no sound effect).

3 Play Mode (see P.10-16)

- **1**: Repeat 1, **ALL**: Repeat All, **RANDOM**: Random Play
- Indicator does not appear for Repeat Off.

4 Status

[▶] play / [■] stop / [▶▶] FF
[◀◀] BB

5 Track Number

6 Bit Rate (see P.10-10)

7 Track Title/Artist Name

8 Volume Control (Train: see P.10-17)

- **TRAIN**: Volume Control On
- No indicator: Volume Control Off

9 Incoming Settings (see P.10-17)

- **Exit Player**, **Show Message**

10 Elapsed Time

11 Sampling Frequency (see P.10-11)

10

Music Player

Playback

Index Menu ► Handy (📶) ► Music

1 Select **Play** and press **Play**

Playback window opens.

To play other tracks, press **Menu** ► Select **Play List** ► Press **Play** ► Select a track ► Press **Play**

For details on Play List, see P.10-17 "Managing Music Files."

2 Press **Play**

Playback starts from the first track, or the point where it was stopped.

• Playback stops after the last track when **Repeat Off** is set (see P.10-16 "Play Setting").

Press **Play** to stop playback manually.

Press **Up** (up) or **Down** (down) to adjust volume.

■ When Train mode (see P.10-17) is active, maximum level is 13.

■ Playback Settings: see P.10-16



Standby returns after five minutes of inactivity.

Incoming Communications during Playback

■ When calls arrive, beeps sound and playback continues. Mail Notice appears for mail messages and indicator (📶 or 📶) flashes for Web/Station information (except Urgent Information).

• To stop playback automatically for incoming calls, set Exit Player in Incoming Settings (see P.10-17).

■ Playback stops in the following cases. (To resume, press **Play**.)

• Alarm starts at Alarm Time, Auto Power On Time, etc.

• Urgent Information arrives

• Message Recorder activates and outgoing message plays

• Calls with no Caller ID or Payphone calls arrive when Reject Call is set for those calls and outgoing message plays



To activate or cancel Manner Mode, press **Manner Mode** for 1+ seconds in Playback window.

Playback Operations

Replay	Press Replay Press repeatedly to play previous tracks. ¹
Skip	Press Skip Press repeatedly to skip more. ²
Fast Forward	Press and hold Fast Forward Release for playback.
Fast Reverse	Press and hold Fast Reverse Release for playback.
Pause	Press Pause ³ Press again to resume playback.

¹In Random Play, **Replay** only replays the current track.

²Not available during the last track when **Repeat Off** is set.

³While playback is paused, Fast Forward, Fast Reverse and Skip are not available.

Additional Operations

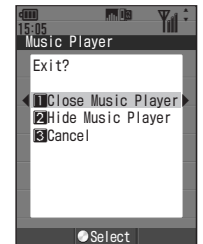
Closing Music Player

Press **Exit** during playback. **Exit?** appears as shown to the right.

• Select **1 Close Music Player** and press **Play** to exit.

• To continue playback in Standby, select **2 Hide Music Player** and press **Play**.

• Select **3 Cancel** and press **Play** to cancel. (Playback window returns.)



Background Music

Hide Music Player to create mail messages, add Phone Book entries or use other functions (except below) while music plays in the background.

Stop Playback OK? appears when you attempt to place calls, activate mobile camera, access SD Memory Card, send Super Mail, play melodies, access Data Folder, etc.

• Choose **1 Yes** and press **Play** to stop playback. (Playback resumes after Super Mail is sent.)

• Choose **2 No** and press **Play** to cancel. (Playback continues.)



Stop Playback OK? also appears when **Exit** is pressed in Standby.

Playback Settings

Play Setting Repeat tracks or play them in random order

■ Repeat 1 (one track repeat) applies to track on Playback window.
Default Repeat Off

Index Menu ▶ Handy (☺) ▶ Music ▶ Open Playback window ▶ Open a track from Play List ▶ Menu (Ⓜ) ▶ Settings ▶ Play Setting

Select a mode ▶ Press (●)

Sound Effect Increase bass for dynamic sound or create a surround field
 Use Headphones to listen to music with sound effects

Default Normal

Index Menu ▶ Handy (☺) ▶ Music ▶ Open Playback window ▶ Menu (Ⓜ) ▶ Settings ▶ Sound Effect

Select an effect ▶ Press (●)

Normal	No sound effects
Bass 1	Bass is increased
Bass 2	Bass is increased further
Surround	Surround effect (SRS)
Surround Bass	Surround effect with increased bass

Note Sound Effect setting does not apply to handset speaker sound. Also, surround effect does not affect mono sound.

Tip

- For Bass 1 and Bass 2, bass level is controlled to reduce distortion. Bass 1 activates for volume level 14 or higher, and Bass 2 activates from 12.
- SRS, TruBass, WOW and (●)® are trademarks or registered trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc. SRS, TruBass and WOW technologies are commercialized based on the license issued by SRS Labs, Inc.

Train (Volume Control) Activate Train mode to set maximum volume level to 13

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ Handy (☺) ▶ Music ▶ Open Playback window ▶ Menu (Ⓜ) ▶ Settings ▶ Train

Select 1 On ▶ Press (●)

Tip When set to 14 or higher, volume level decreases to 13 in Train mode. Canceling Train mode does not restore the original volume level.

Incoming Settings Select a handset response to calls received during playback

Default Show Message

Index Menu ▶ Handy (☺) ▶ Music ▶ Open Playback window ▶ Menu (Ⓜ) ▶ Settings ▶ Incoming Settings

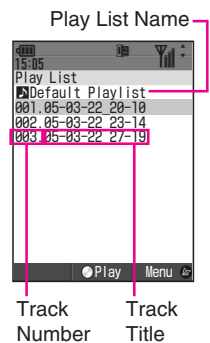
Select 1 Exit Player or 2 Show Message ▶ Press (●)

Exit Player	Handset rings/vibrates and playback stops
Show Message	Beeps sound and playback continues

Managing Music Files

Recorded tracks are saved to Play List on SD Memory Card.

- If battery becomes low (⚡) while editing Play List, **Low Battery** appears and Music Player shuts down automatically.
- Do not remove SD Memory Card or battery while editing Play List. Doing so may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Play List cannot be edited during playback.



Property View Play List or track information

Index Menu ▶ Handy (☺) ▶ Music ▶ Play List

Select Play List or track ▶ (Ⓜ) ▶ Menu ▶ Select Property ▶ Press (●)

Rename Play List Items

Edit track title, artist name or Play List title

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) → *Music* → *Play List*

Track Title

Select a track → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select *Track Info Editing* →
Press (⏏) → Select **1** *Title* → Press (⏏) → Enter title → Press (⏏)

Artist Name

Select a track → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select *Track Info Editing* →
Press (⏏) → Select **2** *Artist* → Press (⏏) → Enter name → Press (⏏)

Play List Title

Select Play List (with **PL**) → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select *Edit List Title*
→ Press (⏏) → Enter title → Press (⏏)

Move

Rearrange tracks in Play List to change playback order

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) → *Music* → *Play List* → *Menu* (⌂) → *Move*

Select a track → Press (⏏) → Select target location → Press (⏏) →
Press (⏏) **Set**

Erase

Delete tracks one by one or all at once

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) → *Music* → *Play List*

One Track

Select a track → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select *Erase* → Press (⏏) →
Choose **1** *Yes* → Press (⏏)

All Tracks

Select Play List (with **PL**) → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select *Erase List*
Contents → Press (⏏) → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press (⏏)



Voice Recorder

Recording Voice

Recording Indicators



1 Recording in Progress

Appears red while recording

2 Recording Mode (see P.11-4)

LONG / FINE

3 Status

[●] [] [] stop

4 Elapsed Time

5 Folder Name

6 Storage Media

[]: Handset, []: SD Memory Card

7 Mic Level (see P.11-4)

[]: Conference, []: Interview

8 File Name

9 Remaining Recording Time

Reduces when you save recordings or press [] **Mark** while recording

Recording

Use handset microphone to record voice onto handset or SD Memory Card.

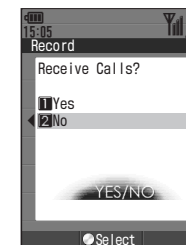
- Make sure battery is adequately charged. When battery is low (), Voice Recorder does not record. If battery becomes low () while recording, **Low Battery** appears and Voice Recorder shuts down automatically.
- Conversations during calls cannot be recorded.
- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.
- Save up to 100 files per folder.
- Maximum recording time is 200 minutes in **Long** mode, and 40 minutes in **Fine** mode by default (handset). Maximum continuous recording time is 10 minutes.

Index Menu ▶ **Handy ()** ▶ **Voice**

1 Select [] **Record** and press []

Receive Calls? appears.

- To prevent disruption by calls, choose [] **No** to activate Off-Line Mode.
- If Off-Line Mode is already active, skip ahead to Step 3 (see P.3-6).



First Recording or When Folder Has Been Deleted

- Voice Folder list appears. Select a folder and press []
- To create folders, press [] **Menu** ▶ Select **Select Folder** ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter name ▶ Press []
 - Select a created folder and press [] to set as a save location.

2 Choose [] **No** and press []

Recording window opens.

- To change the folder, press [] **Menu** ▶ Select **Select Folder** ▶ Press [] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Press []
- To create folders, press [] **Menu** ▶ Select **Select Folder** ▶ Press [] ▶ Press [] **Menu** ▶ Select **New Folder** ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter name ▶ Press []
- To switch storage media (handset or SD Memory Card), press [] **Menu** ▶ Select **Select Folder** ▶ Press [] ▶ Press [] **Menu** ▶ Select **Handset** or **Memory Card** ▶ Press []
- To accept incoming calls, mail, etc. while recording, choose [] **Yes** ▶ Press []

3 Press []

Recording starts (Small Light illuminates).

- Press [] **Mark** while recording to save the rest as a new file.



- Do not subject handset to shocks. May cause noise or skipping.
- Recording window may take long to open depending on the amount of information on SD Memory Card.

4 Press **⏹** to stop

Recording is saved.

- To resume recording, press **⏹**. Recording is saved as a new file in the same folder.
- Off-Line Mode is canceled after recording if set in Step 2 on **P.11-3**.

Tip

- Default file name is also the recorded date and time, which can be changed afterward.
- To activate Voice Recorder with clamshell closed, see **P.16-3**.
- If Off-Line Mode is not active, recording may be disrupted by calls. (Recorded sound is saved automatically.)
- Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts when **⏹** is pressed after recording.

Recording Settings

Mic Level

Use **Conference** at meetings, and **Standard** for interviews, etc.

Default: Conference

Index Menu

▶ **Handy (☎)** ▶ **Voice** ▶ **Open Recording window** ▶ **Menu (☰)** ▶
Mic Level

Select **1 Conference** or **2 Standard** ▶ Press **⏹**

- Place handset within approximately 2 m from the sound source for Conference, and 20 to 30 cm for Standard. Make a test recording to check the sensitivity.

Recording Mode

Use Long or Fine mode

Default: Fine

Index Menu

▶ **Handy (☎)** ▶ **Voice** ▶ **Open Recording window** ▶ **Menu (☰)** ▶
Recording Mode

Select **1 Long** or **2 Fine** ▶ Press **⏹**

- Sound quality is better in Fine mode. However, recording time shortens as more space is required in memory.
- Record sound in Fine mode to use as Ring Tones.

Delete

Delete files one at a time

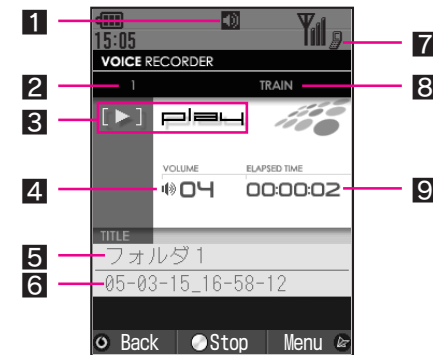
Index Menu

▶ **Handy (☎)** ▶ **Voice** ▶ **Open Recording window** ▶ **Menu (☰)** ▶
Delete

Select a file ▶ Press **⏹** ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press **⏹**

Playback

Playback Indicators



1 Playback in Progress

Appears green during playback

2 Play Mode (see P.11-7)

1 : Play One Data, ALL: Play All

3 Status

[▶] play / [■] stop / [▶▶] FF / [◀◀] RR

4 Volume (see P.11-6)

5 Folder Name

6 File Name

7 Storage Media

☎: Handset, ☎: SD Memory Card

8 Volume Control (Train: see P.11-7)

TRAIN: Volume Control On

- No indicator: Volume Control Off

9 Elapsed Time

11

Voice Recorder

11

Voice Recorder

Playback

Play sounds from handset speaker, or use Headphones with built-in TV antenna (see P.10-12).

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ▶ *Voice*

1 Select **Play Mode** and press **Enter**

Playback window opens.

To play sounds in other folders, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Voice Folder** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Press **Left** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **Enter**

Tip

First Playback or When Folder Has Been Deleted

Voice Folder list appears. Follow these steps to select a file to play.

Select a folder ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **Enter**

Operations in Voice Folder

- To create folders, press **Left** ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **New Folder** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Enter name ▶ Press **Enter**
- To rename files, select a file ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Change Name** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Enter name ▶ Press **Enter**
- To delete files, select a file ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **Enter**
- To exchange Voice files between handset and SD Memory Card, select a file ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Copy** or **Move** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **Handset** or **Memory Card** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Press **Enter** twice

Playing Sounds on SD Memory Card

In Voice Folder list, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **Enter**

2 Press **Enter**

Playback starts.

Press **Up** (up) or **Down** (down) to adjust volume.

When Train mode (see P.11-7) is active, maximum level is 4.

Incoming Communications during Playback

- When calls arrive, handset rings/vibrates and playback stops.
- Other incoming communications arrive without interrupting playback. Mail Notice appears for mail messages and indicator (✉ or 📶) flashes for Web/Station information (except Urgent Information).

Tip

To activate/cancel Manner Mode, press **Manner** for 1+ seconds in Playback window.

Playback Operations

Replay	Press Left Press repeatedly to play previous files.
Skip	Press Right Press repeatedly to skip more.
Fast Forward	Press and hold Right ¹ Release for playback. ²
Fast Reverse	Press and hold Left ¹ Release for playback. ²
Pause	Press Enter Press again to resume playback.

¹Not available while playback is paused.

²Available within a single file when **Play One Data** is set.

Playback Settings

Play One Data or Play All

Set handset to play specified file only or all files in a folder

Default: Play One Data

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ▶ *Voice* ▶ *Open Playback window* ▶ **Menu** (☺) ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Play Setting*

Select **1 Play One Data** or **2 Play All** ▶ Press **Enter**

Train (Volume Control)

Activate Train mode to set maximum volume level to 4

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ▶ *Voice* ▶ *Open Playback window* ▶ **Menu** (☺) ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Train*

Choose **1 On** ▶ Press **Enter**

Tip

When Train mode is activated volume level is decreased from 5 to 4. Canceling Train mode does not restore the original volume level.

Split Data

Split a single file into two

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ▶ *Voice* ▶ *Play or pause a file* ▶ **Menu** (☺) ▶ *Split Data*

Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press **Enter**

Note

- Files cannot be split during the first or last 20 seconds.
- If memory is low, files may not be split.
- Split files on SD Memory Card may not play properly if the card is not formatted for V603SH.

11

Voice Recorder

11

Voice Recorder










Voice Ring Tone

Crop up to approximately 30 seconds from Voice files to use as Ring Tones.

- Only sounds recorded in Fine mode can be used. Access files from handset Voice Folder (フォルダ1).
- Crop sounds while a file is playing or paused.

Editing Voice Files

Index Menu ▶ *Handy (📞)* ▶ *Voice* ▶ *Play Mode* ▶ *Select a file*




- 1 Press**  **Menu** at the start point
- 2 Select *Edit* and press** 
- 3 Press** 
Playback resumes.
- 4 Press**  **at the end point**
 - Cropping automatically ends when the limit is reached.
 - To play the cropped portion, select **2 Preview** ▶ Press 
 - Press  to stop.
 - To start over without saving, select **3 Cancel** ▶ Press 
- 5 Select**  **Save and press** 
Cropped portion is saved to handset Voice Folder (フォルダ1) as a new file.

11

Voice Recorder

Using as Ring Tone

Index Menu ▶ *Handy (📞)* ▶ *Voice* ▶ *Open Playback window* ▶ *Menu (🗄)* ▶ *Voice Folder*

- 1 Select a Voice file and press**  **Menu**
- 2 Select *Incoming Tone* and press** 
 - *Incoming Tone* appears only for compatible Voice files.
- 3 Select an item and press** 

Memory Card



The SD logo is a trademark.



Portions of this product are protected under copyright law and are provided under license by ARIS/SOLANA/4C.

Before Use

V603SH accepts SD Memory Card. Save images, music, Data Folder files, Phone Book entries, etc. to an SD Memory Card.

- An SD Memory Card is not included. Purchase SD Memory Card separately to use Memory Card-related functions.
 - Format a new SD Memory Card for use with V603SH (see **P.12-6**).
- To learn how to save a particular file to an SD Memory Card, refer to that section of the manual.

- Tip**
- V603SH is compatible with **SD Memory Card** and **SD-ROM Card**.
 - The manufacturer recommends the use of 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256 or 512 MB cards.
 - For optimum use of Memory Card-related functions, SD Memory Cards with 16 MB or more capacity are recommended.

Precautions

- Turn handset power off before inserting or removing an SD Memory Card.
- Do not peel off the label on SD Memory Card. Doing so may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Do not place new labels or stickers on SD Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Use an oil-based felt pen to write on SD Memory Card.
Using a pencil or ballpoint pen may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify an SD Memory Card.
- Do not expose SD Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch SD Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Do not expose SD Memory Card to direct sunlight or excessive heat (e.g. inside vehicles, etc.).
- Keep an SD Memory Card away from dust or high humidity.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- An SD Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage, eventually becoming unusable and needs to be replaced.
- To lower the chance of handset malfunction please use only recommended SD Memory Card sizes.

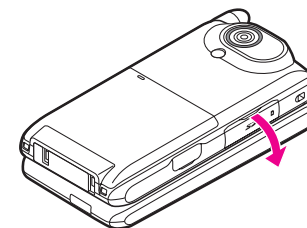
- Note** Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Please keep a separate record of Phone Book contents, etc.

Inserting & Removing SD Memory Card

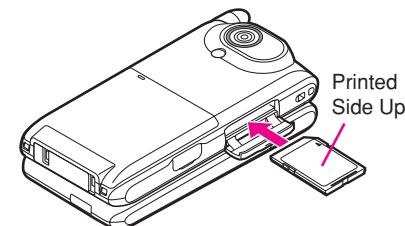
Inserting

Turn handset power off.

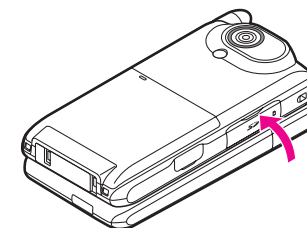
1 Open cover



2 Insert card until it clicks

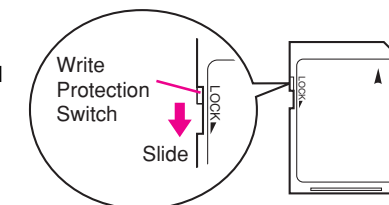


3 Close cover



Write Protection Switch

- Set **Write Protection Switch** to **LOCK** to prevent accidental erasure or overwriting. For more information, see SD Memory Card user guide or instruction manual.



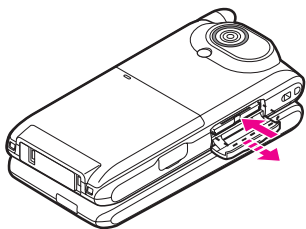
- Note**
- When using an SD Memory Card that has been used with another device, always use Synchronize before saving files to the card (see **P.12-12**). Files saved with other devices may not appear as saved.
 - Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot. Damage to handset/card may result.

Removing

Turn handset power off.

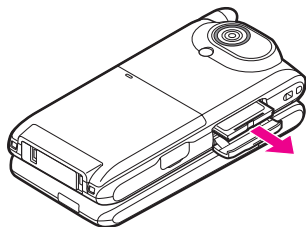
1 Open cover and lightly push down on card

- With a light push, the card pops out.



2 Remove card

- Slide the card straight out and close the cover.



Note Never remove SD Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed. Damage to handset/card may result.

Tip Insert an SD Memory Card and turn handset power on. Standby appears. Memory Card load times vary depending on card size and the amount of information saved. When using an SD Memory Card that has been used with another device, use Synchronize to update V-Appli Library (see P.10-4).

Memory Card Indicator

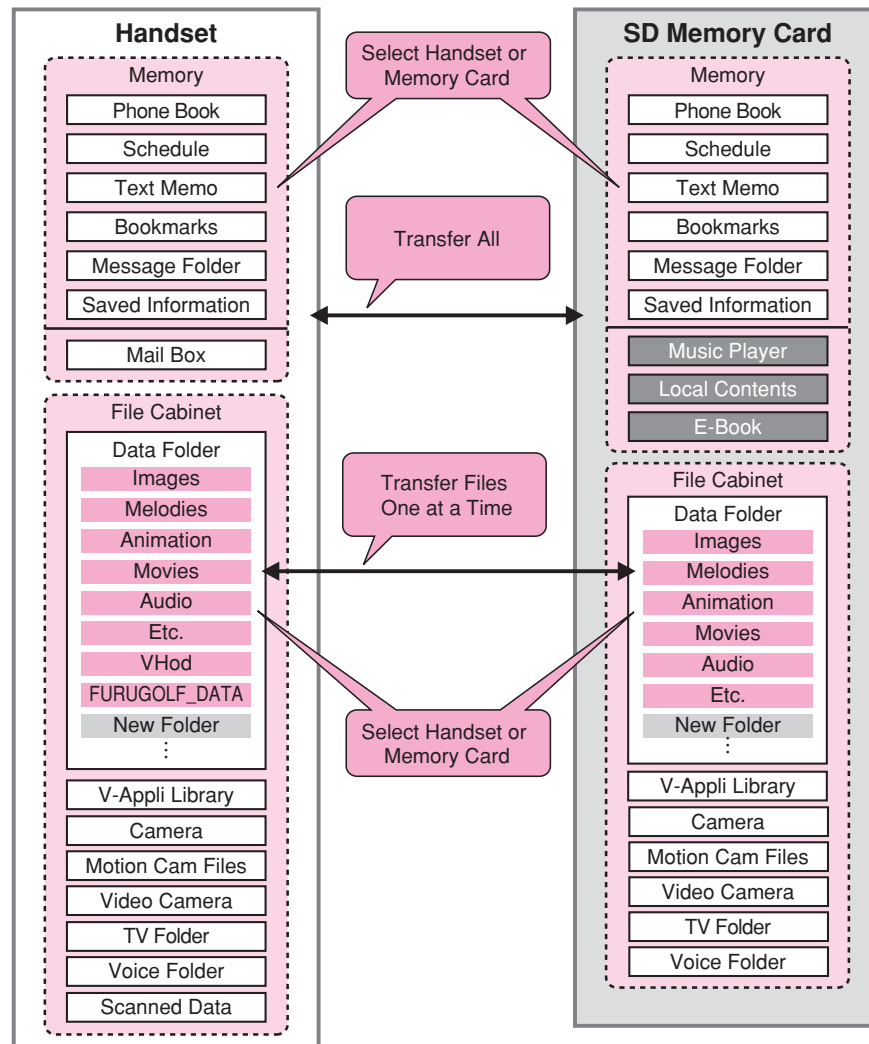
When an SD Memory Card is inserted into handset, Memory Card indicator appears at the top of Display. Memory Card indicator lights/flashes when in use, etc.

	SD Memory Card inserted
	Accessing files (flashes green or red)
	Write protection enabled (illuminates red)

File Organization

SD Memory Card has two storage areas. Data is automatically sorted into **Memory** by function and into **File Cabinet** by file format.

The following may not be exchanged between handset and SD Memory Card: Mail, Bookmarks, V-Applications, copy or transfer protected files in Data Folder, etc.



Using Memory Card

Format Card

When using a new SD Memory Card, format it on V603SH for use with V603SH before trying to save files, etc.

Note

- Before formatting an SD Memory Card, make sure there is no important information saved on the card. Format Card deletes all files from SD Memory Card.
- An improperly formatted SD Memory Card may not function as it should with V603SH.
- Never remove SD Memory Card or battery while formatting.

Index Menu ▶ Memory Card ▶ Memory Card ▶ Format Card

- 1 Enter Security Code
- 2 Choose **Yes** and press **OK**

Opening Memory Card Files

From Function Windows

Open Memory Card files from file list when **Memory Card** appears.

- 1 Open file list and press **Left Arrow** **Menu**
 - For Bookmarks, press **OK** **Menu**.
 - To open Phone Book entries on SD Memory Card, open Entry Search window or Entry List and press **OK** **Switch**.
- 2 Select **Memory Card** and press **OK**
 - To switch back to handset, select **Handset** ▶ Press **OK**
 - For Phone Book, select **Handset** or **Memory Card** ▶ Press **OK**

From Data Folder

Edit or manage files and folders on SD Memory Card. Refer to instructions for Data Folder (see P.13-46 - 13-48).

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Press **Left Arrow** **Menu** **OK** **SD**
SD Memory Card Data Folder opens (**SD** appears).
- 2 Select a file and press **OK**
The content plays or appears.

From Camera Folder

When storage media is set to **Memory Card**, Camera mode files are saved to **Camera**.

Index Menu ▶ Memory Card ▶ Memory Card Files

- 1 Select **Camera** and press **OK**
DCIM (Camera folder) content appears.
- 2 Select a folder and press **OK**
 - Camera mode files are saved to **100IMAGE** folder (default).
 - To save as Wallpaper, select a file ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Press **Left Arrow** **Menu** ▶ Select **Save As Wallpaper** ▶ Press **OK** twice
 - To delete, select a file ▶ Press **Left Arrow** **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **OK**
- 3 Select an image and press **OK**
 - To open other files, press **OK** **Back**.

Editing Images on Other Devices

- Camera mode images are DCF compatible.
- Copy original image files to the hard disk before editing an image.
- Editing and re-saving images on PCs or other devices cancels DCF compatibility and may make the image unopenable on handset (see P.7-9).

Tip

Print settings are available for Camera mode images (see P.7-45 "DPOF"). Add text or calendar mask to Camera mode images to create original Postcards or Calendars (see P.7-47).

From Motion Camera Folder

When storage media is set to **Memory Card**, Motion Camera files are saved to **Motion Cam Files**.

Index Menu ▶ Memory Card ▶ Memory Card Files

- 1 Select **Motion Cam Files** and press **OK**
 - To rename or delete files, see P.13-46 - 13-47.
 - To open properties, select a file ▶ Press **Left Arrow** **Menu** ▶ Select **Property** ▶ Press **OK**
- 2 Select a file and press **OK**
Video plays and stops automatically at the end.
 - Playback Operations: see P.7-34
 - To open other files, press **OK** **Back**

From Video Camera Folder & TV Folder

When storage media is set to **Memory Card**, Video Camera files and recorded TV programs are saved to **Video Camera** and **TV Folder** respectively.

Index Menu ▶ **Memory Card** ▶ **Memory Card Files**

1 Select **5** **Video Camera** or **6** **TV Folder** and press **⊙**

- For **Video Camera**, select a folder ▶ Press **⊙**
 - Files are saved to **PRL001** folder (default).
- To open properties, select a file ▶ **⊙** **Menu** ▶ Select **Property** ▶ Press **⊙**

2 Select a file and press **⊙**

- Playback starts and stops automatically at the end.
- Playback Operations: see **P.7-34**

Transferring Files

Exchange files/entries between handset and SD Memory Card.

Transfer All is useful to back-up files (for a newly purchased handset) or exchange files/entries with SD Memory Card compatible handsets.

Option	Description	Applicable for:
Copy or Move	Copy or move a selected file/entry	Phone Book, Schedule, Text Memo, Data Folder ¹ , Camera/Motion Camera/Video Camera files, TV programs ² , Voice files, Message Folder (Web) ² , Bookmarks (Web), V-Appli Library ² and Saved Information (Station)
Transfer All	Transfer all files/entries by function. When transferred to SD Memory Card, all contents are copied as a single file. (File name is the date of transfer.) Contents cannot be accessed from handset.	Phone Book, Schedule, Text Memo, Mail (Inbox, Sent, Outbox) and Bookmarks (Web)
	Transfer all files/entries by function. When transferred to SD Memory Card, each file/entry is copied as a single file. Contents can be accessed from handset.	Data Folder ¹ , Camera/Motion Camera/Video Camera files, TV programs, Voice files, V-Appli Library, Message Folder (Web) and Saved Information (Station)

¹ Images, Melodies, Animation, Movies, Audio, Etc. and created folders

² Not available for copying.

Precautions for File Transfers

- File transfers are not available when battery is low.
- Copy protected files cannot be copied.
 - Copy protected files are removed from handset once transferred to SD Memory Card, and vice versa.
 - Files cannot be transferred to Vodafone handsets of other parties.
 - Only your handset can open copy protected files transferred to SD Memory Card.
- When handset or SD Memory Card memory is low, files may not transfer correctly.
- Some files/entries may not be transferable. Some transferred files/entries may not be used on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices.

Copy or Move

Refer to **P.13-48** to copy or move files in Data Folder to other folders.

1 **Phone Book Entry**

- 1 Select **Phone Book** entry and press **⊙** **Menu**
- 2 Select **Copy to** or **Move to** and press **⊙**
- 3 Press **⊙** **⊙** and enter a number
 - Press **⊙** to toggle storage media between **⊙** and **⊙**.

Copying Other Items

- 1 Select data and press **⊙** **Menu**
- 2 Select **Copy to**, **Copy to Handset** or **Copy to Memory Card** and press **⊙**

Moving Other Items

- 1 Select data and press **⊙** **Menu**
- 2 Select **Move to**, **Move to Handset** or **Move to Memory Card** and press **⊙**

Transfer All

Read "Precautions for File Transfers" on P.12-9 beforehand.

Handset to Memory Card

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Transfer All*

- 1 Select **1**To Memory Card and press **⓪****
Receive Call while Forwarding? appears.
 - Choose **2**No to activate Off-Line Mode to prevent disruptions from incoming calls, etc.
 - If Off-Line Mode is already active (see P.3-6), skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Choose **2**No and press **⓪****
 - To accept incoming calls, etc. during transfer, choose **1**Yes ▶ Press **⓪**
- 3 Enter Security Code**
- 4 Select an item and press **⓪****
 - For *Select All* or *Phone Book*, choose **1**Yes or **2**No ▶ Press **⓪**
- 5 Choose **1**Yes and press **⓪****
After transfer, Transfer All menu returns.
 - To transfer other data, repeat Steps 1 - 5.
 - To cancel, press **⓪** **Cancel**

Note

- Files/entries may be renamed after transfer or may not be transferred if the same name already exists.
- Encode Phone Book, Mail or Schedule data (see P.12-11) to restrict access after Transfer All. Encoded data appears correctly only on your handset.

Memory Card to Handset

Handset data is overwritten after Transfer All.

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Transfer All*

- 1 Select **2**From Memory Card and press **⓪****
Receive Call while Forwarding? appears.
 - Choose **2**No to activate Off-Line Mode to prevent disruptions from incoming calls, etc.
 - If Off-Line Mode is already active (see P.3-6), skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Choose **2**No and press **⓪****
 - To accept incoming calls, etc. during transfer, choose **1**Yes ▶ Press **⓪**
- 3 Enter Security Code**

4 Select an item and press **⓪**

- Some items may not be selected.
- For items other than Phone Book, Schedule, Text Memo, Mail (Inbox, Sent and Outbox) and Bookmarks, skip ahead to Step 6.

5 Select a file/entry and press **⓪**

- If there is more than one file/entry, check the date of transfer to select.
Example: 050315XX indicates the file was transferred on March 15, 2005. (XX: 00 - 99 or aa - zz)
- To delete files/entries on SD Memory Card, select one ▶ Press **⓪** **Remove** ▶ Choose **1**Yes ▶ Press **⓪**

6 Choose **1**Yes and press **⓪**

7 Select **1**OK and press **⓪**

- After transfer, Transfer All menu returns.
- To transfer other data, repeat Steps 1 - 7.
- To cancel, press **⓪** **Cancel**.

Encoding Data

Encode handset data before transferring to SD Memory Card. Transferred data appears correctly only on your handset.

- Encode is available by function (Phone Book, Mail or Schedule).
- Encode is *Off* by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Transfer All* ▶ *Encode*

1 Select an item and press **⓪**

2 Choose **1**On and press **⓪**

- To cancel, choose **2**Off ▶ Press **⓪**
- To encode other data, repeat Steps 1 - 2.

Additional Functions

Memory Card Status

Check SD Memory Card memory status

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card*

Select **1**Memory Card Status ▶ Press **⓪**

Tip

A portion of SD Memory Card memory is reserved for storing copyright information, etc.

Example: 64 MB SD Memory Card

Approximately 60.6 MB is available for use. For amount of available memory, see **Card Memory** in Memory Card Status.

Local Contents

Open HTML files to access Local Contents on SD Memory Card or the Mobile Internet sites

■ Available only when HTML files are saved on SD Memory Card.

■ Activate Web beforehand (see [P.1-6](#)).

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Local Contents*

Select a title ▶ Press **⊙**

Tip

- Local Contents are saved in **PRIVATE/SDJPHONE/SD コンテンツ** folder when viewed on PCs.
- If Autorun file is deleted, open HTML files via **Local Contents**.

Synchronize

Synchronize SD Memory Card data between handsets and other devices

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Synchronize*

Select an item ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select **1 OK** ▶ Press **⊙**

■ To cancel, press **⊙ Cancel** ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press **⊙**

- When using an SD Memory Card that has been used on other Vodafone handsets or other devices, always use **Synchronize**.

Note

- Synchronizing may fail if SD Memory Card memory is low.
- Synchronizing may take long depending on the amount of information on SD Memory Card.

Autorun

HTML files specified in Local Contents open when handset is turned on or an SD Memory Card is inserted

■ Available only when Autorun file is saved on SD Memory Card.

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Autorun*

Select **1 Manual Autorun** ▶ Press **⊙**

■ To delete Autorun file, select **2 Delete Autorun** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Enter Security Code ▶

Select **1 OK** ▶ Press **⊙**

- HTML files (Local Contents) remain even after Autorun file is deleted.

Note

Once deleted, Autorun file cannot be recovered and Autorun is disabled.

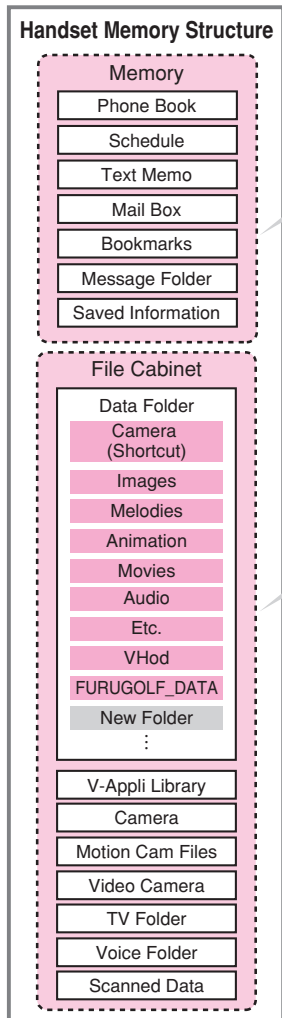


Managing Files

Data Folder

File Organization

Handset has two storage areas. Files are automatically sorted into **Memory** by function and into **File Cabinet** by file format. Handset File Cabinet capacity is approximately 12 MB.



Save files created/obtained using functions. The capacity varies by function.

Files are sorted into folders by file format. File Cabinet capacity is fixed and shared by all folders.

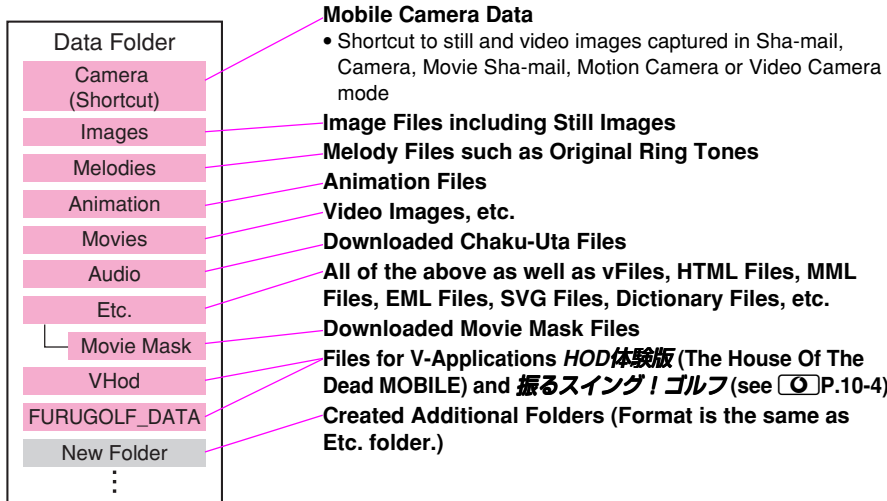
File Cabinet

- To check memory usage status, press **☉** → **Select Functions** → Press **☉** → **Select 3 Settings 1** → Press **☉** → **Select 1 Memory** → Press **☉** → **Select 3 File Cabinet** → Press **☉**
- To reset File Cabinet, press **☉** → **Select Functions** → Press **☉** → **Select 3 Settings 1** → Press **☉** → **Select 1 Memory** → Press **☉** → **Select 3 File Cabinet** → Press **☉** → **Menu** → **Select Reset** → Press **☉** → **Enter Security Code** → **Choose 1 Yes** → Press **☉**
 - Before resetting File Cabinet, keep a separate copy of important files.
 - Pre-loaded files are restored.

Tip Some data in Memory can be saved to Data Folder as **vFile** (see P.13-38).

Data Folder Contents

Files created or obtained via Web or Sky/Super Mail are organized in separate folders according to file format. Files are sorted as follows:



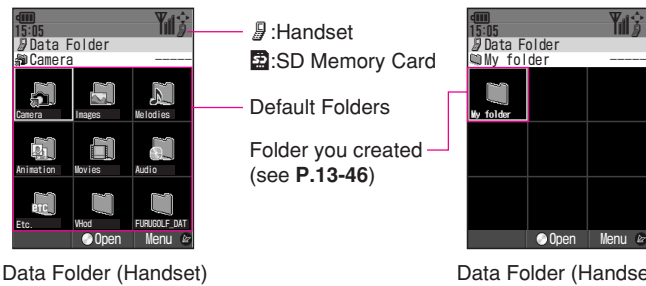
連写 folder is created when a Burst Shot image or sequential TV screenshot image (see P.6-10) is captured and saved for the first time.

Window Description

To open Data Folder from Standby, follow these steps.

Press **⏏** → Select **My Files** → Press **⏏** → Select **Data Folder** → Press **⏏**

To customize the appearance of Data Folder, see **P.13-5** "Display Settings."



Data Folder (Handset)

Data Folder (Handset)

Icons

Still Image & Animation Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
	JPEG (.jpg)	JPEG image
	PNG (.png)	PNG image
	Burst Shot (consisting of Index Image and 4, 9, or 25 frames) (.SRG)	Burst Mode image
	E-Animation (NEVA files) (.nva)	Animation (may include sound)
	Animation (JPEG, PNG, or PNG/JPEG Animation) ²	Animation
	MNG (.mng)	Simple animation made from JPEG and PNG images

¹Blue icon: forwardable, red icon: unforwardable

²Extensions do not appear for JPEG, PNG and PNG/JPEG Animations.

Video Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
	MPEG-4 (.3gp)	MPEG-4 video image
	MPEG-4 (.ASF)	MPEG-4 video image
	MPEG-4 (.ASF)	Recorded TV program

Sound Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
	SMAF (.mmf)	Melody via Web or Super Mail (may include images) (blue): forwardable, (red): unforwardable
	Melody (.smd)	Melody via Web or Sky/Super Mail (blue): forwardable, (red): unforwardable
	Original Ring Tone (.sjm)	Melody you created (forwardable)
	Voice*	Voice/sound you recorded (forwardable)
	Voice*	Recorded FM radio (unforwardable)
	Audio (.mp4)	Downloaded Chaku-Uta (unforwardable)

*Extensions do not appear for Voice files.

Memory Card

Save files directly to **SD Memory Card**, or transfer handset files one at a time or all at once. Exchange files between handset and SD Memory Card.

See **P.12-2** for more about SD Memory Card.

Display Settings

Switching File View

View files by image or name (see **P.13-7**).

- This setting applies to all folders.
- **List** is set by default.

Index Menu ▶ **My Files** ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Menu** (⏏) ▶ **Handy Functions**

1 Select **List** or **List File Names** and press **⏏**

- This setting remains until you change it.

Sorting Files

This setting applies to all folders.

Index Menu ▶ **My Files** ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Menu** (⏏) ▶ **Handy Functions** ▶ **Auto Sort**

1 Select an item and press **⏏**

Note Files in folders containing 181 or more files are not sorted. Folder contents may take long to appear when many files are sorted.

Opening Files

Handset Data Folder

Index Menu ▶ My Files

1 Select **Data Folder** and press **Enter**

- To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Left Arrow** **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **Enter**



2 Select a folder and press **Enter**

File names or images appear (see P.13-7 for File View).

- Sort files by date or name (see P.13-5).
- Selecting Folders: see P.13-8

3 Select a file and press **Enter**

The content plays or appears.

- Press **Left Arrow** to open the previous file, and press **Right Arrow** to open the next one.



File View (List)

Tip

Opening Burst Shot Files

Index Image appears. Use **Left Arrow** to view single frames.

JPEG Images Exceeding W 240 x H 320 Dots

Images are reduced to fit Display. To restore the original size, press **Left Arrow** **Menu**, select **Original Size** and press **Enter**.

4 Press **Back** to return to Data Folder

Tip

- Exchange files via infrared with compatible devices (see P.14-3).
- To select folders/files with MC Cursor, see P.1-13.

Window Description

Example: Images folder

File View (List)



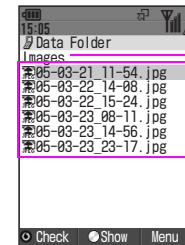
Format and Name (of selected image)

File Size

Saved Files

- Icons appear for files other than images or images not supported by handset.
- Folder icon** appears for folders.

File View (List File Names)



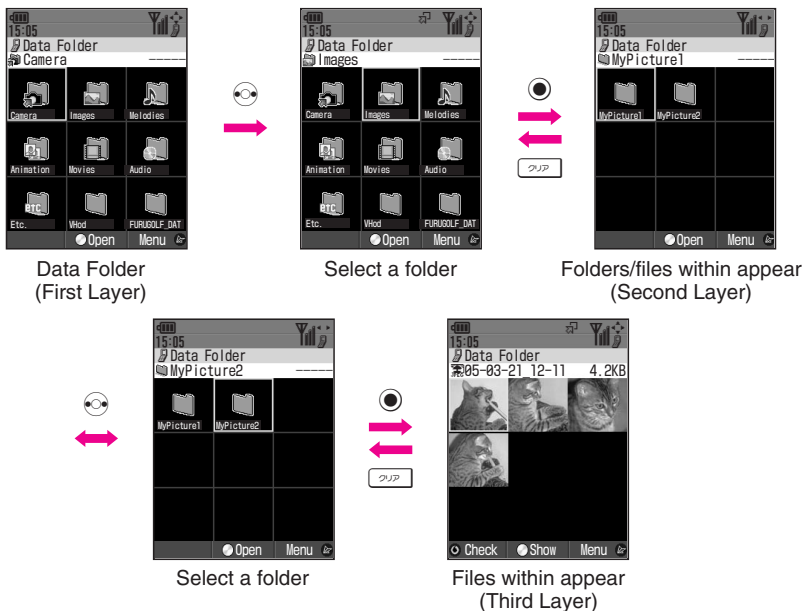
Folder Name

Saved Files (format and file name)

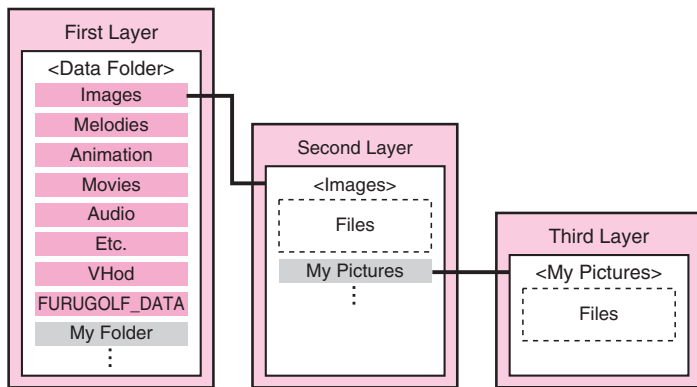
Selecting Folders

In Data Folder, select a folder and press **Enter**.

- Files or folders appear (second layer). To reach the third layer, select a folder and press **Enter**.
- Select a file and press **Enter**. The content plays or appears.



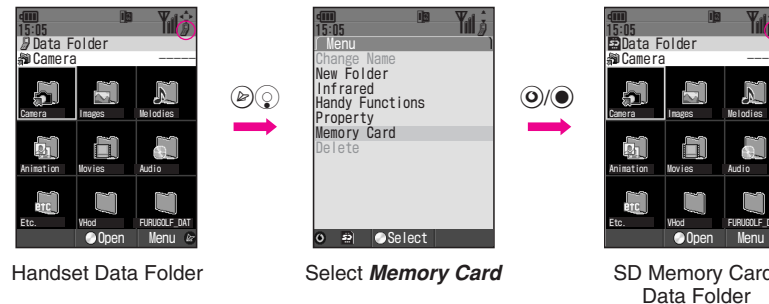
- Press **Up** to return to the upper layer.
- Create up to three layers to organize files. **My Folder** and **My Pictures** in the figure below are created folders.



SD Memory Card Data Folder

Toggle between handset and SD Memory Card Data Folder.

- Check the display indicator (Handset icon): handset, (SD Memory Card icon): SD Memory Card.

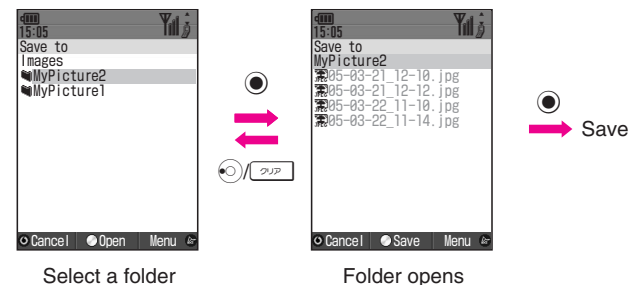


- Select **Handset** to switch back to handset Data Folder.

Saving Files

Select a folder to save Original Ring Tones, animation, data obtained via Web or Super Mail, vFiles, etc.

- Enter a file name if needed.
- Appropriate folders may open when saving files (in the figure below, Images folder opens for JPEG image).
- Only folders supporting the file can be selected.



Tip If a file name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

Sending Files via Super Mail

Attach files to Super Mail from Data Folder.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder

- 1 Select a file and press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Attachment** and press
 - For JPEG images, select **1 Attach Full Image** or **3 Attach 1/4 Size** ▶ Press
 - For Original Ring Tones, select a file format (see P.3-12) ▶ Press
- 3 Enter recipient, complete other fields and send Super Mail (see P.3-3)

Sending Burst Shot Images

- Press ▶ Select **My Files** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Data Folder** ▶ Press ▶ Select **速写** folder ▶ Press ▶ Select a file ▶ Press ▶ Select an image with ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Attach Screen** ▶ Press (See P.3-3 for more.)

Sending Split Images

- To split an image (240 x 320 dots) into four frames and attach to Super Mail, follow these steps.
 - Press ▶ Select **My Files** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Data Folder** ▶ Press ▶ Select a folder ▶ Press ▶ Select an image ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Attachment** ▶ Press ▶ Select **2 Attach Split Mail** ▶ Press ▶ Select or enter recipient (See P.3-3.)
- Split Mail transmission charges are equivalent to sending four Super Mail messages.

Properties

Index Menu ▶ My Files

- 1 Open Data Folder or a folder within it, and select a folder or file
- 2 Press **Menu**
- 3 Select **Property** and press
 - Details appear. Press to scroll down.
 - Item Descriptions

File Name	File name
Title¹	Melody file name
Files²	The number of selected files
Type	File/folder type
Location	File/folder location
File Size	Data size in bytes ³
Save Size	File size on handset/SD Memory Card
Date&Time	The date and time the file/folder was created
Copy/Fwd	OK: can be sent, edited or copied within Data Folder ⁴
Save	OK: can be saved Invalid: not supported ⁴
Transfer	OK: can be copied or transferred to SD Memory Card Invalid: not supported ⁴
Setting⁵	Valid: can be set as Wallpaper/Display Images
Folder Protect⁶	On/Off
DF Protect	On/Off
Incoming Tone¹	On/Off ⁴
Sound Effects¹	On/Off ⁴
Group Ring Tone¹	On/Off ⁴
DCF⁵	Compatible: The file can be copied to Camera folder
Horizontal⁷	Width in dots
Vertical⁷	Length in dots

¹Appears for melody files.

²Appears when multiple files are selected (see P.13-47).

³Total data size when multiple files are selected (see P.13-47).

⁴When multiple files with different status are selected, **Invalid** (for Copy/Fwd, Save and Transfer) or **On** (for Incoming Tone, Sound Effects and Group Ring Tone) takes priority.

⁵Appears for JPEG images.

⁶Appears for folders.

⁷Appears for JPEG, PNG, MTN, MNG or EVA images (does not appear if file size exceeds 40 KB).

Creating Animation

Simple Animation

Select up to four images to create Simple Animation. Images appear one after another at the selected tempo.

- Use PNG or JPEG images captured with mobile camera or obtained via Web/Super Mail.
- When memory is full, delete files to free some space (see P.13-47).
- Image quality may change when used for animation.

Creating Simple Animation

Index Menu

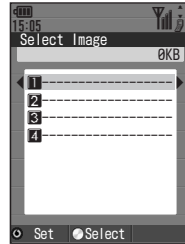
► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Animation ► Animation Tool ► Simple Animation ► New

1 Enter title and press

- Enter title to proceed (up to 24 single-byte characters).
- Title is also the file name, which can be changed afterward (see P.13-46).

2 Select tempo and press

In animation, images appear in numerical order at the tempo.



3 Select a number and press

4 Select an image in Data Folder and press

- For operations in Data Folder, see P.13-6.
- To use a 4-Burst Shot (all frames), press ► Select 連写 folder ► Press ► Select a Burst Shot file ► Press ► Select **1 Four Images** ► Press
- To use a Burst Shot frame, press ► Select 連写 folder ► Press ► Select a Burst Shot file ► Press ► Select **2 One Image** ► Press ► Select quality and size ► Press ► Select an image with ► Proceed to Step 6
 - To start over from selecting an image in Data Folder, press **Change**.
 - To start over from Step 3, press **Back**.

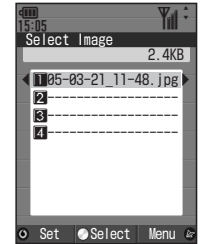
5 Select quality and size and press

- 240 x 320 cannot be selected for W 120 x H 160 or smaller images.
- To change the image, press **Change** ► Start over from Step 4

6 Press

The image is set.

- To play animation, press **Menu** ► Select **1 Play** ► Press
 - Press **Back** to return.
- To change images, select one ► Press **Menu** ► Select **2 Change** ► Press ► Start over from Step 4
- To compress or reduce the size, select an image ► Press **Menu** ► Select **3 Compress or Reduce** ► Press ► Select **1 Compress** or **2 Reduce** ► Press ► Choose **1 Yes** ► Press
 - Some images cannot be compressed or reduced.
- To delete images, select one ► Press **Menu** ► Select **4 Delete** ► Press ► Choose **1 Yes** ► Press



7 Repeat Steps 3 - 6 to add images

- Select up to four images.

8 Press **Set** when finished

- To change title, tempo or image, select **2 Edit** ► Press ► Perform from Step 2 below

9 Select **1 Save** and press

10 Press

- The animation is saved to Data Folder (Animation).
- Select other folders or SD Memory Card to save animation.



If the same file name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

Editing Animation

When memory is full, delete files to free some space (see P.13-47).

Index Menu

► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Animation ► Animation Tool ► Simple Animation ► Data Folder

1 Select animation and press

2 Edit title and press

3 Select tempo and press

- To add images, select a number ► Press ► Select an image ► Press ► Select quality and size ► Press twice
- To change images, select a number ► Press **Menu** ► Select **2 Change** ► Press ► Select an image ► Press ► Select quality and size ► Press twice
- To delete images, select a number ► Press **Menu** ► Select **4 Delete** ► Press ► Choose **1 Yes** ► Press

4 When finished editing, press **Set**

5 Select **Save** and press **Set**

Save location appears. Skip to Step 7.

- When title is the same, options appear.

6 Select **New Entry** and press **Set**

To overwrite, select **Overwrite** → Press **Set** (Skip the following step.)

7 Press **Set**

The animation is saved to Data Folder (Animation).

- Select other folders or SD Memory Card to save animation.

Tip If the same file name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

Converting Animation Format

Convert JPEG or PNG Animation file to **MNG File**.

- Send converted JPEG or PNG Animation to PCs or other devices.
- Image quality may change after conversion.
- Animation can only be converted when **MNG File Conversion** appears.

Index Menu → My Files → Data Folder → Open a folder → Open animation → Menu (M) → MNG File Conversion

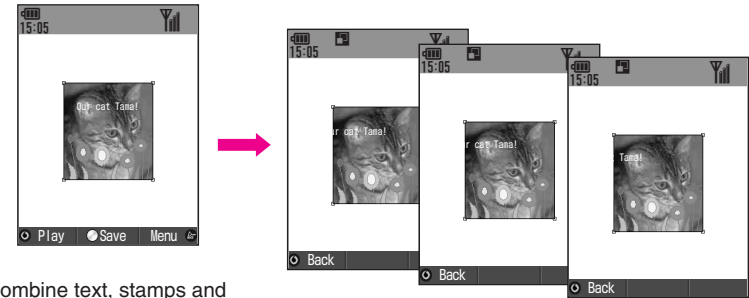
1 Press **Set**

The animation is saved as a new entry.

Note • When converted from JPEG Animation, MNG files open only on packet-enabled Vodafone handsets manufactured by Sharp. To send MNG files to other packet-enabled handsets, convert from PNG Animation.
• Some animation files may not be converted.

Creating E-Animation

Combine original text and preset stamps to create animation. Add background image/melody.



Combine text, stamps and background images

Combined text and stamps appear animated

Animations are saved as **E-Animation** files with a .nva extension.

Note E-Animation files (extension: .nva) open only on packet-enabled Vodafone handsets manufactured by Sharp. With Long Mail compatible Sharp handsets (J-SH04 or later), images/sounds may not appear/play properly.

Entering Text & Stamps

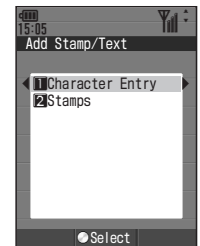
Before creating your E-Animation files, read below to learn how to add text and stamps to animation.

Selecting Text or Stamps

In **Add Stamp/Text** window, select **Character Entry** or **Stamps**.

- Enter up to 3 text entries/stamps or 29 KB.

Tip The number of text entries or stamps you can use may decrease depending on the complexity of animation.



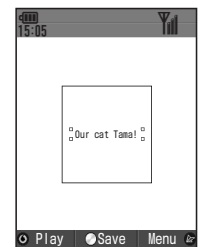
Entering Text

1 Enter text for animation

Enter text and press **Set**.

- Entered text appears. Four squares (□) indicate the text is selected.
- Enter up to 150 single-byte characters per text.

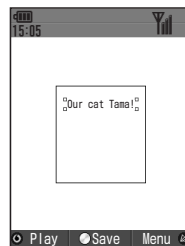
Tip When multiple text or stamps are entered, move four squares with **Text** to select an item to edit.



2 Change text position

Move text to target location with and press .

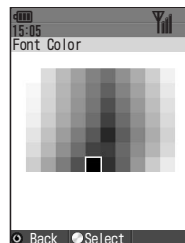
- To adjust the shift amount, press **Menu** Select **X Range Setting** Press Enter a value (01 - 20) Press
 - Change in shift amount for text affects the shift amount for stamps, and vice versa.
- To clear text, press **Menu** Select **2 Delete** Press
 - Choose **1 Yes** Press



3 Change color

Press **Menu**, select **4 Font Color** and press .

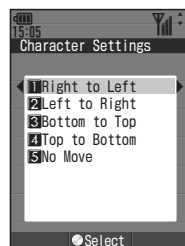
- Select a color with and press .



4 Select action

Press **Menu**, select **5 Character Settings** and press .

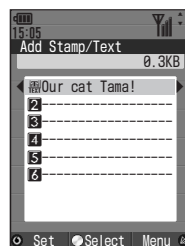
- Select a direction to scroll text and press .



5 Save the text

Press to save settings.

- Add additional text or stamps as needed.
 - To change the order of saved items, select one Press **Menu** Select **3 Move** Press Select target location with Press
 - To edit saved text, select one Press **Menu** Select **4 Change** Press Edit text Press twice



Entering Stamps

1 Select source

Select **1 Preset Patterns** or **2 Data Folder** (stamps obtained via Web or Super Mail) and press .

- For **2 Data Folder**, handset Data Folder (Animation) opens.

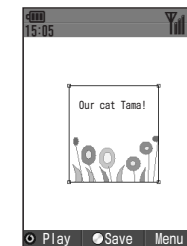
2 Select a stamp

Select a stamp and press .

- Stamp appears in the center.
- Four squares () indicate the stamp is selected.



When multiple text or stamps are entered, move four squares with to select an item to edit.



3 Enlarge or reduce stamps

Select from the following keys and press .

- Four squares () appear in red when enlarging/reducing.

Enlarge/Reduce	3 DEF 0	Enlarge the entire stamp
	7 FQRS 0	Reduce the entire stamp
	2 ABC 7	Enlarge vertically
	6 WNO 12	Enlarge horizontally
	8 UVV 0	Reduce vertically
	4 GHI 2	Reduce horizontally

- Alternatively, press **Menu** and select **Enlarge/Reduce**.

- To flip stamps, select a stamp Press **Menu** Select **7 Flip Upside Down** or **8 Switch Left&Right** Press
- To delete stamp, press **Menu** Select **2 Delete** Press Choose **1 Yes** Press

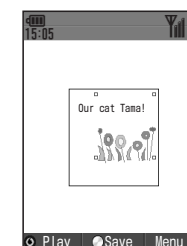


Some stamps do not support all the features.

4 Change the position

Move stamps with and press .

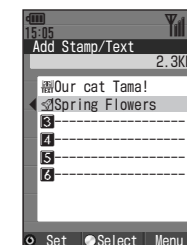
- Adjust the shift amount of four squares (see P.13-16).



5 Save the stamp

Press to save settings.

- To change the order of saved items, select one Press **Menu** Select **3 Move** Press Select target location with Press
- To replace saved stamps, select one Press **Menu** Select **4 Change** Press Select another stamp Press



Creating E-Animation

When memory is full, delete files to free some space (see P.13-47).

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Settings 2** ▶ **Animation** ▶ **Animation Tool**

1 Select **2** E-Animation and press **⏏**

If there is temporarily saved E-Animation (see P.13-19), *Temporary Saved File Edit?* appears. Choose **1** Yes and press **⏏** to complete the animation.

2 Enter title and press **⏏**

• Enter title to proceed (up to 24 single-byte characters).

3 Select a size of animation (Stage Size) and press **⏏**

4 Setting the Background

- 1 Select **1** Data Folder and press **⏏**
- 2 Select an image and press **⏏**
- 3 Press **⏏**

Note Some images cannot be set as backgrounds, or text and stamps may not be entered.

Proceeding without Background

- 1 Select **2** No Background and press **⏏**

5 Select a number and press **⏏**

• Saved items overlap each other in numerical order.

6 Entering Text

- 1 Select **1** Character Entry and press **⏏**
- 2 Enter text

■ Entering Text: see P.13-15

Entering Stamps

- 1 Select **2** Stamps and press **⏏**
- 2 Enter a stamp

■ Entering Stamps: see P.13-16

Tip Depending on type of the entered stamp, the background, text or other stamps may not appear. Resize or move the stamp, or change the order of saved items (see P.13-16).

7 Repeat Steps 5 - 6 to add text or stamps

■ To play animation, press **⏏** **Menu** ▶ Select **1** Play All ▶ Press **⏏**
■ Press **⏏** to stop.

■ To add background image, press **⏏** **Menu** ▶ Select **6** Background Setting ▶ Press **⏏**
▶ Select an image ▶ Press **⏏** twice

■ To add background melody, press **⏏** **Menu** ▶ Select **7** Set BGM ▶ Press **⏏** ▶
Choose **1** On ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Select a melody ▶ Press **⏏**

8 Press **⏏** Set when finished

• To edit animation, select **3** Edit and press **⏏** (see P.13-19 - 13-20).

Tip E-Animation cannot be edited once saved by **1** Save. Select **2** Temporary Save for later editing (only one animation can be temporarily saved).

9 Select **1** Save or **2** Temporary Save and press **⏏**

■ *E-Animation Editable* appears for **2** Temporary Save ▶
Press **⏏** **OK** (Skip the following steps.)

10 Choose **1** Yes and press **⏏**

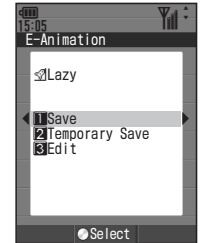
■ To cancel, choose **2** No ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Start over from Step 9

11 Press **⏏**

The animation is saved to Data Folder (Animation).

• Select other folders or SD Memory Card to save animation.

Tip If the same file name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.



Editing Temporarily Saved E-Animation

- When there is no temporarily saved E-Animation, create new one (see P.13-18).
- When memory is full, delete files to free some space (see P.13-47).
- E-Animation cannot be edited once completely saved (by **1** Save).

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Settings 2** ▶ **Animation** ▶ **Animation Tool**

1 Select **2** E-Animation and press **⏏**

Temporary Saved File Edit? appears.

2 Choose **1** Yes and press **⏏**

Tip To create new animation, choose **2** No and press **⏏**. See Step 2 and onward on P.13-18 for more.

- 3 Edit title and press**
 - 4 Set the background and press**
 - 5 Select text or stamp, press** **and edit it**
 - To enter text or stamps, see P.13-15 - 13-17.
 - To change background image, press **Menu** Select **Background Setting** Press Press **Change** Select another image Press twice
 - To add background melody, press **Menu** Select **Set BGM** Press Choose **On** Press Select a melody Press
 - 6 When finished editing, press** **Set**
 - To edit E-Animation, select **Edit** Press Start over from Step 3
 - 7 Select** **1 Save** or **2 Temporary Save** **and press**
 - E-Animation Editable** appears for **2 Temporary Save** Press **OK** (Skip the following steps.)
 - 8 Choose** **1 Yes** **and press**
 - 9 Press**
- The animation is saved to Data Folder (Animation).
- Select other folders or SD Memory Card to save animation.

Tip If the same file name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

Opening Animation Files

Index Menu **My Files** **Data Folder**

- 1 Select a folder and press**
 - To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Menu** Select **Memory Card** Press
- 2 Select animation file and press**

The selected animation plays.

 - Press **Back** to stop.
 - Using Images & Animation: see P.13-21

Using Images & Animation

Some images may not be used.

Changing Display Size

Press to toggle display size between **100% (with indicators)**, **100% (no indicator)**, **Enlarged (with indicators)** and **Enlarged (no indicator)**.

- Size may not be changed or size options may vary depending on the file. When enlarged, the entire image may not appear on Display.
- : 100%, : Enlarged

Show & Hide Indicators

- To toggle indicators on and off from Menu, follow these steps.
 - Press Select **My Files** Press Select **Data Folder** Press Select a folder Press Select a file Press Press **Menu** Select **Show Indicators** or **Hide Indicators** Press
 - **Show Indicators** or **Hide Indicators** can be selected only for compatible files.

Setting Image & Animation as Wallpaper

Save as Wallpaper can be selected only for compatible files.

Index Menu **My Files** **Data Folder** **Open a folder** **Open a file** **Menu**

- 1 Select Save As Wallpaper and press**
 - For more, see Steps **4** - **5** in "Original Images" on P.8-2.
 - Options for Wallpaper Display do not appear for some images, depending on size. In this case, press to complete.

Setting Image & Animation as Display Images

To Display Images can be selected only for compatible files.

Index Menu **My Files** **Data Folder** **Open a folder** **Open a file** **Menu**

- 1 Select To Display Images and press**
- 2 Select an item and press**
 - For more, see Step 4 and onward on P.8-5.

Saving Burst Shot Images

Save all frames and Index Image of a Burst Shot file (連写) as individual images at one time, or select a single image to save.

Individual Burst Shot images are saved to Data Folder (Images) in JPEG format. (Source file remains.)

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ 連写 ▶ Open a Burst Shot file

1 Saving All Images Individually

- 1 Press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Save Single Frames** and press **OK**

Saving a Single Image

- 1 Select a frame or Index Image with **Multi Selector** and press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Save Screen** and press **OK**

Slide Show

All images in Data Folder (Images) or Camera folder appear sequentially. Adjust Slide Show speed. Use Slide Show Wipe; images are gradually replaced with the next image either from top, bottom, left or right.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder

- 1 Select an image and press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Slide Show** and press **OK**
- 3 Select **Slide Show** and press **OK**
 - Slide Show starts from the selected image.
 - To stop Slide Show, press **OK**.
 - To resume, press **OK**.
 - To skip images manually, press **Next**.

Setting Interval

- Interval is **Standard** by default. To change interval, follow these steps.
 - After Step 2 above, select **Display Speed** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select an interval ▶ Press **OK**

Wipe Directions

- Slide Show Wipe is **Off** by default. To set wipe direction, follow these steps.
 - After Step 2 above, select **Slide Show Wipe** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select from
 - Wipe ↓ to Combination ▶ Press **OK**

Editing Images

Open an image file (see Steps 1 - 3 on P.13-6) and follow these steps to open Picture Effect window.

Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Picture Effect** ▶ Press **OK**

Some functions may not be available and menu items may vary by file type.



- Use Multi Selector or Keypad to select a Picture Effect item.
- The editing procedure is described on P.13-23 - 13-30. To save edited images, see below.

Saving Edited Images

- After applying effects, press **OK** or **Menu** to return to Picture Effect window. To save edited image, follow these steps.
 - Press **Save** ▶ Change the title (up to 24 single-byte characters) ▶ Press **OK** twice
 - To cancel, press **Cancel**.
 - To change the save location, press **Save** ▶ Select another folder ▶ Press **OK**
 - To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **OK**

Changing Image Size

Resize images in Data Folder to send via Super Mail or set as Wallpapers.

- Alternatively, crop image for size. File size changes when images are resized.
- Images may not appear depending on the size.
- **Change Size** can be selected only for compatible files.

Resize to Preset Size

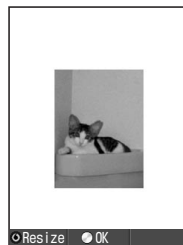
Index Menu

▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect ▶ Change Size

1 Select from **1** Wallpaper to **5** Alarm and press **⏏**

Image appears with a rectangle indicating display size (see below).

Wallpaper	W 240 x H 320 dots
Sha-mail Size	W 120 x H 160 dots
Power On/Off	W 120 x H 130 dots
Incoming Call	W 120 x H 38 dots
Alarm	W 120 x H 51 dots



■ To start over from selecting preset size, press **⏏**.

2 Selecting Display Area

1 Use **⬆** to specify display area

• Display area may not be specified depending on image size.

Enlarge or Reduce

1 Press **⏏** **Resize**

Move appears in the left bottom corner.

2 Press **⏏** to enlarge and **⏏** to reduce the size, and press **⏏**

■ To soften images, press **⏏** **Soft**.

3 Press **⏏**

4 Press **⏏** **Save**

To save the edited image, see P.13-23.

■ To cancel the effect, press **⏏** **Restore**.

Cropping Images

Index Menu

▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect ▶ Change Size ▶ Cut

1 Use **⬆** to move **+** to the upper left corner of the portion to crop and press **⏏**

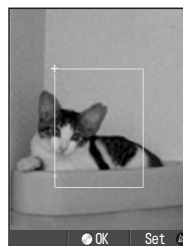
2 Use **⬆** to move **+** to the lower right corner of the portion

■ To start over, press **⏏** **Back** ▶ Return to Step 1

3 Press **⏏** **Set**

■ To select another size, press **⏏**.

■ For more, perform from Step 2 in "Resize to Preset Size" above.



Entering Text

Index Menu

▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect

1 Select **Paste Text** and press **⏏**

• **Paste Text** can be selected only for compatible files.

■ To specify the color, press **⏏** **Color** ▶ Select a combination ▶ Press **⏏**

■ To hide outline of characters, press **⏏** **Color** ▶ Select **Border** ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Choose **Off** ▶ Press **⏏**

2 Select **Free Text** and press **⏏**

■ To enter the date, select **Date** ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Proceed to Step 4

3 Enter text and press **⏏**

• Enter up to 16 single-byte characters.

• Scan Code feature is disabled.

■ To reenter text, press **⏏** **Back** ▶ Start over from Step 2

4 Use **⬆** to move text or date to target location and press **⏏**

To save the edited image, see P.13-23.

■ To cancel the effect, press **⏏** **Restore**.

Adding Marker Stamp

Index Menu

▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect ▶ Marker Stamp

1 Select a marker stamp and press **⏏**

■ To specify the color, press **⏏** **Color** ▶ Select a combination ▶ Press **⏏**

■ To hide outline of marker stamps, press **⏏** **Color** ▶ Select **Border** ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Choose **Off** ▶ Press **⏏**

2 Use **⬆** to move marker stamp to target location and press **⏏**

To save the edited image, see P.13-23.

■ To change the marker stamp, press **⏏** **Back** ▶ Select another ▶ Press **⏏**

■ To cancel the effect, press **⏏** **Restore**.

Visual Effects

Dress up images with pre-loaded visual effects.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images including Burst Shot files.
- Use images between W 52 x H 52 and W 240 x H 320 dots. Images larger than W 240 x H 320 dots are automatically cropped and centered.

Index Menu

▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect

1 Select Effects and press

- **Effects** can be selected only for compatible files.

Tip

Decorations are added to all frames and Index Image when using Burst Shot captured in Sha-mail mode. To decorate a single image, use and display the individual image first.

2 Select an effect and press

- Picture Effects:

Sepia	Renders image in sepia tones
Sparkling	Adds sparkling effect to bright portions of an image
Soap Bubbles	Superimposes bubbles over an image
Kaleidoscope	Renders an image as a kaleidoscopic image
Emboss	Renders images in black and white relief
Scrunch	Renders image as a pencil sketch
Aluminum Can	Superimposes image onto a 3D can image
Round Frame	Adds a round, opaque frosting to the edges of an image
Soft Frame	Adds an soft, opaque edged frame to image
Zigzag Frame	Adds a jagged edged frame around image

3 Press

To save the edited image, see **P.13-23**.

- ▶ To cancel the effect, press **Restore**.

Note

Edited images may be too large to save or send via Super Mail.

Face Arrange

Make smiley, angry or sad faces.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Use portrait images.
- Face Arrange may not fit all images. Adjust position and size as required (see below).
- **Face Arrange** can be selected only for compatible files.

Index Menu

▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect ▶ Face Arrange

1 Select a type and press

Mirror: Right-half	Copies right side of face onto left side	Slender	Stretches face to lengthen appearance
Mirror: Left-half	Copies left side of face onto right side	Crush Face	Shortens distance between top and bottom of face
Grin	Pulls eyes down & mouth up	Dark	Darkens skin tone
Mad	Pulls eyes up & mouth down	Fair	Brightens skin tone
Sad	Pulls eyes & mouth down	Angry Mark	Adds a stress mark to face

- ▶ To check the current positions of targets, press **Parts**.

- Press **Back** to return.

- ▶ To start over, press **Back**.

2 Press

To save the edited image, see **P.13-23**.

- ▶ To cancel the effect, press **Restore**.

Note

When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Adjusting Face Arrange Position

Change the positions and sizes of targets to fit your images. Changes apply to the current image only.

Index Menu

▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect ▶ Face Arrange

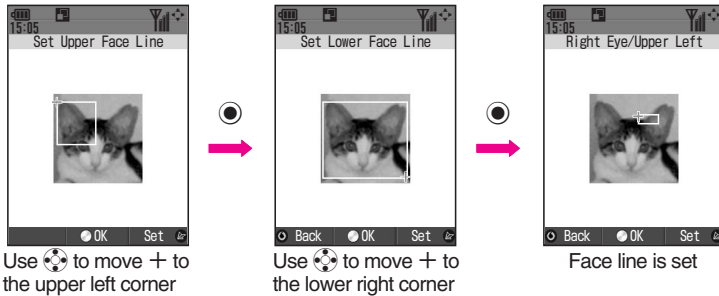
1 Press **Parts**

Face Arrange targets appear.

2 Press **Modify**

A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

3 Set the face line



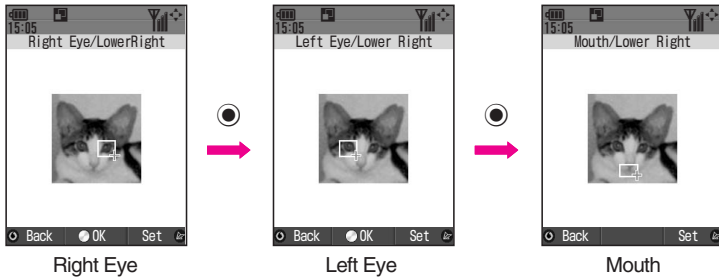
Use **Move** to move + to the upper left corner

Use **Move** to move + to the lower right corner

Face line is set

To start over, press **Back**.

4 Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way



Right Eye

Left Eye

Mouth

5 Press **Set** when finished

After **Arranging Face...**, all the targets appear.

To start over from the face line, return to Step 2.

To restore the original positions, press **Reset**.

6 Press **OK**

7 Choose **Yes** and press **OK**

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted.

• Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

Additional Picture Effects

Frame, **Moving Photo Frame**, **Rotate**, and **Change Format** can be selected only for compatible files.

Frame

Add Frame to JPEG and PNG images

Index Menu

My Files → Data Folder → Open a folder → Open a file → Menu (⌂)
→ Picture Effect → Frame

Select a frame → Press **OK** twice

To check frames, select one → Press **Show**

Press **Back** to return to Frame list.

To save the edited image, see P.13-23.

To cancel the effect, press **Restore**.

Moving Photo Frame

Add Moving Photo Frame to JPEG and PNG images to create animations

Index Menu

My Files → Data Folder → Open a folder → Open a file → Menu (⌂)
→ Picture Effect → Moving Photo Frame

Select a frame → Press **OK** twice

To view file animation alone, select one → Press **Play**

Press **Back** to return to Moving Photo Frame list.

To save the edited image, see P.13-23.

To cancel the effect, press **Restore**.

• Animations are saved as **E-Animation** files with a .nva extension.

Note

Images with Moving Photo Frame open only on packet-enabled Vodafone handsets manufactured by Sharp. With Long Mail compatible Sharp handsets (J-SH04 or later), images may not appear properly.

Tip

Moving Photo Frames are available in two sizes: W 120 x H 130 dots and W 240 x H 260 dots. The size is automatically selected to fit original images.

■ **Original: W 120 x H 130 dots or smaller**

Moving Photo Frames: W 120 x H 130 dots

■ **Original: Larger than W 120 x H 130 dots**

Moving Photo Frames: W 240 x H 260 dots

■ **Original: Larger than W 240 x H 260 dots**

Moving Photo Frames (W 240 x H 260 dots) appear centered.

Frames cannot be added to some images. Resize or crop images to fit frame (see P.13-24).

Rotate

Rotate images

Index Menu

▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect ▶ Rotate

Select a type ▶ Press (⌂)* ▶ Press (⌂)

*To rotate further, press (⌂) **Rotate**. Each press rotates image by 90 degrees.

■ To save the edited image, see P.13-23.

■ To cancel the effect, press (⌂) **Restore**.

File Format & Size

Convert image format to JPEG (📷) or PNG (📷), and change file size

Index Menu

▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect ▶ Change Format

Format

Select (1) **Format** ▶ Press (⌂) ▶ Select a format ▶ Press (⌂) ▶ Press

(⌂) **Set**

■ To save the edited image, see P.13-23.

Size

Select (2) **Size** ▶ Press (⌂) ▶ Select a size ▶ Press (⌂) ▶ Press (⌂) **Set**

■ To save the edited image, see P.13-23.

Note

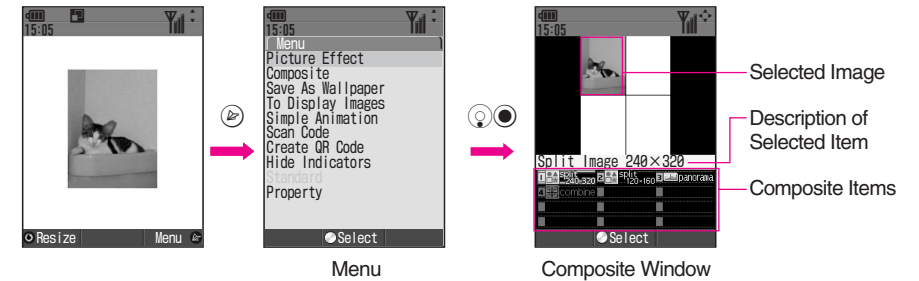
Changing file format or size may affect image quality.

Combining Images

Open an image file (see Steps 1 - 3 on P.13-6) and follow these steps to open Composite window.

Press (⌂) **Menu** ▶ Select **Composite** ▶ Press (⌂)

Some images cannot be combined and menu items may vary by file type.



Split Screen

Combine up to four reduced images into one.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images including Burst Shot images.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Images are placed in the upper left, upper right, lower left and lower right in numerical order.



Split Image

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder

- 1 Select an image for upper left and press (⌂)
- 2 Press (⌂) **Menu**
- 3 Select **Composite** and press (⌂)
- 4 Select **split 240 x 320** or **split 120 x 160** and press (⌂)
- 5 Select a number for the next image and press (⌂)
Handset Data Folder (Images) opens.

6 Select an image and press **Enter**

- Some images may not be selected.
- To change image, press **Change**.
- To start over from selecting a number, press **Back**.

7 Press **Enter**

8 Repeat Steps 5 - 7 to add images

- To change images, select one → Press **Menu** → Select **Change** → Press **Enter** → Start over from Step 6
- To delete images, select one → Press **Menu** → Select **Delete** → Press **Enter** → Choose **Yes** → Press **Enter**



9 Press **Set** when finished

- The current date and time appear as a title.
- To cancel, press **Cancel**.

10 Enter title and press **Enter**

- To proceed without changing the title, press **Enter**.
- To change the save location, press **Folder** → Select another folder → Press **Enter**
- To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **Enter**

11 Press **Enter**

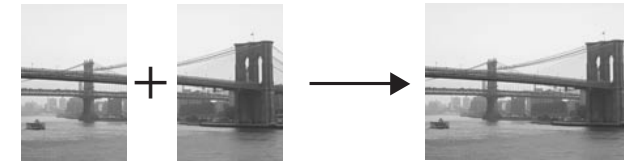
Image is saved as a new entry.

Using a Single Image of Burst Shot File

- In Step 6, press **Enter** (when files are listed by name) or **Folder** and follow these steps.
 - Select **連写** folder → Press **Enter** → Select a Burst Shot file → Press **Enter** → Use **Enter** to select an image → Press **Enter** → Proceed to Step 8
 - 1/4 - 4/4, etc. is added to the file name.
- Index Image can be used (⊞ is added to the file name).

Panorama Images

Combine two images into one.



Select two images

Merge Panorama

Panorama Image Effects:

Standard	Applicable to all kinds of shots
Near View	Best suited for close-up shots with parallax correction
Document	Use for images with text

- Use JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 and W 120 x H 160 dots/W 160 x H 120 dots.
- Some portions may be cropped to adjust two images to the same size.
- The result may not be satisfactory if color tones are different between two images.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder

1 Select an image and press **Enter**

2 Press **Menu**

3 Select **Composite** and press **Enter**

4 Select **Merge Panorama** and press **Enter**

- The first selected image appears on the left when combined.
- **Merge Panorama** can be selected only for compatible files.

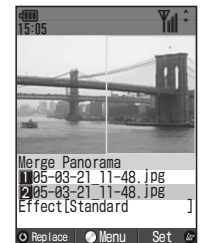
5 Select **2**----- and press **Enter**

Handset Data Folder (Images) opens.

6 Select another image and press **Enter**

7 Press **Enter**

- The selected image appears on the right. Two images are set.
- If the image is too large or too small, select another.
- To check image, select either → Press **Enter** → Select **Show Image** → Press **Enter**
 - To return, press **Back** → Press **Enter**
- To change images, select either → Press **Enter** → Select **Change** → Press **Enter** → Select an image → Press **Enter** twice
- To switch the positions, press **Replace**.



Chaku-Uta






Chaku-Uta is a trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

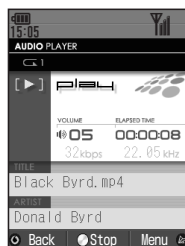
Playback

Play Chaku-Uta in Data Folder (Audio).

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Audio






1 Select a file and press

- To set as Ring Tone, see **P.13-37**.
- To stop playback, press  (toggle between **Stop** and **Play**).
- To adjust volume, press  (up) or  (down).
- To skip, press  (previous) or  (next).
- Playback Settings: see **P.13-37**



Note If sound is distorted, reduce volume level.

Playback Operations

Replay	Press  Press repeatedly to play previous music.
Skip	Press  ¹ Press repeatedly to skip more.
Fast Forward	Press and hold  Release for playback.
Fast Reverse	Press and hold  Release for playback.
Pause	Press  ² Press again to resume playback.


¹Incompatible files are skipped.

²While playback is paused, Fast Forward, Fast Reverse and Skip are not available.

Playback Settings

Play Setting Set playback method

■ Set Repeat 1 while track information appears.
Default Repeat 1

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Audio ▶ Select a file ▶ Menu  ▶ Play Setting

Select a mode ▶ Press 

Using as Ring Tone

Incoming Tone Set Chaku-Uta in Data Folder (Audio) as Ring Tone

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Audio

Select a Chaku-Uta file ▶ Press  **Menu** ▶ Select Incoming Tone
▶ Press  ▶ Select an item ▶ Press 

vFiles

vFile Basics

About vFiles

vFile is a generic term for the file format by which Phone Book and Schedule entries, etc. are made transferable between V603SH and other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices. Using vFiles, use Phone Book or Schedule entries, etc. created on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices on V603SH, or manage V603SH Phone Book entries on a PC. vFile-compatible functions and vFile formats:

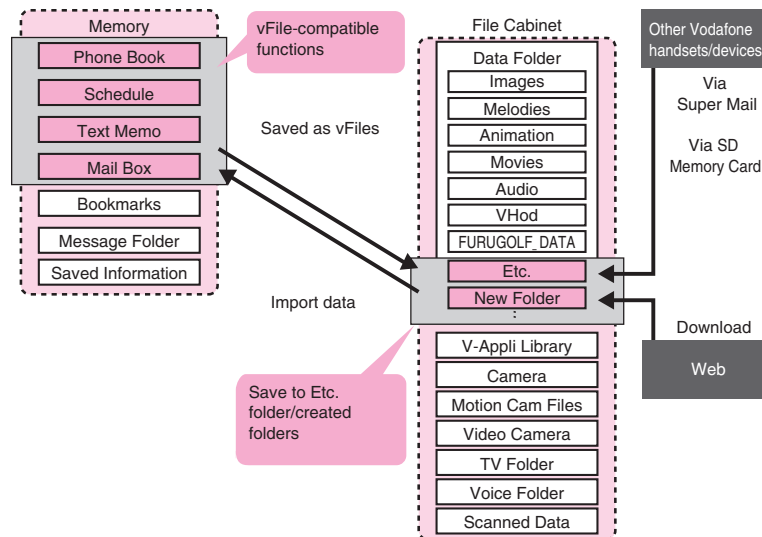
Function	Icon	Format	Function	Icon	Format
Phone Book (Owner Profile)	☎ (.vcf)	vCard	Text Memo ¹	📄 (.vnt)	vNote, Text
			Mail message	✉ (.vmg)	vMessage
Schedule	📅 (.vcs)	vCalendar	Bookmark ²	📌 (.vbm)	vBookmark

¹ 📄 (.txt): Memo format

² Some files may have a **.url** extension.

File Organization

V603SH Phone Book and Schedule entries, etc. are automatically converted to vFiles when saved to Data Folder (except for Bookmarks). Exchange vFiles with other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices via Super Mail, Web or SD Memory Card.



Using Super Mail

Sending via Super Mail

- 1 Create vFiles (see P.13-40)
- 2 Select files from Data Folder and send as Super Mail attachments (see ☑ P.3-9)
 - Send to Mail-compatible Vodafone handsets.

vFiles Obtained via Super Mail or Web

- 1 Save vFiles to Data Folder (see ☑ P.4-28)
- 2 Import vFile data (see P.13-41)

Using SD Memory Card

Use SD Memory Card to exchange vFiles with other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices.

Exchanging vFiles with Vodafone Handsets

- Exchange vNote Text Memo via infrared with compatible Vodafone handsets (see P.14-3).

Exchanging vFiles with Other Devices

- Install vFile-compatible software. Some files may not be used on Vodafone handsets or other devices.
- Some PCs or memory card drives may not read SD Memory Card formatted on V603SH.
- V603SH may not read SD Memory Card formatted on other devices.

Note

Bookmarks on SD Memory Card can only be used on your handsets. Some vFiles on SD Memory Card may not be used on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices.

Creating vFiles

V603SH Phone Book and Schedule entries, etc. are automatically converted to vFiles when saved to Data Folder.

1 Phone Book

1 Open a Phone Book entry (see P.5-14)

- Open Owner Profile to convert your profile (see P.2-22).

2 Press ●

Note

When a Phone Book entry is saved to Data Folder, Personal Ring Tone, Incoming Notice and Mail Folder settings are lost. Images set for Picture Call/Mail may be deleted depending on size.

Schedule

1 Open Schedule (see P.16-19)

2 Select an entry and press ⌂ Menu

Text Memo

1 Open Text Memo (see P.4-18)

2 Select a memo and press ⌂ Menu

Mail Message

1 Open Inbox, Sent or Outbox (see Steps 1 - 2 on P.4-2)

2 Select a message and press ⌂ Menu

- Sky Melody message cannot be converted to vFile.

2 Select To Data Folder and press ●

3 Enter title and press ●

Handset Data Folder (Etc.) opens.

- Data can be saved to other folders.

To save to SD Memory Card Data Folder, press ⌂ Menu → Select **Memory Card** → Press ● → See Step 4 and onward on P.13-48

4 Press ●

Importing vFiles

Save received vFiles to Data Folder (see P.4-28) before importing to Phone Book, Schedule, etc.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder

1 Select a vFile and press ⌂ Menu

2 Phone Book

1 Select Add to Phone Book and press ●

2 Assign a Memory No. and save the entry (see P.5-5)

Schedule

1 Select Save to Schedule and press ●

2 Choose 1 Yes and press ●

Text Memo

1 Select Save to Text Memo and press ●

2 Choose 1 Yes and press ●

Mail Message

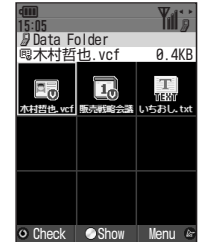
1 Select Save to Mail Box and press ●

- Messages are sorted into Inbox, Sent or Outbox.

Bookmarks

1 Select Save to Bookmarks and press ●

2 Select 1 Handset or 2 Memory Card and press ●



SVG Files

V603SH supports SVG-T (Scalable Vector Graphics-Tiny). View graphics in SVG files, including tables and maps.

- For more information on SVG-T, visit <http://www.sharp.co.jp/j/> (Japanese only).
- Open a SVG file and press ● Guide to see key assignments.

Scroll Up/Down & Left/Right	⌂
Scroll Pages	[2 ABC 7] (Up), [4 GHI 2] (Left), [6 MNO 13] (Right), [8 TUV 9] (Down)
Enlarge & Reduce	[3 DEF 8] (Enlarge), [## 1234] (Enlarge Slightly), [1 0 0] (Reduce), [* 9 0] (Reduce Slightly), [0 7 8 9] (100%), [5 JKL 6] (Key Action)

E-Books

Read a variety of E-Books (XPDF or Text format) on SD Memory Card.

Use handset as a dictionary by saving E-Book dictionaries.

- For details, access Sharp's **Space Town** Mobile Internet site (see P.8-12).
- Handset may not support sounds or images embedded in E-Books.
- For precautions on SD Memory Card, see P.12-2.

Reading Content

E-Books cannot be opened while Music Player is active or a V-Application is paused.

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card*

1 Select E-Book and press

E-Book list appears.

- When you press to close Reading window, the same page will open next time.
- To read E-Books saved in other folders, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Change Folder** ▶ Press ▶ Select a folder ▶ Press (The selected folder will open next time.)

2 Select an E-Book and press

- ○% indicates location of the current page.
- To see the title, author, etc., press **Menu** ▶ Select **Property** ▶ Press
- If the E-Book is password protected, enter password ▶ Press ▶ Reading window opens

3 Press or to close

- Press to return to E-Book list.
- Alternatively, when **List** is on Display, press **List** to return to E-Book list.
- When you press to close Reading window, the same page will open next time.

Tip Save E-Book to User Shortcut (see P.16-23).

Key Assignments

■ Operations vary by writing style as follows:

	Lateral	Vertical
	Scroll up (by line)	Backward (by page)
	Scroll down (by line)	Forward (by page)
	Backward (by page)	Scroll left (by line)
	Forward (by page)	Scroll right (by line)

Text Operations

- Jump to the first or last page.
In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Home or End** ▶ Press
- Move to a specific location.
In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **% Shift** ▶ Press ▶ Enter location by percentage (00 - 99) ▶ Press
- Select chapter when a table of contents is contained.
In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Contents** ▶ Press ▶ Select a chapter ▶ Press
- See P.13-44 to use Bookmarks.
- Reading window settings:
In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Display Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Select an item ▶ Press ▶ Change the setting ▶ Press

Item	Description	Default
Font Size	Select <i>Tiny, Small, Standard, Standard Plus</i> or <i>Large</i>	Standard
Text Direction	Read text vertically or horizontally	Vertical Text
Ruby	Show ruby annotations	Off

- Above settings are not available for some E-Books.

Using Linked Info/Copying Text

- Use numbers, addresses or URLs to place calls, send Sky/Super Mail or access Mobile Internet sites.
Select an item ▶ Press ▶ Select **OK** ▶ Press
- Linked information cannot be used while other operations are paused (see P.1-29 "Hot Switching").
- Some linked information may not be used.
- Copy text (up to 20 double or single-byte characters).
In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Copy** ▶ Press ▶ See Step 3 and onward in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on P.4-16 for more

Mask & Jump

- Some E-Books may contain hidden text or images (masked info) or links (jump links).
 - Select a part with masked info and press to show the text or image. Press again to hide.
 - Select a part with jump link and press to jump to the specified page. Press **Back** to return to the original location.

Bookmark

Add bookmarks to return to the pages easily.
Use two bookmarks per E-Book (for up to five E-Books).

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *E-Book* ▶ *Open E-Book*

- 1 Press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Bookmark** and press
- 3 Select **1 Bookmark 1** or **2 Bookmark 2** and press
Bookmark is added.

Auto Bookmark

- When you close Reading window, Auto Bookmark 1 is added to the last page you opened.
The next time you close the same E-Book, Auto Bookmark 1 is replaced with Auto Bookmark 2, and added to the new last page.
 - Up to two Auto Bookmarks can be stored per E-Book, and will be deleted older first when another is added.

Opening Bookmarked Page

- In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Move to Bookmark** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Bookmark 1, Bookmark 2, Auto Bookmark 1 or Auto Bookmark 2** ▶ Press

Using E-Book Images

Save as Wallpaper Save images as Wallpaper

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *E-Book* ▶ *Open E-Book* ▶ *Select an image*

Select **Save as Wallpaper** ▶ Press

- For more, see Step **21** and onward in "Original Images" on **P.8-2**.
- To cancel, press .
- Some images may not be used.

Embedded Information

Use information contained in images

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *E-Book* ▶ *Open E-Book* ▶ *Select an image*

Select **Jump to Link, Toggle Mask or Play Animation** ▶ Press

Jump to Link	Select jump information to move to other pages. Use linked information to send Sky/Super Mail or access Mobile Internet sites (E-Book will close). See P.13-43 "Using Linked Info/Copying Text."
Toggle Mask	Hidden text or images appear
Play Animation	Flip animation plays

- To cancel, press .

Using a Dictionary

Look Up Word

Use downloaded E-Book dictionaries to look up word definitions, etc.

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *E-Book* ▶ *Open an E-Book dictionary*

Select an entry field ▶ Press ▶ Enter word ▶ Press

- Select an entry and press to view its definitions.
- Key Assignments: see **P.13-43**.

Property

Check details of E-Books

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *E-Book*

Select an E-Book ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Property** ▶ Press

- Press to scroll down and to scroll up.
- Press **Back** to return to E-Book list.

Editing Files & Folders

Adding Folders

Created folders support all the file formats just as Etc. folder does (see P.13-3).

- Create folders in the first and second layers (see P.13-8).
- Add folders to the default folders (Images, Melodies, Animation, Movies, Audio and Etc.) as well as to created new folders. (Folders in a layer cannot have the same name.)

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Press** **Menu**
 - To add to existing folders, select a folder, press and then press **Menu**.
- 2 Select New Folder and press**
- 3 Enter name and press**
 - To add more, repeat Steps 1 - 3.

Changing File/Folder Name

- The default folders cannot be renamed.
- File extensions do not change.
- The same file/folder name cannot be entered within a layer.
- Disable protection before renaming folders (see P.13-47).

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a file or folder and press** **Menu**
- 2 Select Change Name and press**
 - When the file is used for Incoming Tone, Sound Effects or Group Ring Tone, choose **Yes** ▶ Press
- 3 Change the name and press**
 - Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ,, <, >, /, ?, *, " and Pictographs are not supported.

Deleting Files & Folders

- When a folder is deleted, all items in the folder are also deleted.
- Default folders cannot be deleted.
- Disable protection before deleting folders (see below).

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a file or folder and press** **Menu**
 - Selecting Multiple Files: see below
- 2 Select Delete and press**
- 3 Choose Yes and press**

VHod & FURUGOLF_DATA Folder

- **VHod** and **FURUGOLF_DATA** folders are exclusively for V-Applications **HOD体験版** (The House Of The Dead MOBILE) and **振るスイング! ゴルフ** respectively. The operations may be affected if either folder or contained files are renamed or deleted.

Selecting Multiple Files

- To select multiple files in Data Folder, repeat the following steps.
 - Select a file** ▶ Press **Check**
 - To uncheck, press **Check** for files with (check up to 50 files).
 - Files in use for V-Application cannot be checked.
- To reset all checkmarks, press **Menu** ▶ **Select Reset Check(s)** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Protecting Folders

Restrict access to folders in Data Folder. Security Code must be entered to use them.

- Protect up to 10 folders.
- Protect the default folders (Images, Melodies, Animation, Movies, Audio and Etc.) as well as created folders.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press** **Menu**
- 2 Select Handy Functions and press**
- 3 Select Protect Folders and press**

4 Enter Security Code

5 Choose **On** and press **Enter**

To cancel, choose **Off** → Press **Enter**

Note

- The following folders cannot be protected.
 - Folders on SD Memory Card
 - Data Folder (Camera) and shortcut folders inside it
- Protection is canceled when all data is transferred at once from SD Memory Card to handset.
- V-Applications may not be downloaded properly if related folders are protected.

Copying/Moving Files

Copy or move files to other folders in Data Folder.

- Copy/forward protected files cannot be copied.
- The default folders support corresponding file formats (see P.13-3).
- Some files may not be copied or moved.
- Burst Shot files cannot be copied or moved.

Index Menu ▶ *My Files* ▶ *Data Folder* ▶ *Open a folder*

1 Select a file and press **Menu**

Selecting Multiple Files: see P.13-47

2 Select **Copy** or **Move** and press **Enter**

3 Select **Handset** and press **Enter**

To copy or move to SD Memory Card, select **Memory Card** → Press **Enter**

When moving a file used for Incoming Tone, Sound Effects or Group Ring Tone, **Execute and Cancel Tone Setting?** appears.

- To cancel moving, choose **No** → Press **Enter**
- To cancel the settings and move, choose **Yes** → Press **Enter**

4 Select a destination folder and press **Enter**

5 Press **Enter**

Note

- Files cannot be copied or moved to SD Memory Card which is write protected.
- Files copied or moved to SD Memory Card may not be used on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices.

Tip

If the same file name already exists, ~**XX** (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.



Infrared

Getting Started

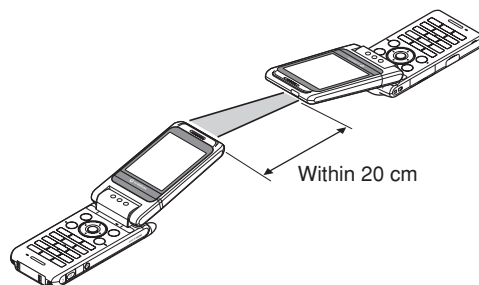
Exchange information and files with infrared compatible Vodafone handsets and other devices. Select from the following transfer options:

Send One File	Send files/entries one by one
Receive One File	Receive one file/entry from other handsets. Received files/entries are sorted into corresponding folders.
Send Folder	Send the entire Data Folder or a selected folder and its contents
Receive Folder	Receive the entire Data Folder or a selected folder and its contents from other handsets
Send All Files	Send all files/entries by function
Receive All Files	Receive all files/entries in a function of other handsets

- Infrared transfers are disabled while handset is connected to the Network (receiving/sending mail or information) or while using Vodafone live! services.
- V603SH complies with IrMC 1.1, but some files may not be exchanged.
- During infrared transfers, handset automatically enters Off-Line Mode (see **P.3-6**). Thus transfers are disabled while receiving calls/messages, during calls, while using Vodafone live! services, Music Player or Synchronize, while editing mail or data, etc. Off-Line Mode is canceled after transfers.

Precautions

- Bring handsets to within 20 cm and place the ports face-to-face. Do not place objects between handsets.
- Keep the ports face-to-face during transfer.
- Transfers may fail under direct sunlight or fluorescent lights, or near infrared equipment.
- Clean the ports with a soft cloth. Dirty ports may not transfer files properly.



Tip When transfer fails, **Remote Device Not Found Reconnect?** appears. Take the above precautions and try again. (Choose **Yes** and press **OK**.)

Available Files

Function	One File	All Files	Note
Phone Book	Available	Available	In One File transfers, the following settings are lost: Group, Secret, Personal Ring Tone, Incoming Notice and Mail Folder. All File transfer includes Owner Profile (except handset phone number).
Schedule	Available	Available	In One File transfers, Secret Mode settings are lost
Text Memo	Available	Available	Note format only
Mail	Available	Available	
Data Folder*	Available	Available	In All File transfers, transfer the entire Data Folder or a selected folder. Copy protected files cannot be transferred.
Camera Mode Images	Available	N/A	Transfer a DCF format file of up to 900 KB

*Received Chaku-Uta files (.mp4) or Nancy files (.noa) are saved to Etc. folder as unknown files. Receive Bookmarks from compatible devices.

Note

- Captured TV screenshots or recorded TV/FM programs are not transferable via Infrared.
- Files on SD Memory Card cannot be sent all at once. Phone Book, Schedule and Text Memo entries cannot be sent one by one.
- Files over 100 KB cannot be transferred (except Camera mode images).

IR Password

IR Password is specific for infrared transfers. Transfers are possible when passwords of both handsets match.

The password specified when receiving an infrared transfer for the first time remains valid. Use the procedure described below to change IR Password.

Index Menu ► Briefcase ► Infrared ► Set IR Password

1 Enter Security Code

2 Enter IR Password

Password is set and Infrared menu returns.

Tip

If IR Password is set by this procedure beforehand, password entry is not requested when receiving an infrared transfer for the first time.

Transferring Files

One File Transfer

Sending

Send one file or entry from Phone Book, Schedule, Text Memo, Mail or Data Folder.

1 Open file list and highlight a file

- Alternatively, for Phone Book, Schedule, or Text Memo, open an entry.

2 Press **Menu**

- For files in Data Folder, select **Infrared** → Press

3 Select **File (Single)** for files in Data Folder or **Send via Infrared** for other files and press

Off-Line Mode is set and title entry window opens.

- When handset fails to enter Off-Line Mode, file list returns.

4 Edit title and press

- Source file or entry name remains unchanged. To proceed without changing the title, press .
- Camera mode files cannot be renamed.

5 Prepare recipient handset

6 Within 15 seconds, choose **1 Yes** and press

Transfer starts. When finished, file or entry list returns.



Phone Book Entry List

Receiving

Index Menu ► **Briefcase** ► **Infrared** ► **Acquire**

1 Enter Security Code

Standing by... appears and handset receives files if sent within 30 seconds. (A confirmation appears.)

- Press to cancel.
- Press to end.



Infrared Password

- **IR Password?** appears when receiving an infrared transfer for the first time. Enter a 4-digit password to start receiving.
- The entered password remains valid. See P.14-3 to change the password.
- If incorrect, Infrared menu returns.

2 Choose **1 Yes** and press

File is saved and Infrared menu returns.

- To cancel transfer, choose **2 No** → Press → Choose **1 Yes** → Press

All File Transfer

- Security Code and IR Password are required to transfer all files.
 - Security Code: see P.1-34
 - IR Password is required for infrared transfers. Transfers are possible when the passwords of both handsets match. To set recipient handset password before transfer, see P.14-3.
- To transfer all files in Data Folder, see P.14-6.

Sending

Index Menu ► **Briefcase** ► **Infrared**

1 Select **1 Transfer All** and press

Off-Line Mode is set.

- When handset fails to enter Off-Line Mode, Infrared menu returns.

2 Enter Security Code

3 Select an item and press

4 Prepare recipient handset

5 Enter IR Password

- For Phone Book, choose **1 Yes** or **2 No** → Press

6 Within 15 seconds, choose **1 Yes** and press

Transfer starts. When finished, Transfer All menu returns.

- If IR Password is incorrect, Transfer All menu returns.

Receiving

Index Menu ► **Briefcase** ► **Infrared** ► **Acquire**

1 Enter Security Code

Standing by... appears and handset receives files if sent within 30 seconds. (A confirmation appears.)

- Press to cancel.
- Press to end.
- When **IR Password?** appears, see P.14-4 "Infrared Password."

2 To Add Entries

1 Select 1 New Item and press

Receiving... appears. When finished, Infrared menu returns.

To Overwrite Existing Entries

1 Select 2 Delete All & Save and press

2 Choose 1 Yes and press

Transfer starts. When finished, Infrared menu returns.







When Phone Book is overwritten, all Owner Profile contents are deleted, except handset phone number.




Folders

Sending

Index Menu ► *My Files* ► *Data Folder*

- 1 Select a folder and press**  **Menu**
 - When sending the entire Data Folder, select any folder. Then press  **Menu** and proceed to Step 2.
- 2 Select *Infrared* and press** 
- 3 Select *Folder (All)* or *Data Folder (All)* and press** 

Off-Line Mode is set.

 - When handset fails to enter Off-Line Mode, Data Folder window returns.
 - When sending the entire Data Folder, skip ahead to Step 5.
- 4 Edit title and press** 
- 5 Prepare recipient handset**
- 6 Within 15 seconds, choose**  **Yes** and press 

Transfer starts. When finished, Data Folder window returns.

Receiving





Index Menu ► *Briefcase* ► *Infrared* ► *Acquire*

- 1 Enter Security Code**

Standing by... appears and handset receives files if sent within 30 seconds. When finished, Infrared menu returns.

Tip

If a folder with the same name already exists, **Add to Handset Data Folder?** appears.

- Choose  **Yes** and press . Contents are added to the folder.
- Choose  **No** and press  to end transmission. Infrared menu returns.



Handset Security

Changing Security Code

Whenever necessary, change Security Code.
Center Access Code cannot be changed from handset.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Change Code*

- 1 Enter current Security Code**
 Security Code: see P.1-34
 If incorrect, Standby returns.
- 2 Enter new Security Code**
- 3 Re-enter Security Code**
 If incorrect, Standby returns.

Handset Locks

Keypad Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Keypad Lock*

- 1 Enter Security Code**
 ☞ appears and Keypad Lock is set.

When Keypad Lock is Active

- In Standby, press ☞ for 1+ seconds to deactivate handset power, ⏻ for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Key Guard, 0*62 - 9*99 to enter Security Code or ☞ to edit Security Code entry. Emergency calls to Police (110), Fire (119) and Coast Guard (118) are possible.
- During a call, press ☞ to end the call, ☎ to answer another call or switch between callers in Call Waiting, 0*62 - 9*99 to enter Security Code or ☞ to edit Security Code entry.
- Answer calls by pressing ☎ or keys for Anykey Answer (see P.2-6). Press ⏻☞ to forward incoming calls or press ☞ to place callers on hold. Alternatively, press ⏻ **Menu** and select **1 Accept Call**, **2 Hold**, **3 Reject Call** or **☞ Message Recorder**.

Cancel

- 1 Enter Security Code**
 ☞ disappears and Keypad Lock is canceled.
 - Keypad Lock can be canceled during calls.
 - Keypad Lock remains active even if handset power is deactivated, then reactivated.

Auto Key Lock

Use Auto Key Lock to activate Keypad Lock each time handset power is turned on.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Auto Key Lock*

- 1 Enter Security Code**
- 2 Choose **☞ On** and press ⏻**
 • Keypad Lock activates from the next time handset power is turned on.

Cancel

Cancel Keypad Lock (see P.15-2) first and follow these steps.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Auto Key Lock*

- 1 Enter Security Code**
- 2 Choose **☞ Off** and press ⏻**

Phone Book Lock

Protect Phone Book entries from accidental alteration and restrict access to Phone Book information.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Phone Book Lock*

- 1 Enter Security Code**
- 2 Choose **☞ On** and press ⏻**
 • To cancel Phone Book Lock, choose **☞ Off** ▶ Press ⏻



When Phone Book Lock is active, the following Phone Book operations are disabled:

- Searching, saving, editing and dialing, including Speed Dial (see P.5-16)
- Creating Barcodes from Phone Book entries or Owner Profile (see P.16-34)

Restrict Dial

Disable Keypad dialing.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Restrict Dial*

- 1 Enter Security Code**
- 2 Choose **☞ On** and press ⏻**
 • To cancel Restrict Dial, choose **☞ Off** ▶ Press ⏻

When Restrict Dial is Active

- Emergency calls to Police (110), Fire (119) and Coast Guard (118) are possible.

Accept Call & Reject Call

Designate numbers from which to accept or reject calls.

Accept Call	Accept calls from designated numbers only. Calls from other numbers are rejected and caller hears a busy tone.
Reject Call	Reject calls from designated numbers. Caller hears a busy tone.

- For rejected calls, **Missed Calls** appears in Information Menu (see P.2-18) and **Reject** appears in Call History.
- Accept Call and Reject Call operate only when Caller ID is sent.
- To reject calls with No Caller ID or Payphone calls, see P.15-5.
- Accept Call and Reject Call cannot be set at the same time.

Saving Entries

Save up to 10 entries each. Save at least one entry before activating Accept Call or Reject Call.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy*

1 Accept Call

- 1 Select **5** **Accept Call** and press ●
- 2 Enter Security Code

Reject Call

- 1 Select **6** **Reject Call** and press ●
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 Select **1** **Specify Number** and press ●

2 Select **3** **Save to List** and press ●

Names or phone numbers appear if saved.

■ To delete list entries, select a number ▶ Press **Ⓡ** **Remove** ▶ Choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press ●

3 Select a number and press ●

- Select ----- for new entry.

4 Enter a phone number

■ To select from Phone Book, press **Ⓢ** (**TEL**) ▶ Search Phone Book (See P.5-14 - 5-15.)

5 Press ●

Name appears if selected from Phone Book. Number appears if entered directly. (Name does not appear even if saved in Phone Book.)

- Repeat Steps 3 - 5 to save other numbers.

Accept Call

- At least one entry is required to set Accept Call (see P.15-4).
- Cancel Reject Call before activating Accept Call.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Accept Call*

1 Enter Security Code

2 Choose **1** **On** and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **2** **Off** ▶ Press ●

Reject Call

- At least one entry is required to set Reject Call (see P.15-4).
- Cancel Accept Call before activating Reject Call.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Reject Call*

1 Enter Security Code

2 Select **1** **Specify Number** and press ●

3 Choose **1** **On** and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **2** **Off** ▶ Press ●

Rejecting Other Calls

Reject calls with No Caller ID or Payphone calls. Handset does not ring and caller hears a rejection message.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Reject Call*

1 Enter Security Code

2 Select **2** **No ID** or **3** **Payphone** and press ●

3 Choose **1** **On** and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **2** **Off** ▶ Press ●

Secret Mode

Saving Secret Mode Entries

Use Secret Mode to restrict access to Phone Book entries.

- Activate Secret Mode (see P.15-7) to open Secret Mode entries.
- To create a new Phone Book entry, see P.5-3.

Index Menu ▶ *Tel Ops* ▶ *Entry Search*

- 1 Open a Phone Book entry (see P.5-14)
- 2 Press **⓪**
- 3 Select *Edit* and press **⓪**
- 4 Select **☎** and press **⓪**
- 5 Choose **1 On** and press **⓪**
On appears next to **☎**.
- 6 Press **⓪** **Save** and enter Memory No.

Change Secret to Standard

- Press **⓪** ▶ Select *Functions* ▶ Press **⓪** ▶ Select **2 Privacy** ▶ Press **⓪** ▶ Select **2 Secret Mode** ▶ Press **⓪** ▶ Enter Security Code ▶ Open Secret Mode entry (see below) ▶ Press **⓪** ▶ Select *Edit* ▶ Press **⓪** ▶ Select **☎** ▶ Press **⓪** ▶ Choose **2 Off** ▶ Press **⓪** ▶ Press **⓪** **Save** ▶ Perform Step 2 on P.5-5

Note Do not save confidential information in Phone Book. Security Code and thus Secret Mode entries may be compromised.

Opening Secret Mode Entries

Activate Secret Mode (see P.15-7) and open a Phone Book entry. Press **⓪** to dial the number.

- **⓪** stays lit for standard entries and flashes for Secret Mode entries.
- To edit or delete Secret Mode entries, see procedures for standard entries.



Activating Secret Mode

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy*

- 1 Select **2 Secret Mode** and press **⓪**
- 2 Enter Security Code
Secret Mode is set and **⓪** appears.

Note Secret Mode is canceled when handset power is turned off.

Exiting Secret Mode

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy*

- 1 Select **2 Secret Mode** and press **⓪**
⓪ disappears and Secret Mode is canceled.

When Secret Mode is Off

- Phone Book Names/Photo images do not appear for incoming calls/mail from numbers/addresses in Secret Mode entries. Personal Ring Tone and Incoming Notice are disabled. Names for numbers in Secret Mode entries do not appear in Redial or Call History. Names saved in Redial/Call History before an entry is converted to a Secret Mode entry appear even if handset is not in Secret Mode.

Reset

Reset Defaults

Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings.

- Phone Book entries are unaffected.
- For settings affected by Reset, see **P.18-2 - 18-5**.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Reset Defaults*

- 1 Enter Security Code**
- 2 Select **1**OK and press **0****
To cancel, select **2**Cancel ▶ Press **0**

Reset All

Clear all Phone Book entries, Original Tones and other data (including Mail and Web). Custom settings return to their defaults. However, Security Code is unchanged.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Reset All*

- 1 Enter Security Code**
- 2 Select **1**OK and press **0****
To cancel, select **2**Cancel ▶ Press **0**

Note Files removed using Reset All cannot be recovered.



Additional Functions

Handy Call Functions

Signal Alert

When Signal Alert is active, handset emits warning beeps when the signal is weak and the call may be disconnected. Signal Alert is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 1* ► *Signal Alert*

1 Choose **1 On** and press ●

■ To cancel Signal Alert, choose **2 Off** ► Press ●

Note Even when Signal Alert is active, calls may be disconnected without warning.

Push Tones

Use Push Tones to send alphanumeric messages to pagers or operate a home answering machine remotely.

From Phone Book

Use this function to send set messages to pagers.

- Save Push Tones to Phone Book first (see **P.5-3**).
- When saving Push Tones to Phone Book (**3**), do not save other information to that entry.

1 After a connection is established, press ● (TEL) to open Phone Book entry (see **P.5-14 - 5-15**).

2 Press ●

3 Select **Send All Push Tones** and press ●

Tip Enter a comma (Pause) in Push Tones to separate each sequence.

Direct Entry

Press Keypad to send individual Push Tones during calls.

1 After a connection is established, use Keypad to enter numbers

- For more information, see the manual for the specific device/service.
- Use 0 - 9, * and # to send Push Tones.

2 Press ● **Send Tones**

Side Key Settings

With clamshell closed, press a Side Key for 1+ seconds to activate the assigned function while ringing/vibrating or in Standby.

For Incoming Calls

The same function can be assigned to multiple keys.

	(M)	(S)	(◀)	(▶)	(C)
Default	Off	Off	Off	Off	Message Recorder

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 1* ► *SideKey Settings* ► *Incoming Calls*

1 Select from **1 M** to **5 C** and press ●

2 Select a function and press ●

- Available functions (see **P.2-11** for details):
 - Hold
 - Quick Silent
 - Reject Call
 - Message Recorder
 - Forward Voice Mail

For Standby

Press (C) for 1+ seconds to activate Voice Recorder. **Off** is set by default.


Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 1* ► *SideKey Settings* ► *Standby*



1 Select **1 Voice Rec (Accept)** (activate Voice Recorder) or **2 Voice Rec (Reject)** (activate Voice Recorder in Off-Line Mode) and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **3 Off** ► Press ●

Motion Control Settings

Activating


Set the following before using MC Cursor (see P.1-13), Assign  Function (see P.1-31) or Viewer Setting (see P.1-31).

M-key Settings Use  instead of  or to activate MC Cursor

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *MC Settings* ▶ *M-key Settings*

Select **1** MC Cursor, **2** Assign  Function or **3** Off ▶ Press 

Viewer Setting In Viewer position, shake handset to use  functions

Default: MC Sensor is inactive.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *MC Settings* ▶ *Viewer Setting*

Select **1** Activate MC Sensor or **2** Cancel MC Sensor ▶ Press 

Note Activating MC Sensor cancels Full Auto in Viewer Display (see P.8-8).


Adjusting Sensor

If handset is magnetized, functions using MC Sensor may not operate properly. Adjust MC Sensor when the following functions do not work correctly.

- MC Cursor
- MC Shortcut
- Shake Counter
- Shake Sound
- Compass
- Full Auto (screen orientation)

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *MC Settings*

1 Select **3** Adjust MC Sensor and press

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Incoming calls, etc. interrupt adjustment. Start over from the beginning.
- Alternatively, press  **ADJUST** to adjust MC Sensor when Compass is active.

- Note**
- Avoid adjusting MC Sensor when:
 - Near magnetized objects such as audio speakers, refrigerators, magnetic necklaces and therapy equipment
 - Aboard trains or in vehicles
 - Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
 - In steel-framed buildings
 - MC Sensor may need to be readjusted when temperatures change.

Message Recorder


Record caller messages on handset.

Activate

Message Recorder cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in Off-Line Mode. Use Voice Mail to record caller messages when Message Recorder is not available (see P.17-4). Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Message Recorder, Voice Memo (see P.16-7) and My Voice Memo (see P.16-7).

Index Menu ▶ *Tel Ops* ▶ *Message Recorder*

1 Select **1** Recorder Settings and press

Remaining recording time appears and Message Recorder menu returns ( appears).


- To sample outgoing message, press  ▶ Select *Tel Ops* ▶ Press  ▶ Select **7** Message Recorder ▶ Press  ▶ Select **3** Outgoing Message ▶ Press 
- To activate or mute Earpiece for outgoing message/caller message recordings, press  ▶ Select *Tel Ops* ▶ Press  ▶ Select **7** Message Recorder ▶ Press  ▶ Select **4** Volume Level ▶ Press  ▶ Select **1** Volume Level Link or **2** Silent ▶ Press 

Answer Time

- Adjust ring time between 0 and 59 seconds (Message Recorder waits to answer calls). Answer Time is **09 seconds** by default.

Press  ▶ Select *Functions* ▶ Press  ▶ Select **4** Settings 2 ▶ Press 

▶ Select **4** Answer Time ▶ Press  ▶ Enter time (00 - 59) ▶ Press 



- To start recording immediately after a call arrives, enter **00** ▶ Press 

- When Message Recorder and Voice Mail or Call Forwarding are both active, the function with the shortest ring time takes priority. However, if Message Recorder is full, handset is in Off-Line Mode or out-of-range, incoming calls are handled by Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.

In-Car Recorder

- Activate In-Car Recorder to automatically activate Message Recorder when In-Car Charger is in use. In-Car Recorder is active by default. To cancel this setting, follow these steps.

Press  ▶ Select *Functions* ▶ Press  ▶ Select **4** Settings 2 ▶ Press 

▶ Select **2** In-Car Recorder ▶ Press  ▶ Choose **2** Off ▶ Press 

Message Recorder Disabled

- In Manner Mode (see P.3-3), activate/deactivate Message Recorder via Manner Settings only.
- When less than 7 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded, Message Recorder is disabled. Delete messages (see P.16-7) to activate Message Recorder.

When Message Recorder is Active

- For incoming calls, outgoing message plays and recording starts.
 - Recording continues even if handset is closed.
 - To answer calls, press during recording (no message will be recorded).
- When recording ends, appears.
- If recording capacity becomes full (see P.16-5) after the recording, Message Recorder is deactivated and disappears. (remains lit until the message is deleted.)

Quick Recorder

- Use Quick Recorder to record caller messages on handset when Message Recorder is inactive. When a call arrives, follow the steps below to activate Quick Recorder. Outgoing message plays and caller's message is recorded.
 - Press → Press **Message Recorder** → Press
- Alternatively, set Side Key Settings for incoming calls (see P.16-3) to **Message Recorder** to activate Quick Recorder with Side Key. When a call arrives, press the corresponding Side Key for 1+ seconds. Outgoing message plays and caller's message is recorded. (Available only with clamshell closed.)
 - When recording capacity is full (see P.16-5), delete messages (see P.16-7) to activate Message Recorder.

Deactivate

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Message Recorder

- 1 Select **Recorder Settings** and press .
Message Recorder is deactivated and menu returns (disappears).

Playing Messages

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Message Recorder

- 1 Select **Play** and press .
Number of recordings appears and playback starts from the most recent message. After all messages have played, playback ends and Standby returns.
 - Press to stop playback.

Tip **Incoming Calls**
Message playback stops for incoming calls. Press to answer the call.

Playback Operations (Example: 3 Messages are Recorded)

Skip the message	Replay the message	Play the previous message
Press during playback 	Press during playback 	Press twice during playback

Deleting Recorded Messages

- While message is playing, press → Choose **Yes** → Press .
 - The next message plays, if any. disappears after all messages are deleted.

Voice Memos

Record the other party's voice (Voice Memo) during a call or your own (My Voice Memo) in Standby.

- Record up to 90 seconds between Voice Memo, My Voice Memo and Message Recorder (see P.16-5). When less than 3 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded, messages cannot be recorded.
- Use Voice Recorder (see P.11-3) to record up to 100 minutes on handset in Standby.

1 Recording Voice Memo

- 1 During a call, press for 1+ seconds

Recording My Voice Memo

- 1 In Standby, press for 1+ seconds
- 2 Select **My Voice Memo** and press

2 Recording starts

- For Voice Memo, only the other party's voice is recorded.
- For My Voice Memo, talk to Microphone from the distance of 5 - 10 cm.
- Press or to stop recording.

Tip If Close to End Call (see P.2-3) is active, calls and Voice Memo recordings end when handset is closed (clamshell closed). The remaining recording time will not appear.

Note My Voice Memo stops for incoming calls. Press keys for Anykey Answer (see P.2-6) to answer the call. (The recorded message is saved.)

Tip

- Recordings remain even after handset power is turned off.
- Refer to the description for Message Recorder on P.16-6 and above to play or delete Voice Memo/My Voice Memo.

Alarm

Setting Alarm

Set Alarm to sound at a specific time each day or on specific days of the week.

- Save up to 5 Alarm settings.
- Save a message or phone number to appear with Alarm. Customize Ring Time, Tone Volume, Alarm Tone, LED Indicator and Vibration.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Alarm*

1 Select a number and press

- For a new entry, select -----.

2 Select *Input Time* and press

3 Enter time and press

- Use the 24-hour format.

4 Select *Repeat Settings* and press

5 *Daily*

1 Select *Daily* and press

Specified Day of the Week

1 Select *Weekly* and press

2 Select a day of the week and press

The day is set and appears.

- To cancel, highlight the selected day and press .

3 Repeat to select more

4 Press **Set** when finished

One-Time Alarm

1 Choose *Off* and press

6 *Show Message*

1 Select *Message* and press

2 Enter a message and press

- Enter up to 16 single-byte characters.

Customize Alarm Tone

1 Select *Sound* and press

- See P.16-10 for more ▶ Press **Back**

Set Options (see P.16-10)

1 Select *Option Settings* and press

- See P.16-11 for more ▶ Press **Back**

7 Press **Set**

Alarm is set.

- For more settings, repeat Steps 1 - 7.

8 Press to exit

Standby returns and appears. (blue) appears in Alarm list when Schedule Alert (see P.16-11) is set.

At Alarm Time

Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

- Image appears if Display Images is set. However, SMAF file images take priority over Display Images.
- When **Daily** or **Weekly** is set in Repeat Settings, Alarm operates daily or weekly until canceled.

Stopping Alarm Tone

■ Press or .

- Alternatively, press keys for Anykey Answer (see P.2-6).

Phone Number & Advance Mail

■ While name or number appears, press → **Number is dialed (Press to close window without dialing.)**

■ While address, name or number appears, press **Menu** → Select **Send Mail** → Press → **Mail Composition window opens** → Press **Send**

Snooze

■ When Snooze is set, (red) appears in Alarm list. Alarm repeats at the set interval.

- Snooze is not canceled even when Alarm is stopped by pressing . To cancel Snooze, press keys for Anykey Answer, choose **Yes** and press .
- Accept incoming calls. After each call, press to reactivate Snooze.
- Cancel Snooze to dial the saved number or send the Advance Mail message.
- Snooze is canceled automatically 60 minutes after initial Alarm Time.

Note

While Alarm Message, Phone Number or Advance Mail appears, Alarm will not sound for other Alarm settings.

Tip

- If Alarm Time arrives during a call, no tone will sound. End the call to reactivate Alarm.
- When Tone Volume is **Silent**, no sound will be heard in Manner Mode (see P.3-3) even if **Rising Tone** is selected in Manner Settings.
- Alarm set in Quick Operations (see P.1-32) is effective for one time only (Repeat Settings is **Off**).

Alarm Options

Set options for Alarm, Auto Power On and Schedule. Snooze, Schedule Alert, Phone Number (Call) and Advance Mail are not available for Auto Power On.

For settings on P.16-10 - 16-11, follow these steps first.

- For Alarm, perform Steps 1 - 5 on P.16-8 → Select **5 Sound** or **6 Option Settings** in Step 6 on P.16-8 → Press ●
- For Auto Power On, perform Steps 1 - 2 on P.16-12 → Select **3 Set Alarm** in Step 3 on P.16-12 → Press ● → Choose **1 On** → Press ●
- For Schedule, perform Steps 1 - 5 on P.16-14 - 16-15 → Select **Alarm** in Step 6 on P.16-15 → Press ● → Choose **1 On** → Press ● → Select **3 Sound** or **4 Option Settings** → Press ● (For **Call** and **Advance Mail**, select **Option Settings** in Step 6 on P.16-15 → Press ●)

Alarm Tones

Select from Preset Tones, Preset Melodies and Data Folder

Select **Alarm Tones** → Press ● → Select a type → Press ● → Select a tone → Press ●

- For details, see P.9-3 "Ring Tone."

Tone Volume

Select from **Silent**, **Level 1 - Level 5** and **Rising Tone**

Select **Tone Volume** → Press ● → Select a level with ● → Press ●

Ring Time

Enter between 2 and 99 seconds in 1-second increments

Select **Ring Time** → Press ● → Enter time → Press ●

Vibration

Set handset to vibrate at Alarm Time

Select **Vibration** → Press ● → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press ●

- Vibration Pattern is the same as that for incoming calls.

LED Indicator

Customize color and blink patterns

Mobile Light

Select **LED Indicator** → Press ● → Select **1 Mobile Light** → Press ● → Select a color → Press ● → Select a blink pattern → Press ●

Small Light

Select **LED Indicator** → Press ● → Select **2 Small Light** → Press ● → Select a blink pattern → Press ●

Cancel

Select **LED Indicator** → Press ● → Choose **3 Off** → Press ●

Snooze

Set Alarm to activate at set intervals (2 to 20 minutes by 1 minute) after initial Alarm Time

Select **Snooze** → Press ● → Choose **1 On** → Press ● → Enter interval (2 - 20 minutes) → Press ●

- To cancel, select **Snooze** → Press ● → Choose **2 Off** → Press ●

Schedule Alert

Set an Alert to announce upcoming Alarm Time 2 to 99 minutes beforehand

For Alarm

Select **Schedule Alert** → Press ● → Choose **1 On** → Press ● → Enter time (02 - 99 minutes) → Press ●

- To cancel, select **Schedule Alert** → Press ● → Choose **2 Off** → Press ●

For Schedule

Select **Schedule Alert** → Press ● → Select from **2 Minutes** to **6 Months** → Press ● → Enter amount of time (15 minutes, 1 week, etc.) → Press ●

- To cancel, select **Schedule Alert** → Press ● → Choose **1 Off** → Press ●

Phone Number/Call

Saved phone number appears after Alarm or in Schedule

- **Phone Number** or **Call** and **Advance Mail** cannot be set at the same time.

Select **Phone Number or Call** → Press ● → Enter a phone number → Press ●

- To copy from Phone Book, press ● (TEL) → See P.5-14

Advance Mail

Saved outgoing mail appears after Alarm or in Schedule

- **Advance Mail** and **Phone Number** or **Call** cannot be set at the same time.

Select **Advance Mail** → Press ● → Select a message → Press ●

Canceling & Reactivating Alarm

Cancel

Cancel Alarm and retain the settings

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Alarm* ▶ *Select a number*

Select **2** *Cancel* ▶ Press **⏻**

- **⏻** or **⏻** disappears.
- Reactivate Alarm to use the same settings.

Delete

Delete Alarm settings

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Alarm* ▶ *Select a number*

Select **3** *Delete* ▶ Press **⏻**

Settings

Reactivate Alarm with the same settings, or change current settings

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Alarm*

Same Settings

Select a number ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Select **1** *Settings* ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Press **⏻** **Set**

Change Settings

Select a number ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Select **1** *Settings* ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Perform from Step 2 on P.16-8

Auto Power On

Use Auto Power On to activate handset power automatically at a specific time each day.

- Once set, Auto Power On remains active until canceled.
- Alarm can be set to sound for Auto Power On.
- Auto Power On is inactive by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Auto Power On*

- 1 Choose **1** *On* and press **⏻****
 - ▶ To cancel Auto Power On, choose **2** *Off* ▶ Press **⏻** (Skip the following steps.)
- 2 Select **2** *Input Time* and press **⏻****
- 3 Enter time and press **⏻****
 - Use the 24-hour format.
 - ▶ To set Alarm, select **3** *Set Alarm* ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Choose **1** *On* ▶ Press **⏻** (See P.16-10 - 16-11 to customize Alarm settings.)
- 4 Press **⏻** **Set****

At Auto Power On Time

When Handset is Off

Handset turns on. When Alarm is set, Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings. Image appears if Display Images is set. However, SMAF file images take priority over Display Images.

When Handset is On

When Alarm is set, Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Tip

- If Auto Power On Time arrives during a call, no tone will sound. Press **⏻** after the call to reactivate Alarm.
- When Tone Volume is **Silent**, no sound will be heard in Manner Mode (see P.3-3) even if **Rising Tone** is selected in Manner Settings.
- Press **⏻** to stop Alarm. Alternatively, press **⏻** or keys for Anykey Answer (see P.2-6).

Auto Power Off

Use Auto Power Off to deactivate handset power automatically at a specific time each day.

- Once set, Auto Power Off remains active until canceled.
- Auto Power Off is inactive by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Auto Power Off*

- 1 Choose **1** *On* and press **⏻****
 - ▶ To cancel Auto Power Off, choose **2** *Off* ▶ Press **⏻** (Skip the following step.)
- 2 Enter time and press **⏻****
 - Use the 24-hour format.

At Auto Power Off Time

Handset power turns off.

- When handset is in use, confirmation appears (after operation if the time arrives during a call or while Shake Counter is active).
 - Handset power turns off after a minute of inactivity. Alternatively, choose **1** *Yes* and press **⏻**. Unsaved data will be deleted.
 - Choose **2** *No* and press **⏻** to cancel Auto Power Off.
- Even if there are messages saved as Auto Send, handset power turns off without confirmation.

Schedule

Enter upcoming events with dates and times. Save event with deadlines to Action Item.

- To save, edit or delete Schedule or Action Item entries while using other functions, see **P.1-29** "Hot Switching (Multi Menu)." Some items may not be saved, edited or deleted this way depending on the other function.
- Handset and SD Memory Card hold up to 400 Schedule entries (including Action Items) each.
- Customize various options (see **P.16-17**).
- Mark completed Action Items (see **P.16-17**).

Tip Exchange Schedule and Action Item entries between compatible devices via infrared (see **P.14-4**).

Saving Entries

Saving Schedule Entries

Alarm and Alarm Options are available.

Index Menu ▶ *Briefcase* ▶ *Schedule*

- 1 Press**
 - Press again to select date from Calendar.

- 2 Enter start/end date and time**
 - Enter 4 digits for year, 2 digits for month and day each, and use the 24-hour format for time.
 - Start date and time are mandatory.



Schedule Window

- 3 One-Time Schedule**

- 1 Press**

Repetitive Schedule

- 1 Press** **Cycle**
- 2 Select from** **xx:xx Daily** to **xx/xx Yearly** and press

 - Start date and time are reflected in the items. For **xx Monthly**, if the day is 29, 30 or 31, entries are saved for the valid months only.

- 3 Enter repeat time (00 - 99 times)** and press

 - Not available for **xx/xx Yearly**.
 - Press **Reps** to change the number of times to repeat.

- 4 Press**

- 4 Select Title** and press

- 5 Enter title and press**
 - Enter up to 16 single-byte characters. Title is mandatory.

- 6 Adding Stamp**

- 1 Select Stamp** and press
- 2 Select a stamp** and press

Saving Text

- 1 Select Contents** and press
- 2 Enter text** and press
 - Enter up to 128 single-byte characters.

Setting Alarm

- 1 Select Alarm** and press
- 2 Choose** **On** and press
 - Select **Alarm Time** to specify Alarm Time. If not, Alarm operates at Schedule Time.
 - To show message with Alarm, select **Message** ▶ Press ▶ Enter message ▶ Press
 - To customize Alarm Tones, Tone Volume and Ring Time, select **Sound** ▶ Press ▶ See **P.16-10** for more ▶ Press **Back**
 - To set Alarm options (see **P.16-10**), select **Option Settings** ▶ Press ▶ See **P.16-10 - 16-11** ▶ Press **Back**
- 3 Press** **Set**

Setting Schedule Options

- 1 Select Option Settings** and press
 - See **P.16-17** "Schedule Options" ▶ Press **Back**

- 7 Press** **Set** when finished

Save? appears.

- To save to SD Memory Card, press .
- To switch back to handset, press .

- 8 Choose** **Yes** and press

The scheduled date is underlined. Stamp appears if set.

On Scheduled Day

■ (Alarm is set) or (Alarm is not set) appears. (They will disappear after Schedule Time.)

Saving Action Items

Index Menu ▶ *Briefcase* ▶ *Schedule*

1 Press

2 Enter title and press

- Enter up to 16 single-byte characters. Title is mandatory.

3 Select *Limit* and press

- Enter 4 digits for year, 2 digits for month and day each, and use the 24-hour format for time. Limit is mandatory.

4 *One-Time Action Item*

1 Press

- Proceed to Step 5.

Repetitive Action Item

1 Press *Cycle*

2 Select from **2** *xx:xx Daily* to **5** *xx/xx Yearly* and press

- Start date and time are reflected in the items. For **4** *xx Monthly*, if the day is 29, 30 or 31, entries are saved for the valid months only.

3 Enter repeat time (00 - 99 times) and press

- Not available for **5** *xx/xx Yearly*.

Press *Reps* to change the number of times to repeat.

4 Press

5 *Adding Stamp*

1 Select *Stamp* and press

2 Select a stamp and press

Saving Text

1 Select *Contents* and press

2 Enter text and press

- Enter up to 128 single-byte characters.

Setting Priority

1 Select *Priority* and press

2 Select from **1** *No Setting* to **3** *Low* and press

Setting Options

1 Select *Option Settings* and press

For more, see P.16-17 "Schedule Options" ▶ Press *Back*

6 Press *Set* when finished

For save to SD Memory Card, press .

- To switch back to handset, press .

7 Choose **1** *Yes* and press

Completed Action Items

■ To mark Action Items as completed, follow these steps.

Press ▶ Select *Briefcase* ▶ Press ▶ Select **3** *Schedule* ▶ Press ▶

Press *Menu* ▶ Select *View* ▶ Press ▶ Select **3** *All List* ▶ Press ▶

Select completed Action Item ▶ Press twice ▶ Choose **1** *Yes* ▶ Press

- Completed Action Items do not appear in Schedule window.
- Completed date and time can be entered manually.

■ To delete completed Action Items automatically, see P.16-20.

At Schedule Alarm Time

When Alarm is set, Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

- Alarm does not sound, vibrate, etc. for entries on SD Memory Card.
- Image appears if Display Images is set. However, SMAF file images take priority over Display Images.
- For stopping Alarm Tone, dialing numbers, sending Advance Mail and canceling Snooze, see P.16-9.

Tip

- If Schedule Time arrives during a call, no tone will sound. Press after the call to reactivate Alarm.
- When Tone Volume is *Silent*, no sound will be heard in Manner Mode (see P.3-3) even if *Rising Tone* is selected in Manner Settings.

Schedule Options

Set options for Schedule and Action Item.

Secret Mode	See P.16-18
Alarm	For Action Item, refer to "Setting Alarm" in Step 6 on P.16-15
Attach Image	For Schedule only. See P.16-18
Call	See P.16-11
Advance Mail	See P.16-11
Date Color	See P.16-18
Auto Protect	See P.16-18
Standby Display	See P.16-18
Priority	For Schedule, refer to "Setting Priority" in Step 5 on P.16-16
Condition	See P.16-19

For settings on P.16-18 - 16-19, follow these steps first.

- For Schedule, perform Steps 1 - 5 on P.16-14 - 16-15 ▶ Select *Option Settings* in Step 6 on P.16-15 ▶ Press
- For Action Item, perform Steps 1 - 4 on P.16-16 ▶ Select *Option Settings* in Step 5 on P.16-16 ▶ Press

Secret Mode

Secret Mode entries appear only when handset is in Secret Mode (see P.15-7)

Default Off

Select **Secret Mode** → Press **⓪** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **⓪**

Attach Image

Set an image to appear at Schedule Time

■ Available only for Schedule.

Capture Still Image and Save

Select **Attach Image** → Press **⓪** → Select **1 Camera** → Press **⓪** →
Select **1 Sha-mail** → Press **⓪** → Shoot image (see P.7-11) → Press **⓪**

Record Video and Save

Select **Attach Image** → Press **⓪** → Select **1 Camera** → Press **⓪** →
Select **2 Movie Sha-mail** → Press **⓪** → Record video (see P.7-21) →
Select **1 Save** → Press **⓪**

From Data Folder

Select **Attach Image** → Press **⓪** → Select **2 Data Folder** → Press **⓪** →
Select from **1 Images** to **3 Movies** → Press **⓪** → Select an image
→ Press **⓪**

Cancel

Select **Attach Image** → Press **⓪** → Select **3 Cancel** → Press **⓪**

Date Color

Change Calendar date color
Select from 7 colors

Default Date Color (colors set in Set Color)

Select **Date Color** → Press **⓪** → Select a color → Press **⓪**

• Colors do not appear in **1-Week** view.

Standby Display

Show or hide entries in Standby
Set for each entry

Default On

Select **Standby Display** → Press **⓪** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **⓪**

• Choose **Off** to make an entry less accessible to others.

Schedule Display

■ To use Schedule for Standby, set Calendar type (see P.8-3) to **2 Schedule & Stamps**.

Standby Display Settings

■ Customize Standby Display (show or hide Schedule details).

Press **⓪** → Select **Briefcase** → Press **⓪** → Select **3 Schedule** → Press **⓪** → Press
⓪ → **Menu** → Select **Standby Display** → Press **⓪** → Select an item → Press **⓪**

Auto Protect

Protect entries from Auto Delete.

Default Off

Select **Auto Protect** → Press **⓪** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **⓪**

Condition

Select **Plan** for upcoming events and **Complete** for completed events

Select **Condition** → Press **⓪** → Select **1 Plan** or **2 Complete** → Press **⓪**

Opening Entries

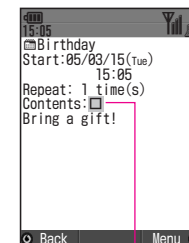
Index Menu → **Briefcase** → **Schedule** → **Select a date**

1 Select an entry and press **⓪**

■ To save to Data Folder, press **⓪** → **Menu** → Select **To Data Folder** → Press **⓪** → Enter title → Press **⓪** → Select a destination folder → Press **⓪**

• Priority & Condition Indicators:

Indicator	Priority	Condition	Indicator	Priority	Condition
<input type="checkbox"/> (Green)	No Setting	Plan	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Green)	No Setting	Complete
<input type="checkbox"/> (Yellow)	Low	Plan	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Yellow)	Low	Complete
<input type="checkbox"/> (Red)	High	Plan	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Red)	High	Complete



Priority & Condition Indicator

2 Press **⓪** **Back** to end

View

■ Press **⓪** → Select **Briefcase** → Press **⓪** → Select **3 Schedule** → Press **⓪** → Press **⓪** → **View**

• Press **⓪** → **View** to toggle between **Action Item**, **1-Week**, **1-Month**, **Schedule**, **All List** and **Day Detail/Stamps**.

■ To select the types of view that toggle, see P.16-21.

Memory Status, Writer & Entry Number

■ Check the number of saved entries.

Press **⓪** → Select **Briefcase** → Press **⓪** → Select **3 Schedule** → Press **⓪** → Press **⓪** → **Menu** → Select **Event List** → Press **⓪**

■ Check Writer and Entry Number.

Press **⓪** → Select **Briefcase** → Press **⓪** → Select **3 Schedule** → Press **⓪** → Select a date → Press **⓪** → Select an entry → Press **⓪** → **Menu** → Select **Details** → Press **⓪**

• Entry Numbers are assigned when a new entry is saved. Name saved in Owner Profile (see P.2-22) appears for Writer.

• **Details** does not appear for **Day Detail/Stamps**, **1-Week** or **1-Month**.

Editing Entries

Index Menu → **Briefcase** → **Schedule** → **Select a date**

1 Select an entry and press **⓪**

2 Press **⓪** **Menu**

- 3 Select **Edit** and press **ⓘ**
- 4 Select an item and press **ⓘ**
 - See Step 2 and onward on P.16-14 for more.
- 5 When finished editing, press **ⓘ** **Set**
- 6 Select **1** *New Entry* or **2** *Overwrite* and press **ⓘ**

Deleting Entries

Delete Item Delete one entry

Index Menu ▶ *Briefcase* ▶ *Schedule* ▶ *Select a date* ▶ *Select an entry* ▶ *Menu* (ⓘ) ▶ *Delete Item*

Choose **1** *Yes* ▶ Press **ⓘ**

One Day Schedules Delete the day's Schedule entries

Index Menu ▶ *Briefcase* ▶ *Schedule* ▶ *Select a date* ▶ *Menu* (ⓘ) ▶ *Delete All*

Select **2** *One Day Schedules* or **3** *One Day Items* ▶ Press **ⓘ** ▶
 Select **1** *Select All* or **2** *Unprotected* ▶ Press **ⓘ** ▶ Enter Security Code ▶ Choose **1** *Yes* ▶ Press **ⓘ**

Delete All Delete all past entries or all entries

Index Menu ▶ *Briefcase* ▶ *Schedule* ▶ *Select a date* ▶ *Menu* (ⓘ) ▶ *Delete All*

Select **1** *Past Schedules*, **3** *Schedules*, **4** *Completed Items*,
5 *Incomplete Items*, **7** *Action Items* or **8** *All Entries* ▶ Press **ⓘ** ▶
 Select **1** *Select All* or **2** *Unprotected* ▶ Press **ⓘ** ▶ Enter Security Code ▶ Choose **1** *Yes* ▶ Press **ⓘ**

Other Schedule Settings

Auto Delete Delete the oldest Schedule or completed Action Item entries automatically when memory is full

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Briefcase* ▶ *Schedule* ▶ *Menu* (ⓘ) ▶ *Auto Delete*

Select **1** *Schedule* or **2** *Action Item* ▶ Press **ⓘ** ▶ Select **1** *Auto Delete On* or **2** *Auto Delete Off* ▶ Press **ⓘ**

Set Color Change color for days of the week

Index Menu ▶ *Briefcase* ▶ *Schedule* ▶ *Menu* (ⓘ) ▶ *Set Color*

Select a day ▶ Press **ⓘ** ▶ Select a color ▶ Press **ⓘ**

View Change view

Index Menu ▶ *Briefcase* ▶ *Schedule* ▶ *Menu* (ⓘ) ▶ *View*

Select from **1** *Day Detail/Stamps* to **4** *All List* ▶ Press **ⓘ**

Selecting Toggle Views

Select the types of view that appear when **ⓘ** *View* is pressed in Schedule window (see P.16-19).

Press **ⓘ** ▶ Select *Briefcase* ▶ Press **ⓘ** ▶ Select **3** *Schedule* ▶ Press **ⓘ** ▶
 Press **ⓘ** ▶ *Menu* ▶ Select *View* ▶ Press **ⓘ** ▶ Select **7** *Toggle View* ▶
 Press **ⓘ** ▶ Select a type* ▶ Press **ⓘ** **Check** ▶ (Select another type ▶
 Press **ⓘ**) ▶ Press **ⓘ**

*Select to check and select to uncheck.

User Shortcuts

Create shortcuts to functions and files.

- Press a key for 1+ seconds to activate corresponding functions in User Shortcut (see P.16-22). Alternatively, open User Shortcut list and shake handset in two directions sequentially (see P.1-14 "MC Shortcut").
- To change default shortcuts, see P.16-23 "Assigning User Shortcuts."

User Shortcut	Key	MC Shortcut (Motion Pattern)
Entry Search (Phone Book)	1 ⓘ (Long Press)	-
Auto Reply	2 ⓘ (Long Press)	-
Calculator	3 ⓘ (Long Press)	-
Alarm	4 ⓘ (Long Press)	-
Call Functions	5 ⓘ (Long Press)	-
Display Settings	6 ⓘ (Long Press)	-
Inbox	7 ⓘ (Long Press)	Up & Up (⬆️⬆️)
2-Touch Mail List*	8 ⓘ (Long Press)	Left & Left (⬅️⬅️)
TVnano	* ⓘ (Long Press)	-
V-Appli Library	ⓘ (Long Press)	-

*2-Touch Mail List for Sky Mail opens (see **ⓘ** P.3-4).

- Assign functions to **9** ⓘ, **0** ⓘ or **#** ⓘ (see P.16-23 "Assigning User Shortcuts").

Using Shortcuts

Key

- 1 Press - , , , or for 1+ seconds
Assigned function or file window opens.

- Tip**
- Alternatively, press and press a key for assigned function to use shortcut.
 - When the shortcut is assigned to an image or melody file, it opens or plays.
 - When Mail, Web, Station, or V-Application is disabled or an SD Memory Card is not inserted, related function shortcuts are disabled.
 - When the assigned file is already deleted, a confirmation appears. Choose and press to delete shortcut. User Shortcut list returns.

Motion Pattern (MC Shortcut)

- MC Shortcuts are not available with clamshell closed.
- MC Shortcut is available only while appears on User Shortcut list (press if not).

- 1 Press or
User Shortcut list appears.

- 2 Shake handset in the corresponding motion pattern (see P.16-23 "Setting MC Shortcuts")

- Complete within the time-out period (see P.16-23 "Setting Time-Out Period").
Recognition tone sounds for each shake and the corresponding window opens. To adjust volume, see P.9-6.

- Note**
- For better recognition, start the second shake after the first tone ends.
 - If motion pattern is not recognized even when completed within the time-out period, **Invalid** appears with error tone and User Shortcut list returns.
 - If no motion is performed within 10 seconds, **Time Out** appears with error tone and User Shortcut list returns.
 - Press while appears to cancel MC Shortcut.

- Note**
- Do not shake handset roughly. Handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.
 - Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
 - Recognition accuracy varies by user. Set patterns that are easily recognized.
 - When MC Shortcut does not work properly, adjust MC Sensor (see P.16-4).

Assigning User Shortcuts

Assign or edit User Shortcuts (see P.16-21).
Assign shortcut keys to functions or files when appears.

- 1 Select a file or function from a list
- 2 Press for 1+ seconds
- 3 Select an entry and press
 When overwriting, choose → Press

- Tip**
- Shortcut names appear automatically. (To change the name, see P.16-24.)
 - To assign a V-Application to (Long Press), see P.11-3.
 - Overwritten default shortcuts return when user-defined shortcuts are deleted.

Setting MC Shortcuts

Assign motion pattern to User Shortcuts. Set time-out period to recognize a motion pattern.

- 1 Press
- 2 Select an item and press **Menu**
- 3 Select **Motion Control** and press
- 4 **Assigning/Editing Motion Pattern**
 - 1 Select **MC Sensor On/Off** and press
 - 2 Choose **On** and press
 To delete an assigned motion, choose **Off** → Press
 - 3 Select from **Up & Return** to **Left & Return** and press
(First motion)
 - Press to see an illustration.
 - 4 Select from **Up & Return** to **Left & Return** and press
(Second motion)
Assigned motion pattern appears (combination of , or)
Press to try performing motions.
 - For a motion pattern already assigned, **Cannot Save** appears. Select another motion.

Setting Time-Out Period

- 1 Select **Time Out Setting** and press
- 2 Enter time and press
 - Time is 10 seconds by default (01 - 60 seconds).

Editing & Deleting Shortcuts

Change Name Rename shortcuts

Press → **Select an item** → Press **Menu** → **Select Change Name** → Press → **Edit name** → Press

- Pictographs cannot be entered.

Delete Delete shortcuts

Press → **Select an item** → Press **Menu** → **Select Delete** → Press → **Choose Yes** → Press

Stopwatch

Record elapsed time for up to 24 hours in 0.1-second increments. Use lap time feature to segment elapsed time.

- Save times (including the last five lap times) to Text Memo on handset or SD Memory Card.
- Stopwatch ends when battery level is low.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Stopwatch*

1 Press

Stopwatch starts.

- To record Lap times, press **Lap**.
 - In Viewer position, press for 1+ seconds or .

2 Press to stop

The last five Lap times are recorded. The records are deleted when Stopwatch is canceled.

- To save the records to Text Memo, press **Menu** → **Select Save Text Memo** → Press → **Choose Yes** → Press
- To check saved records, press **Menu** → **Select See Text Memo** → Press → **Select a record** → Press
- Press to resume Stopwatch.
- Press **Reset** to clear the record.
 - In Viewer position, press for 1+ seconds.

3 Press or to exit

When Stopwatch is running or paused, choose **Yes** → Press



- Records are deleted when Stopwatch is canceled. Save records to Text Memo.
- Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. Press after the call to return to Stopwatch.
- If Alarm Time arrives (see **P.16-8**) while Stopwatch window is open, no tone will sound. Close Stopwatch to reactivate Alarm.
- Pen Light is disabled while Stopwatch window is open.
- Count continues running even if handset is closed during measurement.

Kitchen Timer

Set Kitchen Timer up to 60 minutes in 1-second increments. Alarm Tone sounds and LED Indicator flashes when set time elapses.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Kitchen Timer*

1 Enter time (00:01 - 60:00) and press

- Use to move cursor and correct the number. After the entry is confirmed by pressing , follow the steps below to change time.
- When times over 60 minutes (60:00) are entered, Kitchen Timer returns to the number originally entered.
 - To change time, press **Edit** → Enter time → Press

2 Press

Countdown starts.

3 Press to stop.

- Press to resume.
- Press **Reset** to return to the set time.

4 Press or to exit

- When Kitchen Timer is running or paused, choose **Yes** → Press

Kitchen Timer End

- **Timer End** appears. Alarm Tone sounds and LED Indicator flashes. (Alarm Tone is fixed to Pattern 1. Volume and LED Indicator depend on the settings for Sound Volume and Set LED to Sound respectively. Vibration is Off.)
 - Alarm stops automatically after 60 seconds. Press to stop manually.
 - In Manner Mode, handset vibrates. (Vibration Pattern is Vibration 1. Volume and LED Indicator depend on Manner Settings.)
 - Alarm Tone and Vibration Pattern cannot be changed.
 - When the set timer time has elapsed during a call, **Timer End** appears after is pressed to end the call.



- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls.
 - Press after the call to return to Kitchen Timer window.
- Press for 1+ seconds to enter/exit Manner Mode.
- If Alarm Time arrives (see **P.16-8**) while Kitchen Timer window is open, no tone will sound. Cancel Kitchen Timer to activate Alarm.
- Pen Light is disabled while Kitchen Timer window is open.
- Countdown continues even if handset is closed.

Shake Counter

Count up/down numbers by shaking handset.

- Use Shake Counter also in Viewer position or with handset closed (clamshell closed).
- Adjust Sensitivity Level of shake recognition.
- Count up to 99,999 shakes.
- Save counts to Text Memo on handset or SD Memory Card.

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Shake Counter

1 Counting Up

- 1 Select **1 Count** and press ●

Counting Down

- 1 Select **2 Count Down** and press ●
- 2 Enter numbers (1 - 99999 counts) and press ●

2 Press ●

3 Shake handset

Shake Counter starts counting.

Tip

When counter reaches 0 or 99,999, Alarm Tone sounds and LED Indicator flashes. (Alarm Tone is fixed to Pattern 1. Volume and LED Indicator depend on the settings for Sound Volume and Set LED to Sound respectively. Vibration is Off.)

- Alarm stops automatically after 60 seconds. Press ● to stop manually.
- In Manner Mode, handset vibrates. (Vibration Pattern is Vibration 1. Volume and LED Indicator depend on Manner Settings.)
- Alarm Tone and Vibration Pattern cannot be changed.

4 Press ● to stop

- To save the count to Text Memo, press ● **Menu** ▶ Select **Save Text Memo** ▶ Press ●
▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press ●
 - To check saved counts, see P.4-18.
- Press ● to resume.
- Press ● **Reset** to clear the count.

5 Press ● or **フック** to exit

- When Shake Counter is active or paused, choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press ●

Sensitivity Level

- Follow these steps after Step 1 on P.16-26.

Press ● **Menu** ▶ Select **Sensitivity Level** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select from **1 Level1** to **5 Level5** ▶ Press ●

- Sensitivity decreases as the level number decreases.

Note

- Do not shake handset roughly. Handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- When Shake Counter does not operate properly, adjust MC Sensor (see P.16-4).

Tip

- If Alarm Time arrives (see P.16-8) while Shake Counter window is open, no tone will sound. Cancel Shake Counter to activate Alarm.
- Count continues even while handset is closed or in Panel Saving mode.

Shake Sound

Shake handset to produce sound effects.

Use preset files or compatible files in Data Folder for sound effects. Files on SD Memory Card cannot be used.

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Shake Sound

1 Volume

1 Press (up) or (down) to adjust volume

- Volume changes in the following order:

1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → Shaker ¹	Shaker ¹ → 5 → 4 → 3 → 2 → 1

¹For **Shaker**, volume changes according to the strength of shaking.

Tip In Manner Mode, Shake Sound volume depends on Manner Settings (see P.3-4). Volume is set to **Silent** by default.

Sound

1 Press **Menu**

2 Select from **1 Whistle 1** to **9 Original** and press

- For **1 Whistle 1** to **8 Shuffle**, proceed to Step 2.
- For **9 Original**, press to toggle between **Single Play Mode** and **Continuous Mode**.

Single Play Mode	When handset is shaken sequentially, sound stops and starts from the beginning for each shake
Continuous Mode	Sound plays all the way through

Tip

- For **8 Shuffle**, sound changes according to the direction and angle of shaking.
- Press to stop playing **7 Handclap** or **9 Original**.

3 Select a sound or melody and press

2 Shake handset

Sound plays.

Tip Mobile or Small Light flashes with sound as set in Set LED to Sound (see P.9-6).

3 Press , or **Back** to end

Note

- Do not shake handset roughly. Handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- When Shake Sound does not operate properly, adjust MC Sensor (see P.16-4).
- Shake Sound is disabled while handset is in Panel Saving mode.

Compass

Use Compass to find magnetic north and calculate other directions from your current position.

- Compass indicator points towards magnetic north.
- Use either **2D** or **3D** Compass.
- 3D Compass opens by default.

Index Menu ▶ Handy

1 Select **Compass** and press

- Press to toggle between **3D** and **2D**.

Note

- Built-in sensors detect handset orientation and Earth's magnetic field. Compass calculates the direction of magnetic north based on the readings of these sensors and does not support the Global Positioning System (GPS). Actual direction may differ from that shown on Compass. Use Compass only as a rough guide.
- Actual direction of magnetic north may differ when:
 - Aboard trains or in vehicles
 - Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
 - In steel-framed buildings
 - Near or inside elevators
 - Near magnetized objects (see P.1-13)
- For 2D Compass, keep handset Display as level as possible. For 3D, a slight tilt is allowable.

Tip

When directions do not appear correctly, adjust MC Sensor (see P.16-4). When Compass is in use, press **Adjust** and follow onscreen instructions.

Barcode

Scan printed barcodes with mobile camera or download QR Codes via Web or Super Mail. Scan UPC (JAN) or QR Codes in Normal or Continuous modes.

Normal	Read UPC (JAN) or QR Codes one at a time. Handset automatically detects split QR Codes.
Continuous	Read multiple UPC (JAN) or QR Codes consecutively

- Handset automatically detects code type and reads code data.
- In Continuous mode, scan up to 50 UPC (JAN) or 16 QR Codes at one time. In some cases, continuous scans may be disrupted depending on barcode data or data size.
- Hold handset vertically when capturing barcodes.
- Focus automatically (Focus Lock) or manually.
- Optical Zoom and Digital Zoom are not available.

Note

- Barcodes cannot be scanned from functions opened with Hot Switching (see P.1-29).
- Scanning may fail if the barcode is dirty or unclear.
- It is recommended to use Mobile Light when scanning barcodes indoors.
- Capture one barcode at a time. If not, handset may fail to scan.

Tip

- UPC (Universal Product Code) or JAN (Japanese Article Number) is a series of varying width vertical lines (called bars) and spaces. Bars and spaces together are *elements*, combinations of which represent different numbers. Handset cannot read other one-dimensional barcodes (ITF Code, Code39, Codabar/NW-7, etc.).
- QR (Quick Response) Code is a matrix symbology consisting of an array of nominally square cells. It allows omni-directional reading of up to 7,366 characters — numeric, alphanumeric, byte data as well as kanji and kana.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

Scan & Capture

Use mobile camera to scan printed barcodes. Activate mobile camera from Barcodes menu or during text entry.

Scanning from Barcodes Menu

Paste scan results into text entry windows or use URLs as hyperlinks.

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ➔ *Barcodes*

1 Select **Scan Code** and press **Enter**

Mobile camera activates in Macro mode.

- If handset is too hot, **Heat Warning: Camera Temporarily Disabled** appears and mobile camera cannot be activated. If handset becomes too hot while scanning, **Temperature High Closing Camera...** appears and scanning ends.

Press **Enter** to toggle between Normal Scanning and Continuous Scanning.

Press **Light** to toggle Mobile Light **On** (Macro) and **Off**.

Use **Volume** to adjust Brightness (see P.7-29).

2 Frame barcode on Display

3 Press **Enter**

After focusing automatically (see P.7-8), mobile camera scans the barcode.

- Change Auto Focus mode if barcode cannot be read in Macro mode.

Press **Enter** to toggle Auto Focus mode among Standard, Manual and Macro.

Press **Cancel** to stop scan ➔ Start over from Step 2 on P.16-30



For Focus Lock, see P.7-8. For manual focus, see P.7-28.

4 Barcode recognition tone sounds and scan results appear

Using Scan Results: see P.16-32

Font & Image Size

Font Size is **Standard** and Image Size is **100%** by default.

While scan results appear, press **Menu** ➔ Select **Set Display Size** ➔ Press **Enter** ➔ Select **Font Size** or **Image Size** ➔ Press **Enter** ➔ Select a size ➔ Press **Enter**

Alternatively, press **Image Size** to switch image size. (☐ appears for 100% and ☐ for 200%.)

The changes do not affect the settings for received/sent messages or Web.

Starting Over

While scan results appear, press **Back** ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press **Enter** ➔ Perform from Step 2 on P.16-30

Continuous Mode

After scanning, **Scan Complete Scan New?** appears.

To continue scanning, choose **Yes** ➔ Press **Enter** ➔ Frame the next code on Display ➔ Press **Enter**

To exit, choose **No** ➔ Press **Enter**

Split Data

After scanning, **Split Data Scan next Symbol?** appears.

To scan next code, choose **Yes** ➔ Press **Enter** ➔ Frame the code on Display ➔ Press **Enter**

To cancel, choose **No** ➔ Press **Enter** ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press **Enter**

Data will not be saved until all split data is scanned.

The scanning status appears on the first line of Display. For example, **1/4** indicates that 1 of 4 codes has been scanned.

Using Scan Results

Place Calls¹	Select a number starting with TEL: ² → Press Call → Press Call → Press Call
Send Mail³	Select a mail address including @ → Press Send Mail → Press Send Mail → Select 1 Send Super Mail or 2 Send Sky Mail → Press Send Mail (See P.3-3 for more.)
Quote & Send Mail	Press Menu → Select Send Mail → Press Send Mail → Select 1 Send Super Mail or 2 Send Sky Mail → Press Send Mail → Scan results appear → Press Send Mail ■ To use a part of text, press Cut → Highlight the first character of the text block to copy → Press Copy → Highlight the text block → Press Copy (See P.3-3 for more.)
Save to Phone Book^{1,3}	Select a number starting with TEL: ² or a mail address including @ → Press Send Mail → Select Add to Phone Book → Press Send Mail (See Step 4 and onward on P.5-6 .)
Access Mobile Internet Sites⁴	Select a URL starting with http:// → Press Open Link → Press Open Link → See Step 2 in "URLs" on P.4-27
Save to Data Folder (Images & Melodies)	Select an image or melody file → Press To Data Folder → Press To Data Folder → Enter title → Press To Data Folder → Select a save location → Press To Data Folder
Save to Scanned Data	Press Menu → Select Save → Press Save → Enter title → Press Save • Save up to 10 items. To open saved items, see P.16-34 .
Copy Text	Press Menu → Select Copy → Press Copy → Highlight the first character of the text block to copy → Press Copy → Highlight the text block → Press Copy Paste the copied text into a text entry window.

¹ Available when text is in **TEL:*** format.

² Text strings of 10 to 24 digits starting with 0 are recognized as phone numbers.

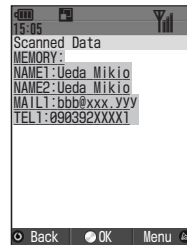
³ Available when text is in ***@*** format.

⁴ Available when text is in **http://*** format.

* represents one or more alphanumerics.

MEMORY: or MAILTO:

- When **MEMORY:** or **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press **Save** to save text underlined with a dotted line to Phone Book or send it via Sky/Super Mail. All underlined items are entered. However, text after an invalid character is not underlined and is not copied.



Scan during Text Entry

Scan barcodes during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press **Menu** → Press **Scan** → Select **1 Scan Code** → Press **Scan** → Frame barcode on Display → Press **Scan** twice

Note

- If handset is too hot, **Heat Warning: Camera Temporarily Disabled** appears and mobile camera cannot be activated. If handset becomes too hot while scanning, **Temperature High Closing Camera** appears and scanning ends.
- Barcodes cannot be scanned while:
 - Entering titles to save scan results
 - Entering text for Paste Text
 - Entering text during a call
 - Entering titles for sending files via infrared
 - Creating Phone Book entries during calls
 - Entering text in windows opened with Hot Switching (see **P.1-29**)
 - Entering titles to save edited images
 - V-Application is active

Reading Saved Barcode Images

Index Menu → **Vodafone live!** → **Data Folder**

1 Select Images and press **Image**

■ To open files in sub folders, select a folder → Press **Image**

2 Select a barcode image and press **Image**

Barcode appears.

3 Press **Menu**

4 Select Scan Code and press **Image**

Scan results appear.

■ Using Scan Results: see **P.16-32**

Split Data

- Split Data Scan next Symbol?** appears.

To search remaining codes automatically, select **2 Auto Select** → Press **Image**
 ■ To select next code manually, select **1 Single Scan** → Press **Image** → Select a file → Press **Image**
 To cancel, select **3 Cancel** → Press **Image** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **Image**

Note

- Resized QR Codes may be invalid.
- For invalid codes, **Error This data may be Incorrect** appears.

Opening Saved Scan Results

Open files saved in Scanned Data folder.

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ▶ *Barcodes*

1 Select **3** Saved Files and press **1**

- Select a file and press **2** **Menu** to see properties, change file name or delete. For operations, see **P.13-11** and **P.13-46 - 13-47**.

2 Select a file and press **1**

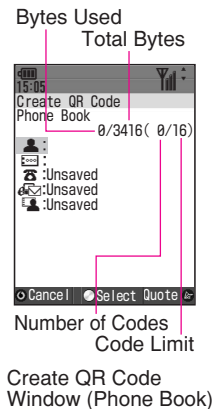
- Saved scan results appear.
- The file cannot be re-saved.
- Using Scan Results: see **P.16-32**
- Press **1** **Back** to return to Scanned Data list.

Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from Owner Profile, Phone Book, Mail, Text, Melodies or Images. Save created QR Codes to Data Folder or attach to Super Mail. Barcodes cannot be created from windows opened with Hot Switching (see **P.1-29**).

Creating from *Create QR Code* Menu

- Create QR Codes by selecting an item in Create QR Code menu.
- Use saved contents or enter new contents for a QR Code.
- Save up to the equivalent of 513 digits or 131 kanji per QR Code.
- Large items up to 3,416 bytes are divided into maximum of 16 QR Codes.
- Created QR Codes are saved to Data Folder (Images).



Owner Profile

Encode name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses and Personal Data

■ Postal Codes cannot be encoded.

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ▶ *Barcodes* ▶ *Create QR Code* ▶ *Owner Profile*

Enter Security Code ▶ **Press** **1** ▶ **Press** **2** **Create** ▶ **Press** **1**

Phone Book

Encode name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses and Personal Data

■ Group Names and Option Settings are not encoded.

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ▶ *Barcodes* ▶ *Create QR Code* ▶ *Phone Book*

Press **2** **Quote** ▶ **Search Phone Book (See P.5-14.)** ▶ **Select an entry** ▶ **Press** **1** **twice** ▶ **Press** **2** **Create** ▶ **Press** **1**

■ To add information, select an item ▶ **Press** **1** ▶ Enter information ▶ **Press** **1**

Mail

Encode address or number (as recipient), subject, message text and attached files

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ▶ *Barcodes* ▶ *Create QR Code* ▶ *Mail*

Press **2** **Quote** ▶ **Select from 1 Inbox to 3 Outbox** ▶ **Press** **1** ▶ **Select a message** ▶ **Press** **1** ▶ **Press** **2** **Create** ▶ **Press** **1**

■ To add text or attachments, select a field ▶ **Press** **1** ▶ Enter contents ▶ **Press** **1**
(See **P.3-3** for details.)

Text

Encode entered text or phone number

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ▶ *Barcodes* ▶ *Create QR Code* ▶ *Text*

Select Text or Phone Number ▶ **Press** **1** ▶ **Enter text or number** ▶ **Press** **1** ▶ **Press** **2** **Create** ▶ **Press** **1**

Melodies & Images

Encode melody and image files in Data Folder

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) ▶ *Barcodes* ▶ *Create QR Code*

Select 3 Melodies or 4 Images ▶ **Press** **1** ▶ **Select a file** ▶ **Press** **1** ▶ **Choose 1 Yes** ▶ **Press** **1** **twice**

■ For Original Ring Tones, select a format ▶ **Press** **1** ▶ **Choose 1 Yes** ▶ **Press** **1**

Switching Storage Media

- Before pressing **Enter**, press **Menu** → Select **1 Save to** → Press **Enter** → **1 Handset** or **2 Memory Card** → Press **Enter**

Attaching to Super Mail

- Before pressing **Enter**, press **Menu** → Select **2 Attachment** → Press **Enter** → See **P.3-3** "Creating a Message" to send

Deleting Created QR Codes

- Before pressing **Enter**, press **Menu** → Select **3 Delete** → Press **Enter** → Select a file → Press **Enter** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **Enter**

Incoming Calls while Creating

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Creating from Saved Data

Open Owner Profile, Phone Book entry, mail message, Text Memo entry, melody file or image file to create QR Code.

1 Open a file or entry and press **Enter** **Menu** or **Menu**

- For mail, select a message in Mail Box.
- Alternatively, for melody and image files, open Data Folder and select a file → Press **Menu** → Select **Handy Functions** → Press **Enter** → Select **Create QR Code** → Press **Enter** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **Enter** twice (Skip the following steps.)

2 Select **Create QR Code** and press **Enter**

Create QR Code window for each item opens.

3 Press **Enter** **Create**

- Switching Storage Media: see above
- Attaching to Super Mail: see above
- Deleting Created QR Codes: see above

4 Press **Enter**

Text Scanner

Scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or roman letters) with mobile camera.

- Scan up to 60 single-byte characters within 3 lines.
- Text Scanner is disabled while:
 - Music Player is active
 - SD Memory Card is being synchronized
 - V-Application is active
- Hold handset vertically when capturing text.
- Focus automatically (Focus Lock) or manually.
- Optical Zoom and Digital Zoom are not available.
- Some symbols cannot be read.

Index Menu ▶ **Handy (Enter)**

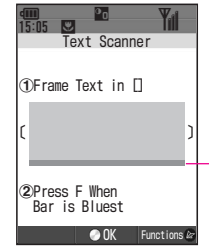
1 Select **Text Scanner** and press **Enter**

Mobile camera activates in Macro mode.

- If handset is too hot, **Heat Warning: Camera Temporarily Disabled** appears and mobile camera cannot be activated. If becomes too hot while scanning, **Temperature High Closing Camera** appears and scanning ends.
- If Music Player is active or SD Memory Card data is being synchronized, confirmation appears → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **Enter**
- Press **#**#** to toggle Mobile Light **On** (Macro) and **Off**.
- Use **Enter** to adjust Brightness.

2 Frame text on Display

- Adjust to frame text in []. Letters at the ends may be distorted.
- Text mode is set to **Auto** each time Text Scanner is activated. Change the mode if text is distorted in **Auto** (such as white text in black background).
- Change Auto Focus mode if text does not appear properly.
- Press **Enter** to toggle text mode among **Standard Text (A)**, **Reversed Text (A)** and **Auto**.
- Press **Enter** to toggle Auto Focus mode among **Standard**, **Manual** and **Macro**.



Focus Adjustment Bar (Better focus in darker blue)

Tip

For Focus Lock, see **P.7-8**. For manual focus, see **P.7-28**.

3 Press

After focusing automatically (see P.7-8), mobile camera scans text.
When multiple lines are captured, use to select a line. (Text Scanner reads one line per scan.)
Press to cancel → Repeat from Step 2 on P.16-37

4 Press

Text Scanner reads the text.

5 Scan results appear

Handset automatically recognizes scan results as a Web Address, Mail Address, Phone Number or Roman Text. If handset setting is incorrect, enter the correct mode.

- To change mode, select **Change Mode** → Press → Select a type → Press
(Scan results and alternatives list change accordingly.)
- To edit, select **Select/Edit** → Press → Text entry window opens → Move cursor to the character to edit → Select an alternative from the list or enter the correction directly from Keypad → Press
- To start over, press **Retry** → Choose **Yes** → Press → Repeat from Step 2 on P.16-37



If Text Exceeds Limit
Exceeds Limit Edit Text appears and overage is truncated.

6 Select and press

• Scan results can be used as follows:

URL	Access Mobile Internet, copy
Mail Address	Send mail, save to Phone Book, copy
Phone Number	Dial, save to Phone Book, copy

- Using Scan Results: see P.16-32
- To change font size, see P.16-31 "Font & Image Size"



- To scan additional text, press **Menu** → Select **Continue** or **Add** → Press
 - Select **Continue** to enter additional text. (Mode remains the same.)
 - Select **Add** to enter text after a line break.
- **Continue** and **Add** are disabled once 256 bytes have been scanned.



Text over 35 letters may be difficult to read even within limit.

Scan during Text Entry

Scan text during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press **Menu** → Press **Scan** → Select **Text Scanner** → Press → Perform from Step 2 on P.16-37



If handset is too hot, **Heat Warning: Camera Temporarily Disabled** appears and mobile camera cannot be activated. If handset becomes too hot while scanning, **Temperature High Closing Camera** appears and scanning ends.

Battery Saving

Power Saving

Use Power Saving to reduce transmission signal strength.

- When Power Saving is active, other parties may not be able to hear you at the beginning of a call.
- Power Saving is active by default.

Index Menu ► **Functions** ► **Settings 1** ► **Battery Saving** ► **Power Saving**

1 Choose and press

- To cancel Power Saving, choose **Off** → Press

Panel Saving

Use Panel Saving to place handset in hibernation mode after a period of inactivity. This will extend Battery Time. Period of inactivity can be specified between 2 and 20 minutes. Handset may not enter Panel Saving mode depending on its status, such as during calls or when using Vodafone live!.

Setting Panel Saving

Handset enters Panel Saving mode after five minutes of inactivity by default.

Index Menu ► **Functions** ► **Settings 1** ► **Battery Saving** ► **Panel Saving** ► **On/Off**

1 Choose and press

- To cancel Panel Saving, select **Off (Light Low)** or **Off (Light Off)** → Press (Skip the following step.)

2 Enter time (02 - 20 minutes) and press

Panel Saving Mode

- Display shuts down.
 - Pressing a key or receiving a call cancels Panel Saving mode (cancel Panel Saving mode first for Keypad operations).
 - If handset is closed (clamshell closed) in Panel Saving mode, the sound for **Power On** in Sound Effects settings (see P.9-6) rings. Open handset to cancel Panel Saving mode.

Tip Set shorter time to extend Battery Time.

Flash Small Light (Orange)

Small Light does not flash in Panel Saving mode by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Battery Saving* ▶ *Panel Saving* ▶ *LED Indicator*

- 1 Select **LED Indicator On** and press **Enter**
 - To cancel, select **LED Indicator Off** ▶ Press **Enter**

Calculator

Use Calculator for basic arithmetic, percentage, and tax calculation.

• Key Assignments:

+ (Add)		RM (Recall Memory)	
- (Subtract)		M+ (Add Memory)	
x (Multiply)		. (Decimal)	
÷ (Divide)		+/- (Switch)	
= (Equal)		% (Percent)	
C-CE (Clear)		TAX (Tax)	
CM (Clear Memory)			

• Tax rate is 5% by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2*

- 1 Select **Calculator** and press **Enter**
 - Alternatively, in Standby, enter any number, then press **Enter** to open Calculator.
 - To change tax rate, enter rate (01 - 99%) ▶ Press **Enter** for 1+ seconds

2 Press **Enter** to end

Saved Information

- Copy calculation results or numbers saved in Memory to text entry windows.
 - In a text entry window, press **Enter** **Menu** ▶ Press **Saved Information** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **Calculator** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Perform Step 7 on P.4-16**

- Tip**
- Entered numbers, results and numbers saved in Memory are not affected by incoming calls.
 - Press **Memory** to clear Memory before starting Memory calculations.
 - Numbers saved in Memory remain even if Calculator is closed, but are cleared when handset power is turned off.

Spending Memo

Use Spending Memo to add expenses, such as travel expenses.

- Enter up to 31 entries (up to 30,999,969 yen in total, 999,999 yen per entry).
- Spending Memo cannot be opened during a call.

Entry Enter monetary figure in Standby

Enter amount ▶ Press **Memory** ▶ **Select a category** ▶ Press **Enter**

- The entry date and time is automatically saved.
- If Clock is unset (see P.1-26), entry date and time will be saved as --/-- --:--.

Totals Check entries

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Spending Memo*

Select **Totals** ▶ Press **Enter**

- Use **Up** to scroll through entries.
- To edit entry item name or change entry amount ▶ Press **Enter** **Menu** ▶ Select **New Item** or **Change Total** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Edit ▶ Press **Enter**

Delete Delete entries

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Spending Memo* ▶ *Totals*

Select an entry ▶ Press **Enter** **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete Item** or **Delete All** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **Enter**

New Item

Rename categories

Index Menu

► *Functions* ► *Settings 2* ► *Spending Memo* ► *New Item* ► *Select a category*

Edit ► Press

- Enter up to 10 single-byte characters.
- Clear the name and press . Default name returns.

Pen Light

Use handset as a flashlight.

Illuminate

Illuminate Pen Light

In Standby, double-press

To turn off, press , , or

Pen Light Settings

Change Lighting Time and color

Default Lighting Time: 1 Minute, Color: Lychee (white)

Index Menu

► *Briefcase* ► *Pen Light* ► *Pen Light Settings*

Lighting Time

Select **Lighting Time** ► Press ► Select time ► Press

Color

Select **Color** ► Press ► Select a color ► Press

Select a color and press **Light** to check the color.

Note

- Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.
- Pen light cannot be used when:
 - Mobile camera is active
 - Key Guard is set
 - Keypad Lock is set
 - During calls
 - Receiving mail
 - Recording on Voice Recorder
 - SMAF file is active
 - Calling/Sending
 - Stopwatch is active
 - Kitchen Timer is active
 - TV or FM is active
 - Playing melodies

Tip

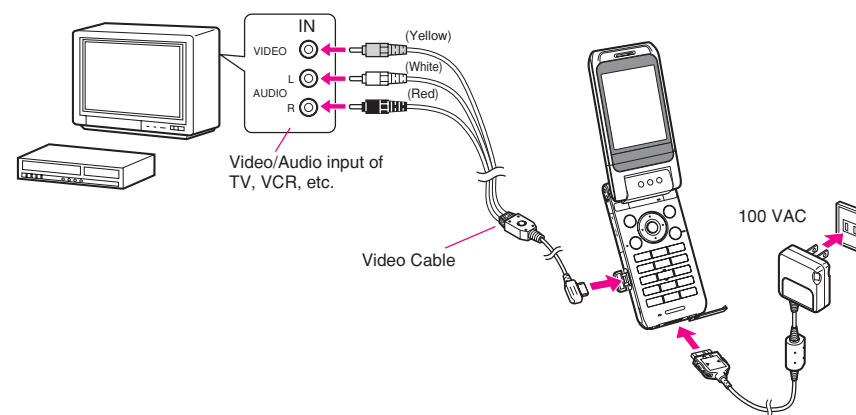
- Pen Light goes off and Display Backlight illuminates for incoming calls, messages, etc.
- Backlight illuminates after Lighting Time when a V-Application is active and **Backlight** in V-Appli Settings (see **P.12-3**) is **Always Active**.
- When handset is closed, opening handset turns off Pen Light.
- Select shorter Lighting Time to extend Battery Time.

Viewing Images on Other Devices

Connect handset to TV, VCR, etc. to view images and compatible V-Applications (see **P.10-5**) saved on handset or SD Memory Card, or display functions using MC Sensor.

- Use the supplied Video Cable to connect to other devices.
- Using non-specified cables may cause malfunctions or damage.
- Some images (recorded TV program, captured TV pictures, etc.) and sounds do not play on other devices.
- Camera mode files and V-Applications do not appear on handset Display while viewing on other devices.
- Not available when handset is closed (clamshell closed).

Connecting to Other Devices



Activating Video Out

Connect handset to other devices beforehand. Video Out is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings*

1 Select **Video Out** and press **⊙**

- To toggle display size, select **Display Size** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select **Original Size** or **Enlarge** ▶ Press **⊙**
- To rotate images, select **Rotate Image** ▶ Press **⊙** ▶ Select from **Use Current** to **270°** ▶ Press **⊙**

2 Choose **On** and press **⊙**

- Image appears on handset at the same time.
- To deactivate Video Out, choose **Off** ▶ Press **⊙**

Note

- Observe the following when connecting to other devices or disconnecting handset:
 - Turn off the device first
 - Connect Video Cable only to the video/audio inputs of the device and Video Out of V603SH
 - Insert Video Cable securely. To disconnect, grasp the plug and pull gently.
 - Do not pull, twist or bend Video Cable to avoid damaging the cable and handset Video Out
- While Video Out is in use, control the volume on the connected device. Turn down the volume before disconnecting from handset.
- Images may be noisy or distorted depending on the device. Images may be cropped vertically when enlarged.
- Video Out is deactivated if Headphones or Optical Conversion Cable are connected to Optical Digital/Line In Connector.

Tip

- Battery drains faster when Video Out is in use.
- Unsaved still images or video images cannot be exported.
- While playing a Video Camera mode video on other devices, press **⌂**. Video Out is deactivated and the video plays on handset from the beginning.
- Phone Book entries, Phone Book Entry List, Data Folder image list and Mail Box windows cannot be exported when an invalid image is included.
- Web information cannot be exported.

Slide Show

When using Slide Show (see **P.13-22**) with Video Out **On**, still images appear sequentially on the connected device at the same time. Slide Show Wipe (see **P.13-22**) is disabled on the device.

Headphones (with Built-in TV Antenna)

Initiating Calls

Use Call Button on Headphones (with built-in TV antenna) to call the number saved in Memory No. 000 (see **P.5-5**).

1 Plug Headphones into handset

2 Press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds

- The number is dialed.

3 Press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds

- Call ends. Alternatively, press **⊙** to disconnect call.
- Closing handset does not end the call.

Note

If Memory Number 000 is a Secret Mode entry, activate Secret Mode to call it (see **P.15-7**).

Tip

- Cancel Keypad Lock and Phone Book Lock, and stop recording TV/FM to place calls (see **P.15-2 - 15-3, P.6-8** and **P.6-14**).
- Do not wrap cord around handset or Antenna. This may cause malfunction. Noise interference occurs if cord is close to Antenna.
- Plug in Headphones firmly. If not, sounds may not be heard.

Answering Calls

1 Plug Headphones into handset

Ring Tone sounds from Headphones only or from both Headphones and handset speaker depending on the setting (see **P.16-46**).

2 Press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds

- Perform Step 3 above to end the call.


Ringer Out

When Headphones are connected to handset, Ring Tone sounds from Headphones and handset speaker. To disable speaker, follow these steps.

Earphone/Speaker is set by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Ringer Out*

1 Select **1 Earphone** and press

To use Headphones and speaker, select **2 Earphone/Speaker** ▶ Press 



Even if **Earphone** is selected, when Headphones are not connected Ring Tone sounds from speaker.

Fax & PC Transmissions

Fax Transmissions

Use handset for fax transmissions via data/fax card

Connect a data/fax card

- **FAX COM.** appears during G3 FAX transmissions.

PC Transmissions

Use handset for PC transmissions via data/fax card

Connect a data/fax card

- **MODEM COM.** appears during PC transmissions.



Use handset for fax or PC transmissions only when signal conditions are stable.



- Sign-in window may differ by data/fax card.
- Handset supports 9,600 bps high-speed data transmissions.
- To connect data/fax cards to fax machines or PCs, see the manuals for the device.



Optional Services

Optional Services Overview

- When handset is out-of-range, access Optional Services from a touch-tone landline.
- For details, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.18-21).

Call Forwarding	When you know you will be unable to receive calls to your handset, use Call Forwarding to automatically transfer calls to another phone number (see P.17-3)
Voice Mail	Unanswered calls are forwarded to Voice Mail. Retrieve caller messages from handset or any touch-tone phone, anytime. Voice Mail indicator appears on handset after message is recorded (see P.17-4).
Call Waiting	Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls when the line is already engaged. After the tone, place the current call on hold and answer the second, or alternate between calls (see P.17-6).
3 Way Calling	Open a second line while the first is engaged. Switch back and forth between two lines or talk on both simultaneously. Create a conference call by adding another party to an existing conversation (see P.17-7).
Caller ID	Use Caller ID to identify callers before answering. Show or hide your own phone number when placing calls. When no Caller ID is sent, the reason appears.

Call Forwarding

- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be used at the same time.
- Initiating Call Forwarding cancels Voice Mail.

Set Fwd Number Save a forwarding number

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Call Forwarding* ▶ *Set Fwd Number*

Enter a phone number ▶ **Press** ●

Saved number appears following **Connecting to Network...**

- Include the area code for landline phone numbers.



Phone Numbers Beginning with the Following Numbers Cannot be Saved:

- **1** (Public Service Numbers: 110, 119, 118, etc.)
- **0120** (Toll-free numbers)
- **0990** (Fee-based services: Dial Q2, etc.)

Start Fwd Initiate Call Forwarding

■ Save a forwarding number beforehand.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Call Forwarding* ▶ *Start Fwd*

Select 1 Call (handset rings/vibrates before forwarding calls) or

2 No Call (calls are forwarded immediately) ▶ **Press** ●

テンソウサービス ON (Call Forwarding On) appears following **Connecting to Network...**

- **2 No Call** is currently available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.

Cancel Secretary Cancel Call Forwarding

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Cancel Secretary*

Choose 1 Yes ▶ **Press** ●

ヒショサービス OFF (Secretary Service Off) appears following **Connecting to Network...**

Check Secretary Check Call Forwarding status

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Check Secretary*

Choose 1 Yes ▶ **Press** ●

Service status appears.

Incoming Calls while Call Forwarding is Active

- To answer calls, press ☺ while handset is ringing/vibrating.
 - Calls are forwarded immediately when **No Call** is set. (Available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.)

Voice Mail

For details, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.18-21).

- Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be used at the same time.
- Initiating Voice Mail cancels Call Forwarding.

Voice Mail

Initiate Voice Mail

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Voice Mail*

Select **1** **Call** (handset rings/vibrates before forwarding calls) or
2 **No Call** (calls are forwarded immediately) ▶ Press **☉**

ルスパンサービス ON (Voice Mail On) appears following *Connecting to Network...*

- **2** **No Call** is currently available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.

Incoming Calls while Voice Mail is Active

- To answer calls, press **☺** while handset is ringing/vibrating.
 - Calls are forwarded immediately when **No Call** is set. (Available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas, and when used in those areas.)

When Voice Mail is Canceled (Kanto Koshin, Tokai and Kansai)

- While handset is ringing/vibrating, press **☉☺** to forward the call. (This function is for one time only. Voice Mail remains canceled.)
- When the call is not successfully forwarded, **Unavailable** appears and Incoming Call Notice returns.
- When Side Key Settings (see P.16-3) is set to **5** **Forward Voice Mail**, calls can be forwarded by pressing Side Key for 1+ seconds (with clamshell closed) while handset is ringing/vibrating.

Cancel Secretary

Cancel Voice Mail

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Cancel Secretary*

Choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press **☉**

ヒショサービス OFF (Secretary Service Off) appears following *Connecting to Network...*

Play Voice Mail

Check Voice Mail messages

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Play Voice Mail*

Choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press **☉** ▶ Press **☺**

- Follow the guidance for further operations after handset connects to Voice Mail Center.
 - Press **☺** when finished.
 - To change Voice Mail Center number, press **☉** ▶ Select **Functions** ▶ Press **☉** ▶ Select **7** **Services** ▶ Press **☉** ▶ Select **7** **Play Voice Mail** ▶ Press **☉** ▶ Choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press **☉** ▶ Press **☺** ▶ Enter a number ▶ Press **☉** ▶ Press **☺**
 - Default: 1416



Tip ¹⁴¹⁶ disappears after messages are checked, unless they are checked from a touch-tone landline.

Check Secretary

Check Voice Mail status

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Check Secretary*

Choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press **☉**

Service status appears.

Ring Time

This function is not available for subscribers in Tohoku, Niigata, Chugoku and Shikoku areas.

Choose **Call** for Call Forwarding or Voice Mail and select Ring Time from 5 to 30 seconds (by 5 seconds).

- This function cannot be set from landlines or while handset is out-of-range or subscription area.
- This function is disabled when **No Call** is set. (**No Call** is available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.)

Ring Time

Set Ring Time for Call Forwarding or Voice Mail

Default 20 Seconds

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Ring Time*

Select Ring Time ▶ Press **☉**

トウロク (Saved) appears following *Connecting to Network...*

Note

Adjust Ring Time to set the response priority when using Call Forwarding or Voice Mail together with Message Recorder (see P.16-5).

Example: Ring time for Call Forwarding or Voice Mail: 10 seconds
Ring time for Message Recorder: 9 seconds

In this example, Message Recorder responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

If Message Recorder memory is full, Voice Mail will activate.

Call Waiting

Call Waiting On/Off Activate or cancel Call Waiting

■ Subscribers in Hokkaido, Hokuriku, Kyushu, Okinawa, Tohoku, Niigata, Chugoku and Shikoku areas cannot set this service from handsets (service itself is available).

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ➔ *Services* ➔ *Call Waiting*

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ➔ Press **●**

フリコミコール ON (Call Waiting On) or **フリコミコール OFF** (Call Waiting Off) appears following **Connecting to Network...**

Confirm Service Check Call Waiting status

■ Subscribers in Hokkaido, Hokuriku, Kyushu, Okinawa, Tohoku, Niigata, Chugoku and Shikoku areas cannot check the status from handsets (service itself is available).

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ➔ *Services* ➔ *Confirm Service*

Choose **1 Yes** ➔ Press **●**

フリコミコール ON (Call Waiting On) or **フリコミコール OFF** (Call Waiting Off) appears following **Connecting to Network...**

Incoming Calls Put Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2

When a tone sounds during a call, press **↶**

Press **↶** to switch between two lines.

Tip

Handset does not ring or vibrate for incoming calls while a line is engaged. A tone sounds from Earpiece and **Incoming Call** appears.

Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai Areas

■ When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is active, unanswered incoming calls are transferred to Voice Mail or the forwarding number. Call Waiting is disabled if **No Call** is selected, then all calls are transferred directly.

Ending a Call while Someone is on Hold

■ When **↶** is pressed, a beep sounds and **Caller on Hold** appears. Press **↶** or **↷** to talk with the party on hold.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

■ A beep sounds and **Caller on Hold** appears. Press **↶** or **↷** to talk with the party on hold.

3 Way Calling

Open Another Line Open another line during a call

Enter a phone number during a call ➔ Press **↶**

Line 2 is open. Line 1 is put on hold.

• Phone Book, Redial, Call History and Notepad Memory are available.

Switch Line Switch between two open lines

During a call, press **↶**

The line switches. The other line is put on hold.

• Press **↶** to toggle between two lines.

Ending a Call while Someone is on Hold

■ When **↶** is pressed, a beep sounds and **Caller on Hold** appears. Press **↶** or **↷** to talk with the party on hold.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

■ A beep sounds and **Caller on Hold** appears. Press **↶** or **↷** to talk with the party on hold.


Break Away (while Switching Lines)

Original call ends
Line 1 and Line 2 remain connected

■ Available for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.

While switching between two lines, press  → Select  Break Away → Press  → Choose  Yes → Press 

テソウカンリョウ (Break Away completed) appears. You are disconnected, but Line 1 and 2 remain connected. (If you made the call, you are charged for the remaining call.)

• Press  to return to Standby.

3 Way Calling

Use two lines simultaneously

Press  while switching between two lines → Select  3 Way Calling → Press 

• You cannot switch lines (see P.17-7) once shifted to 3 Way Calling.


Break Away (from 2 Open Lines)

Original call ends
Line 1 and Line 2 remain connected

■ Available for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.

Press  during 3 Way Calls → Select  Break Away → Press  → Choose  Yes → Press 

テソウカンリョウ (Break Away completed) appears. You are disconnected, but Line 1 and 2 remain connected. (If you made the call, you are charged for the remaining call.)

• Press  to return to Standby.

Ending a Call during 3 Way Calls

■ Both lines are disconnected.

Line 1 Ends during 3 Way Calls

■ Line 2 remains connected.



Appendix

Function Shortcuts

Settings for items with gray background are affected by Reset.

¹ Also available during calls.

² Currently not available in Hokkaido, Hokuriku, Kyushu and Okinawa areas.

³ Currently not available in Tohoku, Niigata, Chugoku and Shikoku areas.

⁴ Available only when switching between two open lines. **Break Away** is currently not available in Hokkaido, Tohoku, Niigata, Hokuriku, Chugoku, Shikoku, Kyushu and Okinawa areas.

Functions Menu	Description
0. My Number ¹	Open handset phone number
1. Sounds	Call Functions, Volume, Sound Effects, etc.
2. Privacy	Manage handset security with Keypad Lock, Auto Key Lock, etc.
3. Settings 1	Display settings such as Light Settings, Group Settings and Side Key Settings
4. Settings 2	Display settings including User Dictionary and Manner Settings
5. Clock	Alarm, Clock Display, etc.
6. Charges	Call Charge, Total Talk Time, etc.
7. Services	Activate Optional Services such as Voice Mail and Call Forwarding
8. Vodafone live!	Access Mail, Web, Station, V-Applications and Data Folder
Entry Search	Search Phone Book entries (see P.5-14)
Save Entry	Add entries to Phone Book (see P.5-3)
Redial	Place calls from Redial (see P.2-4)
Call History	Open records of received calls (see P.2-16)
Notepad Memory	Show numbers saved during a call (see P.2-15)

1. Sounds

Function	Default	Refer to
0. Call Functions	Refer to the table on P.9-2 . Delayed Ringer: Off, Close to End Call: On, Anykey Answer: On	P.9-2, P.2-12, P.2-3, P.2-6
1. Volume ¹	Level 5	P.2-13
3. Sound Effects	Refer to the table in "Sound Effects"	P.9-6
5. Ringer Out	Earphone/Speaker	P.16-46
6. Speaker ¹	Off	P.9-22
7. Original Tones	-	P.9-13
8. Instrument Effects	-	P.9-21
9. Tone Octave	-	P.9-22

2. Privacy

Function	Default	Refer to
0. Keypad Lock	Off	P.15-2
1. Auto Key Lock	Off	P.15-3
2. Secret Mode ¹	Off	P.15-7
3. Phone Book Lock	Off	P.15-3
4. Restrict Dial	Off	P.15-3
5. Accept Call	Off	P.15-5
6. Reject Call	All Off	P.15-5
7. Reset All	-	P.15-8
8. Change Code	-	P.15-2
9. Reset Defaults	-	P.15-8

3. Settings 1

Function	Default	Refer to
0. Guide ¹	-	P.1-33
1. Memory	-	P.5-6, P.13-3
2. Off-Line Mode	Off	P.3-6
3. Battery Saving	Power Saving: On, Panel Saving On/Off: On (5 minutes), LED Indicator: Off	P.16-39
4. Light Settings	Backlight: On (15 seconds), Keypad Light: On (15 seconds), In-Car Backlight: Off, Brightness: Level 4	P.8-6 - 8-7
5. 言語選択 (Language)	日本語 (Japanese)	P.8-10
6. Font Settings	Font Size: All Standard, Font Weight: Standard, Font Style: Standard	P.8-4
7. Group Settings	-	P.5-12
8. Signal Alert	Off	P.16-2
9. Side Key Settings	Incoming Calls: Off (Ⓜ, Ⓢ, ◀ and ▶), Message Recorder (Ⓞ) Standby: Off	P.16-3

4. Settings 2

Function	Default	Refer to
0. Display Settings	Wallpaper: Off; Display Images: All Off; Power On Message: Off; Display Patterns: Background 1, Menu Frame 1, Menu Design 1, Cursor 1; Show Indicators: On, Icon 1 (Battery Level), Icon 1 (Signal Strength); Video Out: Off; Index Menu Display: 3D-1; Viewer Display: Orientation 1; Dialing Display: 2D	P.8-2, P.8-5, P.8-7 - 8-10, P.16-44
1. Spending Memo ¹	-	P.16-41
2. In-Car Recorder	On	P.16-5
3. User Dictionary	-	P.4-14
4. Answer Time	9 Seconds	P.16-5
5. Info Menu Settings	Incoming Light: All Mobile Light, Time Out Setting: Time out Off	P.2-19
6. Manner Settings	Message Recorder: On, Ring Tone Level: All Silent, Vibration: All On, LED Indicator: Small Light, Whisper Mode: On, Sound Volume: Silent, Alarm Volume: Silent, Alarm Vibration: On, V-Appli Volume: Silent, V-Appli Vibration: On	P.3-4
7. MC Settings	M-key Settings: Off, Viewer Setting: Cancel MC Sensor	P.16-4
8. Animation	Screen Animation: Off, Standby Animation: On, Vodafone live!: All On	P.8-9 - 8-10
9. Calculator	-	P.16-40

5. Clock

Function	Default	Refer to
0. Alarm	-	P.16-8
1. Auto Power On	Off	P.16-12
2. Auto Power Off	Off	P.16-13
3. Clock Display	Large 1	P.8-3
5. Stopwatch	-	P.16-24
6. Kitchen Timer	-	P.16-25
9. Clock Settings ¹	-	P.1-26

6. Charges

Function	Default	Refer to
0. Total Charges	0 Yen	P.2-21
1. Call Charge	0 Yen	P.2-21
2. Total Talk Time	0 hours 0 minutes	P.2-20
3. Call Time	0 minutes 0 seconds	P.2-20
4. Instant Display	Off	P.2-20 - 2-21

7. Services

Function	Default	Refer to
0. Ring Time ³	20 Seconds	P.17-5
1. Call Forwarding	-	P.17-3
2. Voice Mail	Call (Voice Mail active)	P.17-4
3. Cancel Secretary	-	P.17-3 - 17-4
4. Check Secretary	-	P.17-3, P.17-5
5. Call Waiting ^{2, 3}	-	P.17-6
6. Confirm Service ^{2, 3}	-	P.17-6
7. Play Voice Mail	-	P.17-5
8. 3 Way Calling ⁴	-	P.17-7
9. Setup Preset	International Call: 0046010	P.2-5

8. Vodafone live!

Function	Default	Refer to
1. Mail	-	Vodafone live!
2. Web	-	Vodafone live!
3. Station	-	Vodafone live!
4. V-Appli	-	Vodafone live!
5. Data Folder	File View (List)	P.13-5
6. Network Settings	-	Vodafone live!

Other Settings Affected by Reset

Function	Default
Manner Mode	Canceled
Message Recorder	Canceled
Phone Book Search Method	Memory No. Search
Encode	Phone Book, Mail, Schedule: All Off
Pen Light	Lighting Time: 1 Minute, Color: Lychee
Schedule View	Day Detail/Stamps
Scan Code/Text Scanner Set Display Size	Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100%
User Shortcut: Keypad (Long Press)/Motion Pattern	Entry Search: [1] [2] /-, Auto Reply: [2] [3] /-, Calculator: [3] [4] /-, Alarm: [4] [5] /-, Call Functions: [5] [6] /-, Display Settings: [6] [7] /-, Inbox: [7] [8] /Up & Up (▲ ▲), 2-Touch Mail: [8] [9] /Left & Left (◀ ◀), TVnano: [*] [0] /-, V-Appli Library: [0] /-
TV/FM	Volume: 1, Channel: see P.6-16 , Skip Channel: Off, Set URL: Off, Disable TV & Disable FM: Off, Auto Off Timer: 30 Minutes, Close to Turn Off: Off, Incoming Settings: Show Message, Sound Out: Earphone Priority, TV Backlight: Level 3, Horizontal/Vertical Display: Vertical, Display Direction: Orientation 1, Save to: Handset, Incoming Calls: Receive Calls, Frame Count: One Frame, Interval Rate: Standard
Camera	Auto Save: Off

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset does not turn on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is pressed for 1+ seconds? Is battery low or dead? Is battery installed? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press for 1+ seconds. Charge battery or install a charged battery. Install battery properly.
Keypad does not respond	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Key Guard active? (appears) Is Keypad Lock active? (appears) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cancel Key Guard (see P.1-25). Cancel Keypad Lock (see P.15-2).
Beep continues after dialing and call cannot be connected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Did you dial the number including the area code or first 0? Is handset out-of-range? (appears) Is handset off-line? (appears) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dial the number including the area code or 0. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. Cancel Off-Line Mode (see P.3-6).
OUT appears and cannot make calls from handset	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is handset out-of-range? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
Calls are interrupted or cut	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is signal weak? Is battery low or dead? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. Charge battery or install a charged battery.
Cannot enter numbers from handset Keypad	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Key Guard active? (appears) Is Keypad Lock active? (appears) Is Restrict Dial On? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cancel Key Guard (see P.1-25). Cancel Keypad Lock (see P.15-2). Cancel Restrict Dial (see P.15-3).
Cannot place calls from Phone Book	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the number saved as Secret Mode entry? Is Phone Book Lock active? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activate Secret Mode (see P.15-7). Cancel Phone Book Lock (see P.15-3).
Hear noise while talking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This may happen when signal is weak or unstable. 	-
Display flickers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Display may flicker under fluorescent lights. 	-
Display is dark when Backlight is off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Panel construction characteristic; not a malfunction. 	-
Sound does not come from handset speaker	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Manner Mode set? (appears) Is Video Out set to On? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cancel Manner Mode (see P.3-3). Set Video Out to Off.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Cannot charge battery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Rapid Charger connected correctly to handset or Desktop Holder? Is Rapid Charger plugged in firmly? Is battery installed? Is handset in Desktop Holder correctly? Are handset, battery, Charger Terminals & Connection Terminal (Desktop Holder) and External Device Connector clean? Battery may not be charged if temperature is not within 5°C to 35°C. Battery has run out or is defective. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plug in again. Plug in again. Install battery properly. Insert correctly. Clean with a cotton swab. Handle within ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C. Replace battery with a new one.
Charging time is shorter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Charging time shortens when battery is not empty. 	-
Handset or accessories are hot	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rapid Charger or Desktop Holder may heat up while charging. Handset may also heat up if used for long periods. This is normal if they are not extremely hot. Handset may heat up while TV/ FM is used. This is normal if they are not extremely hot. 	-
Battery runs out quickly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Battery runs out faster depending on the environment (temperatures, charging/signal conditions), usage or settings. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to "Estimated Hours of Use (fully charged battery)" and "Extend Battery Time" (see P.1-16 - 1-17).
Functions using MC Sensor (MC Cursor, MC Shortcut, Shake Counter, Shake Sound, Compass and Full Auto) do not work properly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is MC Sensor adjusted properly? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjust MC Sensor (see P.16-4).

Tip For repairs and after-sales services, contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance (see **P.18-21**).

Indicators & Recharge Warning

OUT appears

Handset is out-of-range. Move for a better signal.

appears

Handset is in Off-Line Mode (see P.3-6).

Cancel the setting.

Recharge Battery appears and short beeps sound

Battery is low (see P.1-17 - 1-18).

Charge or replace battery immediately.

appears

Key Guard is active (see P.1-25).

Cancel to use Keypad. Incoming calls suspend Key Guard. Press keys for Anykey

Answer to answer calls (see P.2-6).

appears

Keypad Lock is active (see P.15-2).

Cancel to place calls, etc. Press keys for Anykey Answer to answer calls (see P.2-6).

Character Code List

Table with columns for First Three Digits and Last Digit (0-9), containing Japanese character mappings for various phone numbers.

Table with 10 columns: First Three Digits, Last Digit (0-9), and corresponding characters. It lists various characters and their combinations for the first three digits (262-326 and 327-393).

Table with 10 columns: First Three Digits, Last Digit (0-9), and corresponding characters. It lists various characters and their combinations for the first three digits (393-447 and 447-499).

Table with 10 columns: First Three Digits, Last Digit (0-9), and corresponding characters. It lists various characters and their combinations for the first three digits (447-499 and 499-558).

Table with 10 columns: First Three Digits, Last Digit (0-9), and corresponding characters. It lists various characters and their combinations for the first three digits (558-629 and 629-690).

Table with 10 columns: First Three Digits, Last Digit (0-9), and corresponding characters. It lists various characters and their combinations for the first three digits (690-761 and 761-822).

■ Rapid Charger

Power Source	100 VAC, 50/60 Hz
Power Consumption	8 VA
Output Voltage/Current	5.6 VDC/500 mA
Charging Temperature	5°C - 35°C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 48 x 17 x 46 mm (without protruding parts, cord)
Cord Length	Approximately 1.5 m

■ Desktop Holder

Input Voltage/Current	5.6 VDC/500 mA
Output Voltage/Current	5.6 VDC/500 mA
Charging Temperature	5°C - 35°C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 58.5 x 25 x 123 mm (without protruding parts)

■ Battery

Voltage	3.7 V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	750 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 35.5 x 5.8 x 39.7 mm (without protruding parts)

■ Headphones (with Built-in TV Antenna)


Weight	Approximately 23 g
Cord Length	Approximately 1.6 m

Index

Numbers

3 Way Calling 17-7

A

Accept Call 15-5
 Access Link (TV/FM) 6-23
 Acquire Dictionary..... 4-14
 Action Item 16-16
 Activate FM 6-23
 Activate TV 6-23
 Add Date..... 7-46
 Adjust MC Sensor..... 16-4
 Alarm 16-8
 Animation Tool 13-12, 13-18
 Answer Time (Message Recorder) 16-5
 Anykey Answer..... 2-6
 Assign  Function 1-31
 Attach 1/4 Size 7-43, 13-10
 Attach 240 x 320
 (Camera mode image) 7-44
 Attach Full Image..... 7-43, 13-10
 Attach Screen 13-10
 Attach Split Mail..... 7-43, 13-10
 Attach Thumbnail
 (Camera mode image) 7-44
 Auto Bracket 7-16
 Auto Focus..... 7-8, 7-28
 Auto Key Lock 15-3
 Auto Off Timer 6-20
 Auto Power Off 16-13
 Auto Power On..... 16-12
 Auto Protect (Schedule)..... 16-18
 Auto Reply..... 5-11
 Auto Reset..... 7-32
 Auto Save..... 7-32
 Autorun..... 12-12

B

Backlight 8-6
 barcode..... 16-29
 battery..... 1-15

Battery Saving 16-39
 Battery Strength 1-17 - 1-18
 Bit Rate..... 10-10
 Bookmark (E-Book)..... 13-44
 Break Away..... 17-8
 Brightness (Display) 8-6
 Brightness (mobile camera)..... 7-29

C

Calculator..... 16-40
 Calendar..... 8-3
 Calendar (creating) 7-48
 Call Charge 2-21
 Call Forwarding 17-3
 Call Functions 9-2
 Call History 2-16
 Call in Progress..... 2-16
 Call Time 2-20
 Call Waiting..... 17-6
 Caller ID (sending/blocking)..... 2-2
 calls (ending) 2-2
 calls (placing) 2-2, 2-8
 Camera mode 7-9, 7-11
 Cancel/Check Secretary 17-3 - 17-5
 Capture Settings 6-11
 Center Access Code 1-34
 Centered..... 8-2
 Chaku-Uta 13-36
 Change Format (images) 13-30
 Change to Vnote..... 4-20
 Character Code (entering)..... 4-9
 Character Code (list)..... 18-9
 clamshell closed 1-10, 2-11
 clamshell open 1-10
 Clipping..... 7-37
 Clock Display..... 8-3
 Clock Settings 1-26
 Close to End Call..... 2-3
 Close to Turn Off (TV/FM)..... 6-21
 Combine Split Mail 13-34
 Compass 16-29
 Composite..... 13-31

Confirm Service (Call Waiting)	17-6
Continuous Mode.....	16-28
Copy (text)	4-16
Count.....	16-26
Count Down.....	16-26
Create QR Code	16-34
cursor.....	1-26
Cursor (Display Patterns).....	8-7
Cut (images)	13-24
Cut (text)	4-16

D

Data Folder	13-2
Delayed Ringer.....	2-12
Delete Back.....	7-39
Delete Front.....	7-39
Delete Posterior/Previous	4-16
Desktop Holder	1-22
Dialing Display	8-10
digital zoom	7-6
Disable FM	6-21
Disable TV.....	6-21
Display	1-8
Display Images.....	8-5
Display Patterns.....	8-7
DPOF.....	7-45

E

E-Animation.....	13-15
Earpiece volume	2-13
E-Book	13-42
Edit	7-36, 11-8
Effects	13-26
Emoticons.....	4-8
English.....	8-10
Enlarge Display	8-2

F

Face Arrange	13-27
fast forward/reverse.....	10-15, 11-7, 13-36
FAX transmissions	16-46
File Cabinet.....	13-2
FM.....	6-2
Focus Lock	7-8
Font Settings.....	8-4

Format Card	12-6
Forward Voice Mail.....	2-11, 17-4
Frame (saved images).....	13-29
Frame (Sha-mail mode).....	7-15
Frame In/Out	7-41
Frames (Display Patterns)	8-7
Free Text.....	13-25
Full Auto	6-24
Full Auto (Viewer Display)	6-22, 8-8
Function Shortcuts.....	18-2
Functions Menu	1-28

G

Group Ring Tone (Phone Book).....	5-12
Group Search (Phone Book)	5-15
Group Settings (Phone Book)	5-12
Guide	1-33

H

handset codes	1-34
handset phone number (opening My Number).....	2-22
Handy Features.....	1-28
Headphones (with built-in TV antenna).....	16-45
Hide Picture.....	6-22
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion	4-12
hold (incoming calls).....	2-9
Horizontal Display (TV)	6-24
Horizontal/Vertical Display (TV)	6-24

I

Image Quality	7-30
Image Size (mobile camera)	7-29
images (reducing size).....	13-24
Inbox Auto Sort.....	5-10
In-Car Backlight.....	8-7
In-Car Charger	1-23
In-Car Recorder	16-5
incoming calls.....	2-6
incoming calls (answering)	2-6
incoming calls (Call Waiting).....	17-6
Incoming Calls (FM)	6-15
incoming calls (rejecting)	2-9

Incoming Calls (TV).....	6-9
Incoming Notice.....	5-9
Incoming Settings (Music Player) ...	10-17
Incoming Settings (TV/FM)	6-21
Incoming Tone	11-8, 13-35, 13-37
Index Menu.....	1-27
Index Menu Display	8-9
Index Print.....	7-46
Information Menu	2-17
Infrared	14-2
Input Method	4-9
Instrument Effects.....	9-17
International Call	2-5

J

Jump to Link (E-Book)	13-45
-----------------------------	-------

K

Katakana Search (Phone Book)	5-15
key assignments (text entry).....	4-3
Key Guard	1-25
Key Ops Guide (mobile camera)	7-31
Keypad Lock	15-2
Kitchen Timer.....	16-25

L

Language.....	8-10
LED Indicator (for sounds)	9-5
Light Settings.....	8-6
List (Data Folder files).....	13-5, 13-7
List File Names	13-5, 13-7
Local Contents.....	12-12

M

mail address.....	5-2
Mail Folder (Phone Book)	5-10
Manner Mode	3-3
Manual Focus.....	7-28
MC Cursor	16-4
MC Settings.....	16-4
MC Shortcut	16-22
MC Shortcut Tone.....	9-6
Memory No. Search	5-15
Memory Status.....	7-35, 12-11
menu	1-27

Menu Background.....	8-7
Menu Design.....	8-7
Merge Panorama	13-33
Message Recorder	2-10, 16-5
Mic Level (Voice Recorder)	11-4
Mic Settings (mobile camera)	7-30
Missed Call	2-16
M-key Settings.....	16-4
MNG File Conversion.....	13-14
mobile camera	7-2
Mobile Light	7-27
Monitor Level.....	10-10
Motion Camera mode.....	7-19, 7-21
Motion Control.....	1-13
motion pattern	1-14, 16-23
Movie Mask	7-16, 7-24
Movie Sha-mail mode	7-19, 7-21
Moving Photo Frame.....	13-29
Multi Key	1-6
Multi Selector.....	i
Music Player	10-2
My Voice Memo	16-7

N

New Memo/Note	4-18 - 4-19
Notepad Memory	2-15
NOW ON AIR.....	6-14
Number of Copies	7-46

O

Off-Line Mode	3-6
One Hiragana Predictive Entry	4-13
One Hiragana Word Call	4-13
One-Hiragana Conversion.....	4-11
Optical Zoom	7-7, 7-28
Original Size (Camera mode image).....	7-33
Original Tones	9-9
Original Voice	9-8
out-of-range	18-8
Overlap mode	7-16
Owner Profile.....	2-22

P

Pager Code (entering).....	4-9
Pager Code (list).....	4-10

Panel Saving.....	16-39	Reset (information).....	2-19
Paste	4-16	Reset All	15-8
PC transmissions.....	16-46	Reset Defaults.....	15-8
Pen Light.....	16-42	Reset Learning.....	4-13
Personal Data.....	5-4	Restrict Dial.....	15-3
Personal Ring Tone	5-8	Ring Time.....	9-6
Phone Book.....	5-2	Ring Time (Call Forwarding & Voice Mail)	17-5
Phone Book (deleting entries).....	5-17	Ringer Out.....	16-46
Phone Book (editing).....	5-17	Rotate (Picture Effect).....	13-30
Phone Book (Memory No.).....	5-5	Rotate Thumb (Camera mode image) ..	7-13
Phone Book (Memory Status).....	5-6		
Phone Book (saving)	5-2	S	
Phone Book (searching).....	5-14	Sampling Frequency	10-11
Phone Book Entry List	5-14	Save as Thumb (Camera mode image)	7-13
Phone Book Lock.....	15-3	Save Dictionary.....	4-15
Phonetic Conversion	4-11	Save to.....	6-9, 6-15, 7-31
Photo (Phone Book)	5-4	Schedule.....	16-14
Pictograph	4-7	Screen Animation	8-9
Picture Call/Mail	5-10	SD Memory Card (opening files)	12-7 - 12-8
Picture Effect.....	13-23	Search by Reading (Phone Book).....	5-15
Play List	10-17	Secret Mode	15-7
Play Setting	10-16, 11-7, 13-37	Security Code	1-34
Play Voice Mail.....	17-5	Select 2 points	7-38
Postcard.....	7-47	Select Mode (mobile camera).....	7-31
Power On Message	8-10	Self Portrait position	1-11
power on/off	1-24	Self Timer	7-26
Power On/Off (Sound Effects)	9-6	Send All Push Tones.....	16-2
Power Saving	16-39	Send With Code.....	2-5
Predictive (conversion)	4-5	Sensitivity Level	16-27
Previous Usage (conversion)	4-5	Sent Auto Sort	5-10
Property	10-17, 13-11	Set Area	6-13
Push tones.....	16-2	Set Burst Mode	7-17
		Set Channels.....	6-16
Q		Set IR Password	14-3
Quick Conversion	4-12	Set LED to Sound	9-6
Quick Operation	1-32	Shake Counter	16-26
Quick Silent	2-7, 2-11	Shake Sound.....	16-28
		Sha-mail mode	7-9, 7-11
R		Shoot by Scene.....	7-29
Rapid Charger	1-21	Show Indicators.....	8-8
Record Settings (FM).....	6-15	Show Thumbnails (Camera mode image)	7-33
Record Settings (TV, Video Camera).6-9, 7-30		Show/Hide Indicators	

(Video Camera).....	7-25	Tone Octave.....	9-22
Shutter Click	7-25	Total Charges	2-21
Side Key Settings	16-3	Total Talk Time	2-20
Side Keys	i	Track Bookmarks	10-11
Signal Alert.....	16-2	Track Break Level	10-10
Simple Animation	13-12	Track Info Editing.....	10-18
Single Play Mode.....	16-28	Train	10-17, 11-7
Slide Show	13-22	Transfer All (SD Memory Card).....	12-10
Small Light	1-6	transferring/receiving files (Infrared).....	14-4 - 14-6
Snooze.....	16-9	TV.....	6-2
Soft Key	1-30	TV Backlight	6-23
Sound Effect (Music Player).....	10-16		
Sound Effects	9-6	U	
Sound Out (TV/FM).....	6-22	User Dictionary.....	4-14
Sound Volume	9-6	User Shortcut	16-22
Speaker.....	9-22		
Speaker Phone.....	9-22	V	
Specify DPOF Prints.....	7-45	V-Appli Vibration	3-5
Speed Dial	5-16	vFiles	13-38
Spending Memo.....	16-41	Vibration.....	9-4
Split Data	11-7	Vibration Pattern	9-5
Split Image 240 x 320 (120 x 160)....	13-31	Vibration Pattern	9-5
Standby	1-24	Video Camera mode.....	7-19, 7-21
Standby Animation.....	8-10	Video Out	16-44
Still Image (from Motion Camera video)	7-38	Viewer Display.....	6-22, 8-8
Stopwatch	16-24	Viewer position.....	1-11
SVG files.....	13-41	Viewer Setting	16-4
Switch Line (3 Way Calling).....	17-7	Vodafone live! Animation	8-9
Switch Position (TV/FM).....	6-19	Voice Folder.....	11-6
Symbols.....	4-7	Voice Mail.....	17-4
Synchro Recording	10-10	Voice Memo	16-7
Synchronize	12-12	Voice Recorder	11-2
T		W	
Telop Edit	7-39	Wallpaper	8-2
text (deleting)	4-15	Whisper Mode.....	3-4
text (editing).....	4-15		
text (entering).....	4-4		
text (entry modes)	4-2		
Text Memo.....	4-18		
Text Scanner	16-37		
Time Out Setting.....	2-19, 16-23		
Toggle Mask.....	13-45		
Toggle Preview	7-25		

Warranty & After-Sales Services

Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase V603SH.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read through contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

After-Sales Services

See **P.18-6** "Troubleshooting" before contacting us for repair. If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance (see **P.18-21**) of your subscription area and provide detailed description.

- During the warranty term, the repair is performed under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty term, repairs are performed if possible upon your request at your expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest **Vodafone shop** or **Vodafone Customer Center, General Information** (see **P.18-21**). Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.



- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Please keep a separate record of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

Customer Service

If you have questions about Vodafone handsets or services, please call **General Information**. For repairs, please call **Customer Assistance**.

Vodafone Customer Centers

From a Vodafone handset, dial toll free at
157 for General Information or
113 for Customer Assistance

Call these toll free numbers from landlines:

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎ 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎ 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎ 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane	General Information	☎ 0088-259-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-259-113
Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi	General Information	☎ 0088-247-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-247-113
Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎ 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-250-113

V603SH Instruction Manual

Basic Operations

April 2005, First Edition

Vodafone K.K.

For additional information, please visit a Vodafone shop.

Model: V603SH

Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation



Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handset, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always be sure to erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the V603SH.

- For proper handset use, read this manual beforehand.
- This manual has been produced for V603SH Vodafone live!
- Keep this manual in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible Vodafone services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

V603SH transmits at 1.5 GHz and is compatible with the Vodafone K.K. network.

This product is exclusively for use in Japan.

Note

- Copying this manual in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Manual content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this manual. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (see P.16-16) concerning unclear or missing information.

Symbols

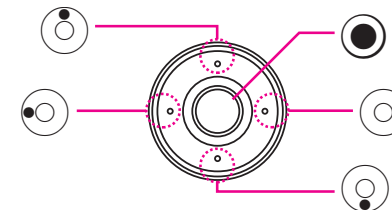
Multi Selector

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc.

In this manual, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown to the right.

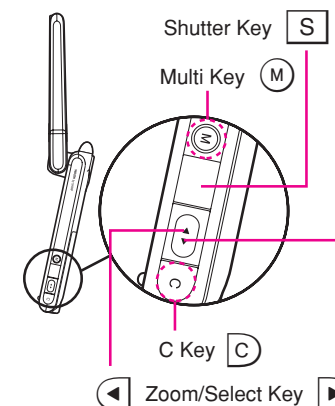
Basic Multi Selector Operations

- : Press or
- : Press or
- : Press , , or



Side Keys

Use Side Keys when Display is in Viewer position (see [Basic P.1-11](#)). In this manual, Side Keys are indicated as shown to the right. "S" is not inscribed on the actual Shutter Key.



Note

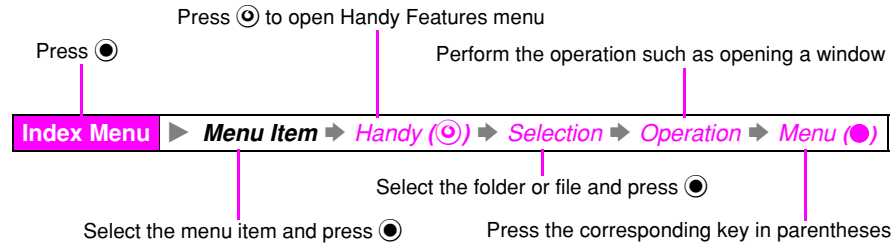
- In this manual, most operations are described with handset open (clamshell open: see [Basic P.1-10](#)).
- Sample screen shots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.

Page References

When **Basic** appears next to a page reference, indicated pages are in Basic Operations Manual. When only a page reference appears, indicated pages are in Vodafone live! Manual.

Abbreviated Steps

Handset operations starting from Index Menu are abbreviated as follows:



Contents

Symbols.....	i
Contents	iv

Vodafone live! Overview

1 Vodafone live! Overview	Vodafone live! Basics.....	1-2
	■ Vodafone live! Services	1-2
	■ Network Setup	1-4
	■ Handling Incoming Calls	1-4
	Customizing Handset Address.....	1-5
	Memory Status	1-5
	Disabling Vodafone live!.....	1-6
	Changing Center Address	1-6
	● Mail	1-6
	● Web	1-6
	● V-Application.....	1-6
● Station.....	1-6	

Mail

2 Incoming Text Messages	Opening New Messages.....	2-4
	■ Retrieving Super Mail.....	2-7
	■ Using Received Messages	2-9
	● Reply.....	2-9
	● Forward.....	2-9
	● Call.....	2-9
	Sky Melody Files.....	2-9
	■ Requesting Melody Files.....	2-9
	■ Saving to Data Folder	2-10
	3 Sending Text Messages	Creating Text Messages.....
■ Overview		3-2
■ Creating a Message.....		3-3
■ Entering Recipient.....		3-4
■ Entering Subject.....		3-6
■ Entering Message Text		3-7
Attaching Images & Sounds		3-9
■ Attaching Files from Data Folder		3-9
■ Attaching Mail & Web Files		3-11
■ Changing Attachment Formats		3-12
■ Activating Camera from New Messages.....		3-13

4 Mail Box

Option Settings.....	3-13
● PIN	3-13
● Confirm Delivery.....	3-14
● Privacy Level	3-14
● Set Priority.....	3-14
● Polling.....	3-14
● Recipient Type	3-15
● Priority Setting	3-15
● Reply Address	3-15
Save as Auto Send	3-16
Saving to Outbox.....	3-17
2-Touch Mail	3-17
Greeting.....	3-18
Checking Messages	4-2
■ List View	4-2
■ Folder View.....	4-6
■ Sub Menu Settings	4-6
● Copy	4-6
● Set Display Size	4-6
● Go to.....	4-7
● Scroll Unit (for Text)	4-7
● Character Encoding.....	4-7
Chat Mail Log.....	4-8
■ Saving Members.....	4-8
■ Opening Chat Mail Log.....	4-10
Mail Box Layout.....	4-11
Mail Folders	4-12
■ Folder Name	4-12
■ Secret Mode	4-12
■ Letter Pad	4-13
■ Moving Messages.....	4-14
■ Sorting to Folders Automatically	4-15
Replying to Messages.....	4-19
Forwarding Messages.....	4-19
Confirm Delivery & Cancel Delivery	4-20
Sending from Outbox.....	4-20
■ Sending a Message	4-20
■ Send Continuously	4-21
Protecting Messages	4-22
Deleting Messages	4-23
■ Selecting Messages to Delete	4-23
■ Mail Box Delete All	4-24
■ Mail Folder Delete All	4-24
■ Auto Delete.....	4-25

4 Mail Box	Linked Info	4-26
	■ Saving Linked Info to Phone Book.....	4-26
	■ Using Linked Info.....	4-27
	Attachments	4-28
	■ Saving Attachments to Data Folder.....	4-28
	■ Wallpaper & Display Images.....	4-29
	■ Other Functions.....	4-30
	● Scan Code.....	4-30
	● Image Auto Open.....	4-30
	● Sound Auto Play.....	4-30
	Mail Box Menu	4-31
	● Show Address.....	4-31
	● Auto Sort.....	4-31
	● List.....	4-31
	● Create QR Codes.....	4-31
● Scroll Unit (for Mail Box).....	4-32	
● Show as Unread/Read.....	4-32	
● Report Spam.....	4-32	
5 Server Mail	Unretrieved List	5-2
	■ Retrieving Selected Messages.....	5-3
	■ Deleting Selected Messages.....	5-4
	Forwarding Server Mail	5-5
	Deleting Server Mail	5-6
6 Mail Settings	Basic Settings	6-2
	■ 2-Touch Mail.....	6-2
	■ Auto Reply.....	6-3
	■ Additional Basic Settings.....	6-5
	● Mail Notice.....	6-5
	● Confirm Delivery.....	6-5
	● Auto Send.....	6-5
	● Custom Fixed Text (Japanese Only).....	6-6
	● Report Setting.....	6-6
	● Reply with Original.....	6-6
	Super Mail Settings	6-7
	■ Rejected Files.....	6-7
	■ Additional Settings.....	6-8
	● Save & Send Image.....	6-8
	● Auto Retrieve.....	6-8
	● Sender Name.....	6-8
	● Recipient Name.....	6-9
● Reply Address.....	6-9	
● Signature.....	6-9	

	Sky Mail Settings	6-10
	■ Setting PIN.....	6-10
	■ Address Filter.....	6-11
	■ Additional Settings.....	6-12
	● Set Priority.....	6-12
	● Sender.....	6-12
	Super Mail Group	6-12
	■ Creating Mail Groups.....	6-12
	■ Deleting Groups.....	6-14
	BBS	6-15
	● BBS.....	6-15
	● Saving Messages.....	6-15
Reset	6-16	
● Reset Mail Settings.....	6-16	
● Deleting Sent & Received Messages.....	6-16	

Web		
7 Web Basics	Getting Started	7-4
	■ Web Content.....	7-4
	■ Saving Information.....	7-5
	Using Web	7-6
	■ Opening Vodafone Web Menu.....	7-6
■ Entering URLs Directly.....	7-7	
	Basic Operations	7-8
	■ Using Linked Info.....	7-10
8 Advanced Features	Images	8-2
	■ Data Folder.....	8-2
	■ Wallpaper & Display Images.....	8-3
	Melody Files	8-4
	■ Sampling Melodies.....	8-4
	■ Saving to Data Folder.....	8-5
	Dictionary Files	8-6
	■ Title & Version.....	8-6
	■ Saving to Data Folder.....	8-6
	vFiles	8-7
	■ Contents.....	8-7
	■ Saving to Data Folder.....	8-7
	Downloading Chaku-Uta	8-8
	Favorites, Message Folder & Bookmarks	8-9
	■ Saving Information & URLs.....	8-9
■ Opening Saved Info & Links.....	8-10	
■ Editing & Deleting.....	8-11	
Home	8-12	

8	Advanced Features	Auto Delivery Service 8-13 ■ Receiving Information 8-13 Sub Menu Settings 8-14 ● Set Display Size 8-14 ● Search this Page 8-14 ● Scroll Unit (for Web Info) 8-14 ● Character Encoding 8-15 ● Update 8-15 ● Reacquire 8-15 ● Text Memo 8-15 ● Property 8-15 ● Activate TV 8-16 ● Activate FM 8-16 ● Show Certification 8-16 ● Uploading Files 8-16
	9	Web Settings

V-Applications		
10	V-Application Basics	Getting Started 10-4 Downloading V-Applications 10-6 Starting V-Applications 10-7 Exit, Pause & Resume 10-8 Managing V-Applications 10-9 ● Property 10-9 ● Delete 10-9
	11	Using V-Applications

12	Additional Functions	V-Application Operational Settings 12-2 ● Incoming Settings 12-2 ● Playback Volume 12-2 ● Vibration 12-2 ● Backlight 12-3 ● Blink Control 12-3 Reset 12-3 ● V-Appli Settings 12-3 ● Clear Memory 12-3
-----------	-----------------------------	---

Station (Japanese Only)		
13	Station Basics	Getting Started 13-4 ■ Subscription Status 13-5 Using Station 13-6 ■ Checking Main List 13-6 ■ Saving to My List 13-6 ■ Received Information 13-8 ■ Using Linked Info 13-10
		14
15	Station Settings	Basic Settings 15-2 ● Update Frequency 15-2 ● Save Info Number 15-2 ● Image Link 15-2 Reset 15-3 ● Reset Station 15-3 ● Clear Memory 15-3

Appendix

16 Appendix

Reset Settings	16-2
■ Mail Settings	16-2
■ Web Settings.....	16-3
■ V-Application Settings.....	16-3
■ Station Settings.....	16-3
Display Messages	16-4
■ Mail	16-4
■ Web.....	16-5
■ V-Applications	16-6
■ Station.....	16-7
Pictograph List	16-8
Memory List	16-11
Index	16-12
Customer Service	16-16

Vodafone live!

Overview

Vodafone live! Basics

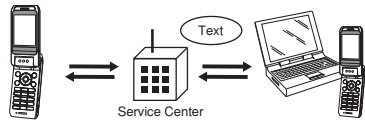
Vodafone live! Services

Use Vodafone live! services to exchange text and multimedia messages with compatible handsets, download sounds and images as well as V-Applications, browse the Mobile Internet or receive up-to-date area information via Station.

Mail

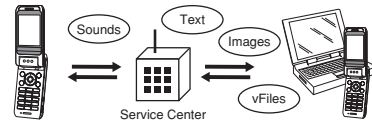
Sky Mail

Use this basic service to exchange text messages of up to 128 single-byte alphanumeric characters with Vodafone handsets, e-mail compatible handsets or PCs and other devices.



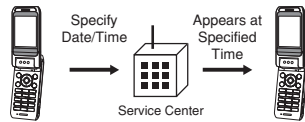
Super Mail

Exchange text messages of up to 12,000 single-byte characters with Super Mail compatible Vodafone handsets, e-mail compatible handsets and PCs and other devices via the Net. Attach images or sounds for multimedia messaging.



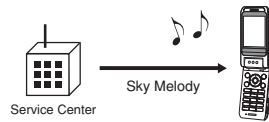
Greeting

Designate the date/time to deliver birthday messages, etc. to friends or family with Vodafone handsets.



Sky Melody

Request the latest hits from Sky Melody Center to use as Ring Tones.



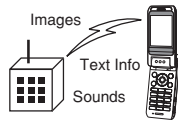
An additional contract is required to use Super Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.

Web

Use Web to access the Mobile Internet directly from handset. Browse for image or sound files as well as information.

Web Information

Access Vodafone live! compatible Mobile Internet sites from Web menu.



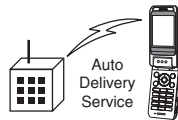
Internet

Enter Mobile Internet site URLs to visit specific sites or pages directly.



Auto Delivery Service

When available, request automatic info updates from Mobile Internet sites and download files via Web.



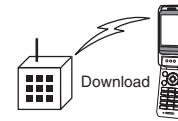
An additional contract is required to use Web service.

V-Applications

Download V-Applications, including games and 3D graphics.

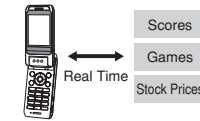
Web Downloads

Download V-Applications via Web.



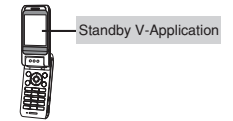
Network V-Applications

Enjoy Network games or real time information.



Standby V-Applications

Set a V-Application to activate when handset enters Standby.



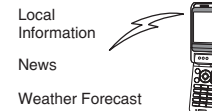
- Download and use V603SH compatible V-Applications.
- Separate subscriptions are required for V-Applications downloaded via Web.

Station

Use Station to access a variety of area-specific local information, periodically updated automatically.

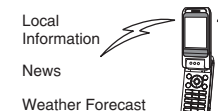
Main List

Area information is automatically updated when location changes.



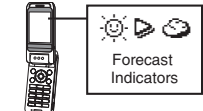
My List

Save area information in My List to receive update notices.



Weather Indicator

Set handset to show weather forecast for your area.



- Receive current location info automatically.
- Receive urgent information, such as emergency/disaster warnings automatically.
- Separate subscriptions are required for fee-based information.

Tip

- For more details, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.16-16).
- To disable individual Vodafone live! services, see P.1-6.

Network Setup

To use Vodafone live! services, first download network connection information from Vodafone live! Service Center. Handset initiates Network Setup when , , , , , , or is pressed for the first time.

1 Press , , , , , , or

2 Choose Yes and press

Handset connects to the Network.

- Follow onscreen instructions to proceed.

- To cancel the operation, choose No → Press (Press , , , , , , or to initiate Network Setup.)

Updating Network Information

Press → Select **Vodafone live!** → Press → Select Network Settings
 → Press → Select Network Setup → Press → Choose Yes →
 Press → Follow onscreen instructions

Handling Incoming Calls

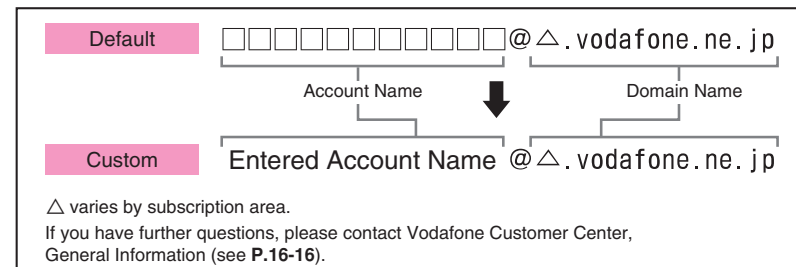
Adjust handset setting to handle incoming calls while handset is connected to the Network.

- When **Call Waiting Off** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls (they appear as rejected calls in Call History: see [Basic P.2-16](#)).
- Incoming Call** is set by default.

Index Menu ► Vodafone live! ► Network Settings ► Call Waiting

1 Select Incoming Call or Call Waiting Off and press

Customizing Handset Address



- Handset must connect to the Network to customize handset address.
- Customizing handset mail address helps reduce spam.
- Web must be activated before handset address can be customized (see [P.1-6](#)).

1 Press , select Mail Settings and press

2 Select Mail Address and press

Handset connects to the Network.

- Follow onscreen instructions (Japanese only).

- For Web basic operations, see [P.7-8](#).

- Center Access Code: see [Basic P.1-34](#)

Memory Status

Save up to approximately 3,000 KB between Inbox (Mail), Favorites or Message Folder (Web), and Saved Information (Station).

Open Memory Status window to confirm Mail, Web and Station memory.

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 1 ► Memory

1 Select Memory Usage and press

Disabling Vodafone live!

Disable any or all Vodafone live! services. Use this function to restrict access to or prevent unauthorized use of Vodafone live! services on your handset.

All services are active by default.

- 1 Press  * * * * *
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 Select a service and press 
- 4 Choose  Off and press 
To activate, choose  On → Press 

Changing Center Address










Do not change Center Address unless instructed to do so.

Access to the service will be disabled.

Mail

Set Mail Center Address

Default Short Message: *7033, Data Access: *7233000, Super Mail Line: *7043

Press  → Select  Mail Settings → Press  → Select  Center Address
→ Press  → Enter Security Code → Select from  Short Message to
 Super Mail Line → Press  → Enter Center Address → Press 

Web

Set Web Center Address

Default *7223000

Press  → Select  Web Settings → Press  → Select  Center Address
→ Press  → Enter Security Code → Enter Center Address → Press 

V-Application

Set V-Application Center Address

Default *7263000

Index Menu

▶ Vodafone live! → V-Appli → V-Appli Settings → Other Settings →
Server Address

Enter Security Code → Enter Center Address → Press 

Station

Set Station Center Address

Default *7053

Index Menu

▶ Vodafone live! → Station → Station Settings → Center Address

Enter Security Code → Enter Center Address → Press 

Mail

MEMO

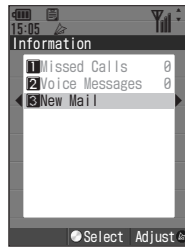


Incoming Text Messages

Opening New Messages

1 When mail arrives, animation plays and Information Menu opens

☑ (Super Mail) or 📧 (Sky Mail) appears according to message type.



Information Menu

2 Select **New Mail** and press **[OK]**

Inbox opens (see P.4-3).

3 Select a message and press **[OK]**

Message window opens (see P.2-6 "Message Contents").

■ To retrieve remaining portion of Super Mail messages, see P.2-7.



4 Press **[END]** to exit

Ring Tone Volume

- While handset is ringing, press **[UP]** (up) or **[DOWN]** (down).
 - Ring Tone Level setting (see **[Basic]P.9-2**) changes accordingly.
 - Cancel Manner Mode to adjust the level (see **[Basic]P.3-3**).

Quick Silent

- Press **[TEXT]** to instantly mute incoming mail tone for that message only.

Note Handset does not alert you (with Ring Tone, Vibration, Mobile/Small Light, indicators, or Information Menu) of incoming messages when:

- The sender is not saved in Phone Book and **Hide Spam** is active
- The subject or sender is registered to Sort By Subject or Sort By Addresses as **Hide Message**

- Tip**
- See P.4-2 to open Inbox when Information Menu does not open.
 - See **[Basic]P.8-9** "Vodafone live! Animation" to disable incoming mail animation.
 - Open a message and press **[* >>> >]** to see newer messages or **[# <<< <]** for older ones (when messages are arranged by date).

In Viewer Position

Use Side Keys to open new messages in Viewer position.

1 When mail arrives, animation plays and Information Menu opens

☑ (Super Mail) or 📧 (Sky Mail) appears according to message type.

2 Press **[LEFT]** or **[RIGHT]** to select **New Mail** and press **[S]**

Inbox opens (see P.4-3).

3 Press **[LEFT]** or **[RIGHT]** to select a message and press **[S]**

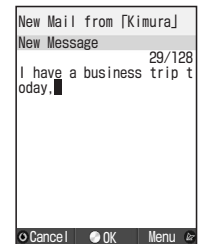
Message window opens (see P.2-6 "Message Contents").

4 Press **[C]** twice to exit

New Mail during Operations

When a new message arrives while handset is in use, a notification such as **New Mail from (Sender's name)** appears.

- See P.6-5 "Mail Notice" to hide or edit notification.
- **New Mail** appears for:
 - Messages sorted to Secret Mode Mail Folders
 - Messages from senders saved as Secret Mode Phone Book entries (when handset is not in Secret Mode)
 - Messages with Privacy Level 3 or 4
- Names do not appear when Phone Book Lock (see **[Basic]P.15-3**) is active.
- To receive notifications while TV, FM or V-Application is active, select **Show Message** in Incoming Settings. (For TV/FM, see **[Basic]P.6-21**. For V-Applications, see P.12-2.)
- Notification does not appear when:
 - A Greeting message arrived before the designated date/time
 - In Standby
 - The current window does not support notifications



Message Contents

Sending Priority: see P.6-12

☹: Low, 📧: Normal, 📧: High, 📧: By Express
(📧: Super Mail or Super Mail Notice)

Image Display Size

100%: 📧, 200%: 📧

Received Date & Time

Message Number

Privacy Level (see P.3-14) or Priority Setting (see P.3-15)

- Lv2 appears for Sky Melodies.
- Nothing appears if Priority Setting is *Normal*.

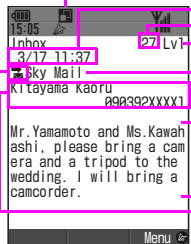
Message Type

Message Text

Sender

- Number or address appears. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- For Super Mail, if the number or mail address is not saved in Phone Book, name designated by the sender appears except for:
 - Super Mail Notices
 - Super Mail messages not saved on the Server

📧: Auto Reply Sent, 📧: Auto Reply Failed (see P.6-3)



Retrieving Super Mail

The Center sends the initial portion of Super Mail messages when:

- The message is over 385 single-byte characters
- The sender's address is over 56 single-byte characters
- The subject is over 41 single-byte characters
- The message was sent to multiple recipients
- Files are attached to the message

📧 (Super Mail Notice) appears in Inbox when the remaining portion of Super Mail message is held at the Center.

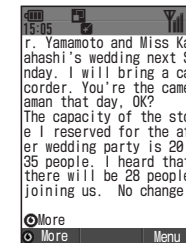
1 Open a message

📧 **More** appears at the bottom of the message.

2 Press 📧 **More**

Download starts.

- After message is retrieved, Inbox opens. (Super Mail Notice disappears and the message is saved.)



Retrieving Multiple Super Mail Messages

- In Inbox, select a Super Mail Notice (📧) → Press 📧 **Check** → Select all Super Mail Notices to retrieve → Press 📧 **Menu** → Select **More** → Press 📧 → Choose **1 Yes** → Press 📧
 - To uncheck, select a Super Mail Notice with → Press 📧 **Check**
 - To clear all check marks at one time, press 📧 **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press 📧 → Choose **1 Yes** → Press 📧

Messages over 30 KB

- **Exceeds Limit Cannot Receive All OK?** appears.
 - Choose **1 Yes** or **2 No** → Press 📧
 - Choose **1 Yes** to receive up to 30 KB. To retrieve selected items, choose **2 No** (see Step 4 and onward on P.2-8).
 - Unretrieved items are deleted from the Server.



- To retrieve complete Super Mail automatically, see P.6-8 "Auto Retrieve."
- To use Unretrieved List to retrieve Super Mail messages, see P.5-3.

2

Incoming Text Messages

2

Incoming Text Messages

Retrieving Selected Items

Select message text or attached image/sound files to retrieve.
Unretrieved items are deleted from the Server.

- 1** Open a message
- 2** Press **Menu**
- 3** Select **Download Rest** and press
 - List of contained items appear with size.
 - Only checked items are retrieved.
- 4** Select an item and press
 - Box is unchecked.
 - To retrieve the item, select it and press to check.
- 5** Repeat Step 4 to select items to retrieve
 - To clear all check marks at one time, press **Menu** → Select **All Reset** → Press
- 6** Press **More**
 - Download starts.
 - After the message is retrieved, Inbox opens (see P.4-3).
 - When there are unselected items, choose **Yes** → Press

Using Received Messages

Reply

Reply to messages

Open a message and press **Menu** → Select **Return Mail or Reply to All** → Press → Perform from Step 4 in "Replying to Messages" on P.4-19

- For Super Mail, subject is automatically entered prefaced with **Re:**.
- Use Super Mail to send the same message to up to five recipients at one time.
- Select **Reply to All** to send the same reply to all recipients (To/Cc). **Reply to All** may not appear for some messages.

Forward

Forward messages

Open a message and press **Menu** → Select **Forward** → Press → Perform from Step 4 in "Forwarding Messages" on P.4-19

- For Super Mail, subject is automatically entered prefaced with **Fw:**.
- Messages with Privacy Level 2 or 4 cannot be forwarded.

Call

Call sender directly from messages received from Vodafone handsets

Open a message and press **Menu** → Select **Call** → Press → Press

Sky Melody Files

Sky Melody requires Mail service (see P.1-6).

Requesting Melody Files

- 1** Press , select **Sky Melody** and press
- 2** Press
- 3** Follow voice prompts and select a melody
- 4** Press
 - Sky Melody Center sends the melody.

Changing Sky Melody Center Number

■ Do not change the number unless instructed to do so. Sky Melody Center access will be disabled.

After Step 1 on P.2-9, press  **Change** → Press  for 1+ seconds → Enter new number → Press 

- *1790 is set by default.

2

Incoming Text Messages

Saving to Data Folder

1 When Sky Melody arrives, animation plays and Information Menu opens

 appears.

2 Select **New Mail** and press

Inbox opens (see P.4-3).

-  **Sky Melody Center** appears.

3 Select the message and press

Title appears and melody plays as set in Sound Volume.

4 Press **Menu**

5 Select **To Data Folder** and press

Melody is saved to Data Folder. Message is deleted automatically after Melody file is saved.

- When memory is full, delete files and try again (see [Basic P.13-47](#)).
- To use as Ring Tone, see [Basic P.9-3](#).

Tip

Sky Melody files cannot be modified or attached to Super Mail.



Sending Text Messages

Creating Text Messages

Overview

Enter Recipient (see P.3-4)

Address Locations	Phone Book	Direct Entry	Phone Number
	2-Touch Mail		Mail Address
	Sent Mail		
	Super Mail Group		

Enter Subject (Super Mail: see P.3-6)

Compose Message (see P.3-7)

Attach Files (Super Mail: see P.3-9 - 3-13)

Still Image	Animation	vFile
Video Image	Melody	Etc.

Send Message

Tip Undeliverable messages are stored at the Center for up to 72 hours, and delivered when recipient's handset connects to the Network.

Character Entry Limits

Character limits vary by Mail Type.

	Character Entry Limits
Sky Mail	128 single-byte alphanumerics
Super Mail	Without attachment: 12,000 characters With attachment: 15,000 characters (Up to 30 KB including attachments)
Greeting	112 single-byte alphanumerics

Super Mail message text character limit differs by attachment size and number of recipients.

Available Entry Items

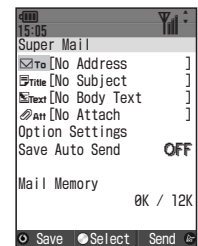
Available entry items vary by Mail Type.

	Recipient	Sender	Subject	Message	Date & Time	Attachments
Sky Mail	Available	N/A	N/A	Available	N/A	N/A
Super Mail	Available	N/A	Available	Available	N/A	Available
Greeting	Available	Available	N/A	Available	Available	N/A

To send Super Mail messages, enter a recipient and either attach a file or enter a subject or message text.

Creating a Message

- Press **[Send]**, select **[1] Super Mail**, **[2] Sky Mail** or **[3] Greeting** and press **[OK]**
Mail Composition window opens.
- Enter recipient, subject, message text, etc.
For Entry Items, see above.
- Specify settings and press **[Send]**
Standby returns.
 - Messages are delivered even if handset is closed.
 - Option Settings: see **P.3-13**
 - Save as Auto Send: see **P.3-16**
 - Saving to Outbox: see **P.3-17**



Mail Composition Window (Super Mail)

Incoming Calls during Message Creation

- New Message window returns after call ends.

Entering Recipient

1 In Mail Composition window, select To and press **⓪**

2 Phone Book

1 Select **1** Phone Book and press **⓪**

2 Open an entry

■ To search Phone Book, see **Basic** P.5-14 - 5-15.

2-Touch Mail List

1 Select **2** 2-Touch Mail and press **⓪**

■ 2-Touch Mail: see P.6-2

2 Select a recipient

Sent Mail

1 Select **3** Sent Mail and press **⓪**

■ Sent Mail: see P.3-5

2 Select a recipient

Direct Entry

1 Select **4** Mobile Number or **5** Mail Address and press **⓪**

2 Enter recipient's Vodafone handset number or mail address

■ To open Phone Book, press **⓪** (TEL).

Sending to Group

Save addresses in Super Mail Group beforehand (see P.6-12)

1 Select **6** Group Folders and press **⓪**

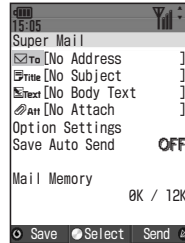
2 Select a group

3 Press **⓪**

Mail Composition window returns.

Tip

- **5** Mail Address does not appear for Greeting.
- **6** Server appears only for Sky Mail.
- **6** Group Folders appears only for Super Mail.
- When mail address is entered, single-byte katakana and pictographs are invalid in message text and subject. If pictographs are already entered, **Delete Pictograph OK?** appears. Choose **1** Yes and press **⓪** to delete. Choose **2** No and press **⓪** to return to Select Address or Select Group window. Entered single-byte katakana is changed to double-byte.



Mail Composition Window (Super Mail)

Sent Mail

- Last 9 sent mail records are saved.
- Recipients' names appear if saved in Phone Book. Names for Secret Mode Phone Book entries appear only when handset is in Secret Mode.
- Vodafone handset numbers appear with **05**, etc. Mail addresses appear with **05**.
- Aside from Secret Mode, changes to Phone Book entries are not reflected in Sent Mail.
- To delete records from Sent Mail, follow these steps.
Open Sent Mail (perform Steps 1 - 2 on P.3-4) → Select a record → Press **⓪ → Menu → Select Delete or Delete All → Press **⓪** → Choose **1** Yes → Press **⓪****

Sending from Phone Book Entries

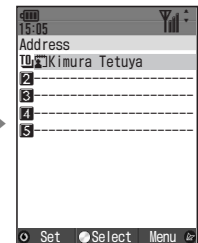
- To send to Vodafone handset numbers, open a Phone Book entry and select a number → Press **⓪** → Select **Send Mail (Phone)** → Press **⓪** → Select Mail Type → Press **⓪**
- To send to mail addresses, open a Phone Book entry and select an address → Press **⓪** → Select **Send Mail (E-mail)** → Press **⓪** → Select Mail Type → Press **⓪**

Recipient Name (Super Mail)

- Name appears when recipient is entered from Phone Book (see P.6-9 "Recipient Name"). Edit Recipient Name as follows:
After Step 3 on P.3-4, select To → Press **⓪ → Address list appears → Select a recipient → Press **⓪** → Menu → Select Edit Comments → Press **⓪** → Edit Recipient Name → Press **⓪****
 ■ To delete Recipient Name, delete all characters → Press **⓪**

Adding Recipients (Super Mail)

- Enter up to five recipients.
After Step 3 on P.3-4, select To → Press **⓪ → Address list appears → Select a number → Press **⓪** → Enter a recipient (see Steps 2 - 3 on P.3-4)**
 ■ To enter additional recipients, select a number → Press **⓪** → Enter a recipient (see Steps 2 - 3 on P.3-4)
 ■ Press **⓪** **Set** to return to Mail Composition window.



Address List

To, Cc & Bcc (Super Mail)

- In Address list, **TU** appears before recipient's name, number or address. Change the status to Cc (carbon copy) or Bcc (blind carbon copy) as follows:
 - Select a recipient → Press **Menu** → Select **Cc or Bcc** → Press **OK**
 - Recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.

Editing & Deleting Recipients (Super Mail)

- To edit, open Address list and follow these steps.
 - Select a number or address → Press **Menu** → Select **Change** → Press **OK** → Edit address → Press **OK**
- To delete, open Address list and follow these steps.
 - Select a number or address → Press **Menu** → Select **Delete or Delete All** → Press **OK**

Sending to Server (Sky Mail)

- Intranet integration is required to send messages to the Server.
 - After Step 1 on P.3-4, select **3 Server** → Press **OK** → Enter Server Address (within 20 characters) → Press **OK** → Enter Sub Address (within five characters) → Press **OK**

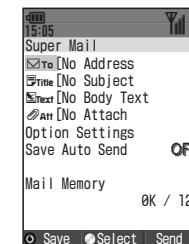
Entering Subject

Subject field is only available for Super Mail.

- In Super Mail Composition window, select **Title** and press **OK**
 - Enter up to 512 single-byte alphanumeric (510 single-byte katakana or 253 double-byte characters).
- Enter subject
- Press **OK**
 - Mail Composition window returns.

Entering Message Text

- In Mail Composition window, select **Text** and press **OK**
- Enter a message
 - Character Entry Limits: see P.3-3
 - Using Fixed Text: see P.3-8
 - To copy from Phone Book, press **Menu** → Press **TEL**
 - Open a Phone Book entry (see **Basic** P.5-14 - 5-15) → Select an item → Press **OK** twice
 - To copy from Text Memo, press **Menu** → Select **5 Call Text Memo** → Press **OK** → Select Text Memo → Press **OK**
 - To read from barcode, press **Menu** → Press **Scan**
 - Select **1 Scan Code** → Press **OK** → Perform Steps 2 - 4 on **Basic** P.16-30 - 16-31 → Press **OK**
 - To use Text Scanner, press **Menu** → Press **Scan** → Select **2 Text Scanner** → Press **OK** → Perform Steps 2 - 6 on **Basic** P.16-37 - 16-38
- Press **OK**
 - Mail Composition window returns.



Mail Composition Window (Super Mail)

- ### Add Signature Manually (Super Mail)
- While entering message text with Signature Off, press **Menu** → Select **Attach Signature** → Press **OK** → Select a number → Press **OK**
- ### Converting Sky Mail to Super Mail
- When a Sky Mail message exceeds the character limit, **File Exceeds Limit Change to Super Mail?** appears.
 - To continue, choose **1 Yes** → Press **OK**
 - The message above does not appear if you are using Fixed Text.



- Check approximate mail size in **Mail Memory** in Mail Composition window.
- Using both single and double-byte characters may reduce character entry limit.
- Mail addresses count toward the character limit.

Using Fixed Text (Japanese Only)

Switch to Japanese display to use Preset Fixed Text, Editable Text or Custom Fixed Text (see P.6-6).

- 1 Press **定型** in New Message window
 - Fixed Text cannot be inserted after entering characters.

- 2 Select a type and press **OK**

- 3 Select a message and press **OK**

- To select other Fixed Text, press **Left Arrow** → Select another message → Press **OK**
- To use Editable Fixed Text, select Editable Fixed Text → Press **OK** → Press **Enter** → Enter text → Press **OK**
 - Press **2 ABC** or **3 DEF** if any → Enter text → Press **OK**

- 4 Check message and press **OK**

- Tip**
- Edit Preset Fixed Text after it is copied to Super Mail or e-mail messages.
 - Character limit depends on message type and the number of parentheses.

Converting Mail Type

Change Mail Types while editing Sky Mail or Super Mail messages. The following are deleted when Super Mail is converted to Sky Mail:

- Subject
- Attachments
- Recipients other than the first one
- Message text exceeding Sky Mail character limit

- 1 While editing a message, press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Send As Super Mail** or **Convert Sky Mail** and press **OK**
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press **OK**

- Tip** When converting Sky Mail to Super Mail, entered address appears in **TO** field.

Attaching Images & Sounds

Attach images, sound files, vFiles or SVG files to Super Mail.

- Attach up to 20 files within 30 KB in total including message text.
- Split to four smaller images or reduce image size (see **Basic P.7-43**).
- For more information, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.16-16**).

Attaching Files from Data Folder

- 1 In Super Mail Composition window, select **Att** and press **OK**
 - If files are already attached, Attachment list appears → Select a number → Press **OK**
 - To change attached file, open Attachment list → Select a file → Press **OK** → Press **Change**
- 2 Select **1 Data Folder** and press **OK**

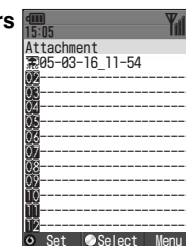
Data Folder opens (see **Basic P.13-4**).
- 3 Select a folder and press **OK**
 - Files cannot be attached if not selectable.
 - To open images or play sounds, select a file → Press **Menu** → Select **Show** or **Play** → Press **OK**
 - To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **OK**
- 4 Select a file and press **OK**

Mail Composition window returns.

 - To send messages, see **P.3-3**.
 - Saving to Outbox: see **P.3-17**
 - For files in Camera images folder, select **1 Attach Thumbnail** or **2 Attach 240 x 320** → Press **OK** (Thumbnails are small copies of images taken in Camera mode.)

Attaching Additional Files

- After Step 4, select **Att** → Press **OK** → Attachment list appears
 - Select a number → Press **OK** → Perform Steps 2 - 4
 - To attach additional files, select a number → Press **OK** → Perform Steps 2 - 4
 - Press **Set** to return to Mail Composition window.



Attachment List

Deleting Attachments

- Open Attachment list and select a file → Press Menu → Select **2 Delete** → Press → Choose **1 Yes** → Press

Attachable Files

Attachments	Format	Extension
Still Images	JPEG	jpg
	PNG	png
Video Images	MPEG-4	3gp
Animations	MNG	mng
	E-Animation	nva
	JPEG Animation/PNG Animation	-
Melodies	SMAF	mmf
	SMD	smd
	Original Ring Tones	sjm
vFiles*	vCard	vcf
	vCalendar	vcs
	vMessage	vmg
	vBookmark	vbm
	vNote	vnt
Others	Movie Mask files	msk
	Dictionary files	sdj
	HTML files	html
	MML files	mml
	SVG files	svg
	EML files	eml

*Standard file format for the Internet

Attaching Burst Shot Image

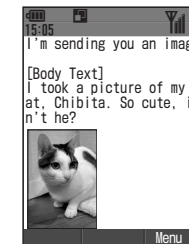
- After Step 4 on P.3-9, select an image with → Press

Note

- Animation file size affects the number of files that can be attached.
- When converted from JPEG Animation, MNG files open only on packet-enabled Vodafone handsets manufactured by Sharp. To send MNG files to other packet-enabled handsets, convert from PNG Animation.
- E-Animation files or files created from Moving Photo Frame (.nva) open only on packet-enabled Vodafone handsets manufactured by Sharp. However, contained images or sounds may not open or play properly.

Attaching Mail & Web Files

- 1 Select an image or sound file in mail or Web info and press**
 - Selected image is outlined.
- 2 Select Copy (image) or Copy (sound) and press**
 - Copied files are saved to Clipboard temporarily.
 - Some images or sounds cannot be copied.
- 3 Press**
- 4 In Super Mail Composition window, select Att and press**
- 5 Choose **2 Clipboard** and press**
- 6 Select **1 Attach** and press**
 - Mail Composition window returns.
 - Attaching Additional Files: see P.3-9
 - To open images or play sounds, select **2 Open File** → Press
 - To return, press Back (image) or Stop (sound)
 - To send messages, see P.3-3.
 - Saving to Outbox: see P.3-17













Note

Depending on the file size of images or sounds, **File Exceeds Limit Cannot Attach** may appear and file is not attached.

Changing Attachment Formats

Select a sound file format compatible with recipient handsets.









1 Original Melody	File format (SJM) remains the same
2 Melody Format	Chords over 6 are deleted. Tone and loudness settings are ignored.
3 SMAF (MA-2) Format	Chords over 17 are deleted, and tones of the following change to Piano: ■ Drum (FM) ■ Drum (WT) ■ Original (FM) ■ Original (WT)
4 SMAF (MA-3) Format	Up to 32 chords can be sent

- 1 In Super Mail Composition window, select  **Att** and press .**
 - If files are already attached, Attachment list appears → Select a number → Press .
 - To change attached file, open Attachment list → Select a file → Press  → Press  **Change**
- 2 Select  **Data Folder** and press .**
- 3 Select a folder and press .**
- 4 Select a file and press .**
File format list appears.
- 5 Select a file format and press .**
Mail Composition window returns.
 - To send messages, see **P.3-3**.
 - Saving to Outbox: see **P.3-17**

Note

- Some files cannot be converted.
- Edit the tone and loudness after conversion. Some files may be too large to attach after conversion.


Activating Camera from New Messages

- 1 In Super Mail Composition window, select  **Att** and press .**
 - If files are already attached, Attachment list appears → Select a number → Press .
 - To change attached file, open Attachment list → Select a file → Press  → Press  **Change**
- 2 Select  **Sha-mail Shoot** and press .**
Camera is activated.
- 3 Capture image**
 - Capturing Still Images: see **Basic P.7-11**
- 4 Press .**
Mail Composition window returns.
 - To send messages, see **P.3-3**.
 - Saving to Outbox: see **P.3-17**

Tip

If Save & Send Image is **On**, the captured image is automatically saved after Step 4.

Option Settings

- Sky Mail options are available only when sending to Vodafone handsets.
- These settings are valid for one message when set during message composition.
- Option Settings are not available when resending messages.
- When finished, press  **Back** to return to Mail Composition window.

PIN

Restrict Incoming Sky Mail & Greeting messages (see **P.6-10**)

- In Mail Composition window, select *Option Settings* → Press  → Select  **PIN** → Press  → Enter recipient's 4-digit PIN → Press .**

- Set the same PIN for recipients using PIN filter.

Confirm Delivery

Request a Delivery Report (see P.4-20) to confirm message delivery

■ Available only when sending to Vodafone handsets.
Default Off

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● →
 Select **Confirm Delivery** → Press ● → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** →
 Press ●

- Confirm Delivery is disabled when sending Super Mail to multiple recipients.

Privacy Level

Require Security Code to open, forward or copy messages

■ Available only for Sky Mail and Greeting.
Default Level 1

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● →
 Select **3 Privacy** → Press ● → Select from **1 Level 1** to **4 Level 4** →
 Press ●

	Privacy Level	Copy/Forward	Security Code
Low ↓ High	1	Allowed	Not Required
	2	Prohibited	Not Required
	3	Allowed	Required
	4	Prohibited	Required

Set Priority

Set priority when sending mail

■ Available only for Sky Mail.
Default Normal

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● →
 Select **4 Set Priority** → Press ● → Select from **1 Low** to **4 By
 Express** → Press ●

Note By Express messages are delivered faster for additional fees. **Low**, **Normal** and **High** indicate the importance of the message and do not affect delivery speed.

Polling

Select whether to receive BBS messages (see P.6-15)

■ Available only for Sky Mail.
Default Off

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● →
 Select **5 Polling** → Press ● → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press ●

Recipient Type

Select a recipient type

Under normal conditions, set Recipient Type to **None**

■ Available only for Sky Mail.
Default None

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● →
 Select **6 Recipient Type** → Press ● → Select from **1 None** to
3 Computer → Press ●

Tip Select **Mobile Phone** to send to a Vodafone handset, or **Computer** to send to a PC connected to a Vodafone handset.

Priority Setting

Set message priority level

■ Available only for Super Mail.
Default Normal

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● →
 Select **2 Priority Setting** → Press ● → Select from **1 High** to **3 Low**
 → Press ●

- Priority Setting does not affect delivery speed.

Reply Address

Designate a different mail address for replies

■ Available only for Super Mail.
Default Off

Activating

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● →
 Select **3 Reply Address** → Press ● → Choose **1 On** → Press ● →
 Enter address → Press ●

- To open Phone Book, press ☺ (TEL) in address entry window.

Canceling

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● →
 Select **3 Reply Address** → Press ● → Choose **2 Off** → Press ●

Note

- Replies are sent to the designated address only when the Reply function is used.
- This function may not work depending on the recipient's mail software.

Save as Auto Send

When Save Auto Send is active, the message is saved to Outbox and is sent automatically when signal returns.

- Activate Auto Send beforehand (see P.6-5).
- Save up to 10 messages.

1 In Mail Composition window, select **Save Auto Send** and press **⓪**

2 Choose **Ⓜ On** and press **⓪**

Mail Composition window returns. (**Auto** appears in the right bottom corner.)

■ To cancel, choose **Ⓜ Off** → Press **⓪**

3 Press **Ⓜ Auto**

Mail Delivery Failure

■ **Save As Auto Send?** appears when message delivery fails with Auto Send **On** (see P.6-5) and Save Auto Send **Off**.

To set **Save Auto Send**, choose **Ⓜ Yes** → Press **⓪**

- Save Auto Send is disabled for Auto Reply Mail.

Save Auto Send for Outbox Messages

■ For one message, press **Ⓜ** → Select **Ⓜ Mail Box** → Press **⓪** → Select **Ⓜ Outbox** → Press **⓪** → Select a message → Press **Ⓜ** → Select **Save Auto Send** → Press **⓪**

■ For multiple messages, press **Ⓜ** → Select **Ⓜ Mail Box** → Press **⓪** → Select **Ⓜ Outbox** → Press **⓪** → Select messages → Press **⓪** → **Check** for each → Press **Ⓜ** → **Menu** → **Save Auto Send** → Press **⓪**

- To uncheck, select a message with **Ⓜ** → Press **⓪** → **Check**
- To clear all check marks, press **Ⓜ** → **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press **⓪** → Choose **Ⓜ Yes** → Press **⓪**

■ Save Auto Send is disabled for protected messages.

Tip

- Auto Send attempts to send the message up to three times including the initial attempt.
- Auto Send Super Mail takes priority over Sky Mail.
- Auto Send failed deliveries are saved to Sent and Outbox.

Saving to Outbox

Save up to 200 KB.

1 In Mail Composition window, press **⓪** **Save**

2 Choose **Ⓜ Yes** and press **⓪**

Outbox opens. Latest message comes first.

- When memory is low, Mail Composition window returns. Delete messages (see P.4-23) and try again.

3 Press **Ⓜ** to exit

Note

The order in which addresses (**To**, **Cc** and **Bcc**) or attachments appear may change when saving Super Mail.

2-Touch Mail

Use 2-Touch Mail to send messages from Standby.

Save addresses in 2-Touch Mail (Mail Settings) beforehand (see P.6-2).

1 In Standby, press the assigned number (**1** - **9**) with Keypad (**1** - **9**)

2 **Sending Super Mail**

1 Press **⓪** **Super**

The address is entered automatically.

2 Enter other information and send Super Mail

■ Creating a Message: see P.3-3

Sending Sky Mail


1 Press **Ⓜ** **Sky**

The address is entered automatically.

2 Enter other information and send Sky Mail

■ Creating a Message: see P.3-3

Greeting


Designate the date and time to deliver messages to friends or family.
Set Sender's name in Mail Settings to enter  automatically (see P.6-12).

1 Press , select **3 Greeting** and press 

Mail Composition window opens.

2 Enter recipient's number and message text

 Entering Recipient: see P.3-4

 Entering Message Text: see P.3-7

3 In Mail Composition window, select  and press 

4 Enter a name

• Enter up to 12 single-byte alphanumerics (10 single-byte katakana or 3 double-byte characters).

5 Press 

Mail Composition window returns.

6 In Mail Composition window, select  and press 

The current date and time appear.

7 Specify the date and time
(Recipients cannot open Greeting messages until then.)

• Use the 24-hour format.

8 Press 

Mail Composition window returns.

9 Press  **Send**



Mail Box

Checking Messages

Received messages are saved to Inbox, sent ones to Sent and drafts to Outbox.

- or appears when there is unread mail in Inbox.
- Set Mail Box display layouts to **List** or **Folder** (see P.4-11).
- To pause the current operation and open Inbox, see [Basic]P.1-29 "Hot Switching (Mail)."

List View

- 1 Press , select **Mail Box** and press
 - To check the number of saved messages, select **1** *Inbox*, **2** *Sent* or **3** *Outbox* → Press **Menu**
 - Press **Back** to return.
- 2 Select **1** *Inbox*, **2** *Sent* or **3** *Outbox* and press

Mail Box Contents: see P.4-3
- 3 Select a message and press

Message window opens (see P.4-5 "Message Contents").

 - For Outbox messages, Mail Composition window opens.
 - If attached image is too large, it may not appear.
 - For Sky Melody messages, the title appears and melody plays once.
 - Use to scroll.
 - To open messages with Privacy Level 3 or 4, enter Security Code.

4 Press to exit

Resending Messages

- Open a sent message and select **Menu** → Select **Resend** → Press → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press

Editing Sent/Outbox Messages

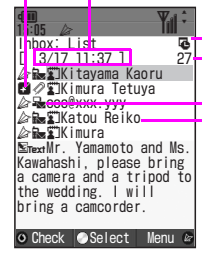
- In *Sent*, open a message → Press **Menu** → Select **Edit** → Press → Select an item → Press → Edit the message
- In *Outbox*, select a message → Press → Select an item → Press → Edit the message
 - To save edited messages, press **Save** → Select **1** *Save as* or **2** *Overwrite* → Press

Tip

- To activate Display Backlight, press - , , , , or .
- Greeting messages are saved in Inbox. Sender's name and message cannot be viewed until the specified date and time.
- Open a message and press to see newer messages or for older ones (when messages are arranged by date).

Mail Box Contents

To change List view, see P.4-31.



Unread/Read (Inbox), Mail Type (Sent/Outbox)

Super Mail:

Messages other than Super Mail:

Saved as Auto Send: (Outbox)

*If you subscribe to Super Mail, appears for e-mail messages.

- Indicator color varies by message status:
 - Unread: Red
 - Protected: Yellow
 - Unread Delivery Report: Green

Received or Sent Date & Time

Messages are arranged by:

Date:

Sender or Recipient:

Unread/Read or Delivery Status:

Protection:

Attachments:

Message Number

Message Type

See P.4-4 for indicators.

Sender or Recipient

- Number or address appears. Name and appear if saved in Phone Book.
- For Super Mail in Inbox, if the number or mail address is not saved in Phone Book, name designated by the sender appears with except for:
 - Super Mail Notices
 - Super Mail messages not saved on the Server
- Recipient or sender color indicates Priority Level (High: red, Normal: black, Low: blue).
- Additional indicator may appear before sender or recipient. For details, see P.4-4.

Tip *Incoming Mail...* and received text appear for incoming linked messages.

Message Type

	Sky Mail (mail to/from Vodafone handsets)
	E-mail (messages received via the Net)
	Super Mail with attachments
	Super Mail Notice (Server Mail, initial portion included)
	Unretrieved List (Super Mail)
	BBS Notice
	Polling (BBS accessed)
	Unopened Greeting
	Unsaved Sky Melody

*Appears only in Inbox.

Additional Indicators

	Replied message
	Forwarded message
	Auto Reply
	Failed Auto Reply

- Only the indicator for the latest action appears.
- or does not appear for:
 - Failed deliveries
 - Messages sent from Outbox
 - Messages sent via V-Applications
 - Forwarded Server Mail
 - Resent Auto Send messages

Message Contents

Sending Priority: see P.6-12
: Low, : Normal, : High, : By Express
: Super Mail or Super Mail Notice

Image Display Size
 100%: , 200%:

Received or Sent Date & Time

Message Number

Privacy Level (see P.3-14) or Priority Setting (see P.3-15)

- **Lv2** appears for Sky Melodies.
- Nothing appears if Priority Setting is **Normal**.

Message Type

Message Text

Sender or Recipient

- Number or address appears. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- For Super Mail in Inbox, if the number or mail address is not saved in Phone Book, name designated by the sender appears except for:
 - Super Mail Notices
 - Super Mail messages not saved on the Server

Auto Reply Sent, : **Auto Reply Failed** (see P.6-3)

Received, Sent, etc.: Delivery Status (Sent only)

Sent message delivery status (see below)

: **Report (Sent only)**

Delivery Report (see P.4-20)

Delivery Status Indicators

Received	Message delivered*
Sent	Message delivered or sent to e-mail
×	Delivery failed, or was canceled (not saved at the Center)
?	Message status unknown

*Appears when confirming delivery from a message window (see P.4-20) or when sending messages with Confirm Delivery **On** (see P.3-14, P.6-5).

Folder View

Follow these steps to open messages when Mail Box Layout is set to **Folder** (see P.4-11).

- 1 Press **[F2]**, select **[0] Mail Box** and press **[Enter]**
- 2 Select **[1] Inbox**, **[2] Sent** or **[3] Outbox** and press **[Enter]**
 - When an Inbox folder contains unread mail, icon appears in red.
 - When a Sent folder contains an unchecked Delivery Report, **[DR]** appears.
- 3 Select a folder and press **[Enter]**
- 4 Select a message and press **[Enter]**

Message window opens (see P.4-5 "Message Contents").

 - The succeeding steps are the same as those for List view.

Tip Newly received messages are sorted to **Inbox Folder**, sent messages to **Sent Folder** and saved drafts to **Unsent Folder**. Messages are sorted to the specified Mail Folder if set in the sender or recipient's Phone Book Option Settings (see P.4-15 - 4-18).

Sub Menu Settings

Copy

Copy message text

Open a message and press **[F2]** **[Menu]** **[>]** Select **Copy** **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Use **[F1]** to underline the first line of the text block **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Use **[F2]** to specify text **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Perform from Step 5 on **[Basic] P.4-16**

- To change the starting position, press **[F2]**.
- Text can only be saved when **Copy** appears.

Set Display Size

Change font and image size

Default Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100%

Open a message and press **[F2]** **[Menu]** **[>]** Select **Set Display Size** **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Select **[1] Font Size** or **[2] Image Size** **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Select a size **[>]** Press **[Enter]**

Tip

- Press **[F12]** to toggle between 200% and 100%. **[100%]** appears for 100% and **[200%]** for 200%.
- The setting applies to both received and sent messages. It remains even after exiting Mail.
- To change Font Size from Font Settings menu, see **[Basic] P.8-4**.

Go to

Jump cursor to the beginning or end of text

Open a message and press **[F2]** **[Menu]** **[>]** Select **Go to** **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Select **[1] Top Jump** or **[2] Bottom Jump** **[>]** Press **[Enter]**

Scroll Unit (for Text)

Select from three scroll units

Default Line

Open a message and press **[F2]** **[Menu]** **[>]** Select **Scroll Unit** **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Select from **[1] Full Screen** to **[3] Line** **[>]** Press **[Enter]**

In Standby

[F2] Press **[F2]** **[>]** Select **[0] Mail Box** **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Select **[7] Mail Box Settings** **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Select **[1] Scroll Unit** **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Select a unit **[>]** Press **[Enter]**

Character Encoding

Change Character Encoding when text appears distorted

[Available only for Super Mail.]
Default Auto Recognition

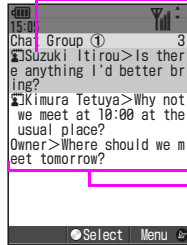
Open a message and press **[F2]** **[Menu]** **[>]** Select **Character Encoding** **[>]** Press **[Enter]** **[>]** Select from **[1] Auto Recognition** to **[5] ISO-2022-JP** **[>]** Press **[Enter]**

- Use Auto Recognition whenever possible.
- The setting applies to the current message only.

Chat Mail Log

Use Chat Mail Log folders to organize messages exchanged between your handset and up to five addresses per folder. Sent and received messages appear by date, designated by sender.

Log Contents



Sender

- Number or address appears. Name and appear if saved in Phone Book.
- **Owner** appears for mail sent from handset if Owner Profile is blank. Owner Profile name appears when set (see [Basic P.2-22](#)).

Message Text

Saving Members

- Save up to five members per group (Group 1 - Group 3).
- Same address can be entered in multiple groups.
- Enter up to 16 single-byte characters to customize a group name. If all members in a group are deleted, the group name returns to its default.

- 1 Press , select **Mail Box** and press .
- 2 Select **Chat Mail Log** and press .
 - To change group name, select a group → Press **Menu** → Select **Change Group Name** → Press → Enter name → Press .
 - When adding members to an existing group, select a group → Press **Menu** → Select **Save Member** → Press → Proceed to Step 5
- 3 Select a group and press .
- 4 Choose **Yes** and press .
- 5 Select a number and press .
- 6 **Phone Book**
 - 1 Select **Phone Book** and press .
 - 2 Open an entry
 - To search Phone Book, see [Basic P.5-14 - 5-15](#).

Direct Entry

- 1 Select **Mobile Number** or **Mail Address** and press .
- 2 Enter recipient's Vodafone handset number or mail address
 - To open Phone Book, press (**TEL**).

Super Mail Groups

Save addresses in Super Mail Group beforehand (see P.6-12).

- 1 Select **Group Folders** and press .
- 2 Select a Group
 - If one or more members are already saved, remaining entries are saved from the top of the Super Mail Group.

- 7 Press .
 - Repeat Steps 5 - 7 to add more members.

- 8 Press to exit

Changing Group Members

■ After Step 2 on P.4-8, select a group → Press **Menu** → Select **Save Member** → Press → Select an entry → Press → Enter number or address → Press

Deleting a Member

■ After Step 2 on P.4-8, select a group → Press **Menu** → Select **Save Member** → Press → Select a number → Press **Menu** → Select **Delete** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

Deleting All Members

■ After Step 2 on P.4-8, select a group → Press **Menu** → Select **Save Member** → Press → Press **Menu** → Select **Delete All** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

Note

- Changes to Phone Book entries are not reflected in Chat Mail groups. Edit member addresses directly.
- Changing members does not affect messages already saved in Chat Mail Log.

Opening Chat Mail Log

Received Sky Mail messages with Privacy Level 2 or higher, Super Mail messages in Unretrieved List and Greeting messages do not appear in group contents even if the address is saved.

- 1 Press **⏪**, select **Mail Box** and press **⏹**
- 2 Select **Chat Mail Log** and press **⏹**
 - Security Code is required when there are Secret Mode Mail Folders in Inbox or Sent.
- 3 Select a group and press **⏹**
Group opens and contents appear (see P.4-8).

Deleting Messages

- After Step 2, select a group → Press **⏪** **Menu** → Select **Delete All Folders** → Press **⏹** → Choose **Yes** → Press **⏹**
 - Messages in Mail Box are not deleted.

Chat Mail Log Menu

- While Chat Mail Log folder is open, press **⏪** **Menu** to reply, forward, edit, etc.
- To open a message, select a message and press **⏹**.

Tip

- Deleting a message from Inbox or Sent automatically deletes the same message in Chat Mail Log.
- Each group holds up to 100 messages. When full, oldest messages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones.

Mail Box Layout

From Mail Box Settings, set Layout to **Folder** or **List** for Inbox, Sent and Outbox. **List** is set by default (Mail Folders are hidden).

- 1 Press **⏪**, select **Mail Box** and press **⏹**
- 2 Select **Mail Box Settings** and press **⏹**
- 3 Select **Layout** and press **⏹**
 - Security Code is required when there are Secret Mode Mail Folders.
- 4 Select **1Inbox**, **2Sent** or **3Outbox** and press **⏹**
- 5 Select **2Folder** and press **⏹**
 - Follow the same steps to change Layout for each Mail Box.
 - To hide folders, select **1List** → Press **⏹**
- 6 Press **⏪** to exit
















Toggling Layout

- After Step 1, select **1Inbox**, **2Sent** or **3Outbox** → Press **⏪** **Menu** → Select **2Mailbox Display** → Press **⏹**
 - Security Code is required when there are Secret Mode Mail Folders in the selected Mail Box.

Mail Folders

Folder Name














From Mail Box Settings, change Layout to **Folder** for Inbox, Sent or Outbox, then use Mail Folders to organize messages. In addition to Inbox Folder, Sent Folder and Unsent Folder, sort messages to one of nine Mail Folders in Inbox, Sent or Outbox. Change folder names to customize Mail Folders. **Inbox Folder**, **Sent Folder** and **Unsent Folder** cannot be renamed.







- 1 Press , select  **Mail Box** and press 
- 2 Select  **Mail Box Settings** and press 
- 3 Select  **Set Folders** and press 
- 4 Select  **Inbox**,  **Sent** or  **Outbox** and press 
- 5 Select  **Folder Name** and press 
Mail Folders appear.
- 6 Select a folder and press 
- 7 Enter a name
 - Enter up to 16 single-byte characters.
- 8 Press 
 - Repeat Steps 6 - 8 to rename other folders.
- 9 Press  to exit

Secret Mode

Security Code is required to open a Secret Mode Mail Folder.

- Set Mail Box Layout to **Folder** to use Secret Mode.
- **Inbox Folder**, **Sent Folder** and **Unsent Folder** cannot be set to Secret Mode.




















- 1 Press , select  **Mail Box** and press 
- 2 Select  **Mail Box Settings** and press 
- 3 Select  **Set Folders** and press 
- 4 Select  **Inbox**,  **Sent** or  **Outbox** and press 
- 5 Select  **Secret Mode** and press 

- 6 Enter Security Code
- 7 Select a folder and press 
- 8 Choose  **On** and press 
 - Repeat Steps 7 - 8 for other folders.
 - To cancel, choose  **Off** → Press 
- 9 Press  to exit

Letter Pad

Set Letter Pad for each Mail Folder to use as background for Mail Box contents (when List view is Pattern 1), message contents, Mail Composition windows and New Message windows.

- Letter Pad set for Sent Folder appears for Mail Composition windows and New Message windows (after a recipient is entered) or Outbox contents.
- Letter Pad appears in Mail Composition window after a recipient is entered.

- 1 Press , select  **Mail Box** and press 
- 2 Select  **Mail Box Settings** and press 
- 3 Select  **Set Folders** and press 
- 4 Select  **Inbox** or  **Sent** and press 
- 5 Select  **Letter Pad** and press 
- 6 Select a folder and press 
- 7 Select from  **Letter Pad 1** to  **Letter Pad 5** and press 
 - Repeat Steps 6 - 7 for other folders.
 - To cancel, choose  **Off** → Press 
- 8 Press  to exit

Tip When Font Size for Menus & Lists (see "Fonts" on [Basic P.8-4](#)) is **Large**, Letter Pad appears only for message contents.

Moving Messages

Set Mail Box Layout to **Folder** before attempting to move messages (see **P.4-11**). Unretrieved List (Super Mail) and incoming linked messages cannot be moved from **Inbox Folder**.

1 Open Inbox, Sent or Outbox

Mail Box Contents: see **P.4-3**

2 Select a message and press **Check**

Check appears.

- To uncheck, select message with **Check** and press **Check**.
- Neither Auto Send (☐) messages nor failed Auto Send (☒) messages can be selected.

3 Repeat Step 2 to select other messages

• Select up to 50 messages at one time.

To clear all check marks, press **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press **Yes** → Press **Yes**

4 Press **Menu**

5 Select **Move Mail Folder** and press **OK**

6 Select a folder and press **OK**

• Repeat Steps 2 - 6 to move other messages.

7 Press **Exit** to exit

4

Mail Box

Sorting to Folders Automatically

Sorting by Phone Book Entries

Sort messages automatically by phone number or mail address. When a Phone Book entry contains multiple numbers/addresses, use **Set All** to apply settings to all entry items or **One Number/Address** to designate individual numbers/addresses.

1 Open a Phone Book entry

To search Phone Book, see **Basic P.5-14 - 5-15**.

2 Press **OK**

3 Select **Edit** and press **OK**

4 Select **Option Settings** and press **OK**

5 Select **Mail Folder** and press **OK**

6 Select **Inbox Auto Sort** or **Sent Auto Sort** and press **OK**

7 **All Numbers/Addresses**

1 Choose **Set All** and press **OK**

Individual Numbers/Addresses

1 Choose **One Number/Address** and press **OK**

2 Select a Vodafone handset number or a mail address and press **OK**

3 Choose **On** and press **OK**

To cancel, choose **Off** → Press **OK**

Canceling

1 Choose **Off** and press **OK**

8 Select a folder and press **OK**

When setting for One Number/Address, press **Set** → Proceed to Step 9

9 Press **Set** twice

For more, see Step 3 and onward on **Basic P.5-17**.



4

Mail Box

Tip

- Sent messages are sorted by the first recipient address.
- Individual settings are replaced when **Set All** is selected and vice versa.

Sorting by Text String

Sort received messages automatically by specified text.

- Save up to 20 text strings.
- Messages are sorted when the specified text is in:
 - Subjects of Super Mail Notices or Super Mail messages not saved on the Server
 - Subjects of retrieved Super Mail messages (in the first 512 single-byte characters)
 - Sky Mail message text (except Fixed Text)

1 Press , select  **Mail Box** and press 

2 Select  **Mail Box Settings** and press 




3 Select  **Sort By Subject** and press 

4 Enter Security Code


5 Select a number and press 




 To edit saved text, select a number → Press  → Select  **Show Message** or  **Hide Message** → Press  → Edit text → Press  → Proceed to Step 9

 To cancel, select a number → Press  → Choose  **Off** → Press 

 To delete saved text, select a number → Press  **Delete** → Choose  **Yes** → Press 

6 Select  **Show Message** or  **Hide Message** and press 

• Handset does not respond to messages sorted with  **Hide Message**.

 To cancel, choose  **Off** → Press 





7 Enter text

• Enter up to 20 single-byte characters.

8 Press 

9 Select a folder and press 

• Repeat Steps 5 - 9 to save more text strings.

 When Inbox Layout is set to **List**, choose  **Yes** or  **No** → Press 

10 Press  to exit

Tip

- Phone Book entry Auto Sort settings (see **P.4-15**) take priority over Sort by Subject settings.
- Messages containing two or more specified text strings are sorted by the text in the foremost text string entry number.

Sorting by Number or Address

Sort received messages automatically by phone number or mail address.

- Save up to 30 entries.
- Save part of number or address to apply to more than one sender.
- Mail addresses are case insensitive.

1 Press , select  **Mail Box** and press 

2 Select  **Mail Box Settings** and press 

3 Select  **Sort By Addresses** and press 

4 Enter Security Code


5 Select a number and press 




 To edit saved entries, select a number → Press  → Select  **Show Message** or  **Hide Message** → Press  → Edit address → Press  → Proceed to Step 10

 To cancel, select a number → Press  → Choose  **Off** → Press 

 To delete saved entries, select a number → Press  **Delete** → Choose  **Yes** → Press 

6 Select  **Show Message** or  **Hide Message** and press 

• Handset does not respond to messages sorted with  **Hide Message**.

 To cancel, choose  **Off** → Press 

7 Select  **Mobile Number** or  **E-Mail** and press 





8 Enter a Vodafone handset number or mail address

 To open Phone Book, press .

9 Press 

10 Select a folder and press 

• Repeat Steps 5 - 10 for additional entries.

 When Inbox Layout is set to **List**, choose  **Yes** or  **No** → Press 

11 Press  to exit

Tip

- Sort by Subject settings (see **P.4-16**) take priority over Sort By Addresses settings.
- Messages from numbers or addresses containing two or more specified items are sorted by the item in the foremost entry number.

Hide Spam

Designate a folder to sort messages from numbers or addresses not saved in Phone Book. Use Hide Spam to filter unsolicited messages (spam).

Hide Spam is **Off** by default.

- 1 Press , select **5 Mail Settings** and press
- 2 Select **Hide Spam** and press
- 3 Enter Security Code
- 4 Choose **1 On** and press
To cancel, choose **2 Off** → Press
- 5 Press **Approved**
- 6 Select a folder and press
When Inbox Layout is set to **List**, choose **1 Yes** or **2 No** → Press
- 7 Press to exit

Note

- When Hide Spam is active, handset does not respond to messages from unsaved numbers or addresses.
- Non-delivery notifications are also sorted to a designated folder.

Tip

- Messages are not sorted when Phone Book Lock (see **Basic P.15-3**) is active.
- Sort By Addresses settings (see **P.4-17**) take priority over Hide Spam settings.
- Messages from numbers and addresses in Secret Mode Phone Book entries are not sorted by this function, even if handset is in Secret Mode.

Replying to Messages

- 1 Open a message
- 2 Press **Menu**
- 3 Select **Return Mail** or **Reply to All** and press
 - Use Super Mail to send the same message to up to five recipients at one time.
 - Select **Reply to All** to send the same reply to all recipients (To/Cc). **Reply to All** may not appear for some messages.
- 4 Select **Mail Type**, original message quote option and press
Mail Composition window opens. Recipient is automatically entered.
 - For Super Mail, subject is entered prefaced with **Re:**
- 5 Select **Text** and press , then enter a message
Entering Message Text: see **P.3-7**
- 6 Press
- 7 Press **Send**

Tip

- If the sender has set Reply Address, designated address is entered in address field.
- If Reply with Original (see **P.6-6**) is active, original message is quoted.

Forwarding Messages

- Messages with Privacy Level 2 or 4 cannot be forwarded.
- Super Mail is always forwarded as Super Mail.

- 1 Open a message
- 2 Press **Menu**
- 3 Select **Forward** and press
Mail Composition window opens.
 - For Super Mail, subject is automatically entered prefaced with **Fw:**
- 4 Select **To**, press and enter recipients
 - Files attached to the original message are automatically attached to forwarded messages.
 - For entering address, see **P.3-4**
 - When files cannot be attached, select **1 Understood** → Press (The message is sent without the attachment.)
- 5 Press **Send**

Confirm Delivery & Cancel Delivery

Confirm delivery of Sky Mail and Greeting messages, or cancel Sky Mail delivery. Use Confirm Delivery and Cancel Delivery for messages sent to compatible Vodafone handsets.

- 1 **Open a message**
 - Select a message with **Sent** or **?**.
- 2 **Press** **Menu**
- 3 **Select *Confirm Delivery* or *Cancel Delivery* and press**
- 4 **Choose** **Yes** and press
 - When complete, the Center sends a Delivery Report.

Confirming Report

- After completing Confirm Delivery or Cancel Delivery, handset receives a Delivery Report from the Center.
 - New Report appears** → **Information Menu opens** → Press (**Sent opens.**) → **Select a message with green indicator** → Press → Press **Report**
 - Press **Back** to return.
 - **Alternatively, in Standby, press** → **Select** **Mail Box** → Press → **Select** **Sent** → Press → **Select a message with green indicator** → Press → Press **Report**
 - Press **Back** to return.
 - appears if there is unchecked Delivery Report.

Sending from Outbox

Sending a Message

- 1 **Press** , **select** **Mail Box** and press
 - To check the number of saved messages, select **Outbox** → Press **Menu**
 - Press **Back** to return.
- 2 **Select** **Outbox** and press

Outbox opens (see P.4-3 "Mail Box Contents").

 - appears for Auto Send messages, and appears for failed Auto Send messages.

3 Select a message and press

Mail Composition window opens.

- For Auto Send () messages, **Cancel Auto Send?** appears. Choose **Yes** → Press
- For failed Auto Send () messages, **Re-save As Auto Send?** appears. Select **Save As Auto Send** or **Cancel** → Press

4 Press

Send

Standby returns.

- Sent messages are deleted from Outbox. To prevent inadvertent deletion, protect important messages (see P.4-22).

Editing Outbox Messages

- **After Step 2 in "Sending a Message" on P.4-20, select a message** → Press → **Select an item** → Press → **Edit the message**
 - To save edited message, press **Save** → Select **Save as** or **Overwrite** → Press



When sent from Outbox, failed messages remain in both Outbox and Sent.

Send Continuously

Send Super Mail from Outbox continuously.

1 Open Outbox

- Mail Box Contents: see P.4-3

2 Select a Super Mail message and press

Check

appears.

- To uncheck, select message with and press **Check**.
- Neither Auto send () messages nor failed Auto Send () messages can be selected.

3 Repeat Step 2 to select messages

- Select up to 50 messages at one time.

■ To clear all check marks, press **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

4 Press

Menu

5 Select *Send Continuously* and press

Standby returns.

- Sent messages are deleted from Outbox. To prevent inadvertent deletion, protect important messages (see P.4-22).
- A confirmation appears for unsent messages. Choose **Yes** → Press (Other messages are sent.)

Protecting Messages

Protect important messages saved in Inbox, Sent or Outbox.







- Unretrieved List (Super Mail), unread Super Mail Notices and incoming linked messages are protected and will not be deleted automatically.
- Protect up to 980 KB in Sent. All messages in Inbox and Outbox can be protected.
- Protected messages are not deleted from Outbox even after they are sent.

1 Open Inbox, Sent or Outbox

Mail Box Contents: see P.4-3

2 Select a message and press **Check**

 appears.

- To uncheck, select message with  and press  **Check**.
- Neither Auto send () messages nor failed Auto Send () messages can be selected.
- To cancel protection, select messages with a yellow indicator → Press  **Check** → Perform Steps 3 - 5 → Choose **Off** → Press 

3 Repeat Step 2 and select all the messages to protect

• Select up to 50 messages at one time.

• To clear all check marks, press  **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press 

4 Press **Menu**

5 Select **Protect Message** and press

6 Choose **On** and press

Protected message indicators change to yellow.

7 Press to exit

Deleting Messages

Selecting Messages to Delete

Deleting a Message

1 Open Inbox, Sent or Outbox

Mail Box Contents: see P.4-3

2 Select a message and press **Menu**

• Neither Auto send () messages nor failed Auto Send () messages can be selected.

3 Choose **Delete** and press

4 Choose **Yes** and press

• Repeat Steps 2 - 4 to delete other messages.

5 Press to exit





Deleting Selected Messages

1 Open Inbox, Sent or Outbox

Mail Box Contents: see P.4-3

2 Select a message and press **Check**

 appears.

- To uncheck, select message with  and press  **Check**.
- Neither Auto send () messages nor failed Auto Send () messages can be selected.

3 Repeat Step 2 to select all messages to delete

• Select up to 50 messages at one time.

• To clear all check marks, press  **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press 

4 Press **Menu**

5 Select **Delete** and press

6 Choose **Yes** and press

All the messages with  are deleted.

7 Press to exit

Tip Advance Mail (see **Basic P.16-11**) messages must be deleted one by one.

Mail Box Delete All

- 1 Press **☰**, select **0 Mail Box** and press **⏵**
- 2 Select **1 Inbox**, **2 Sent** or **3 Outbox** and press **☰** **Menu**
- 3 Select **3 Delete All** and press **⏵**
- 4 Select **1 Select All** or **2 Read/Unprotected** (**2 Unprotected** for Sent and Outbox) and press **⏵**
- 5 Enter Security Code
- 6 Choose **1 Yes** and press **⏵**
- 7 Press **☰** to exit

Tip When Outbox is set to **2 Unprotected**, Advance Mail (see **Basic P.16-11**), Auto Send and failed Auto Send messages are not deleted.

Mail Folder Delete All

- 1 Open Inbox, Sent or Outbox
- 2 Select a folder and press **☰** **Menu**
- 3 Select **Delete All** and press **⏵**
- 4 Select **1 Select All** or **2 Read/Unprotected** (**2 Unprotected** for Sent and Outbox) and press **⏵**
- 5 Enter Security Code
- 6 Choose **1 Yes** and press **⏵**
- 7 Press **☰** to exit

Auto Delete

When memory is full, handset cannot receive new messages. Activate Auto Delete Old to automatically delete oldest received messages to make room for new ones. (Unread messages are not deleted automatically.)

- To prevent inadvertent deletion, protect important messages (see **P.4-22**).
- Auto Delete Old is **Off** by default.

- 1 Press **☰**, select **0 Mail Box** and press **⏵**
- 2 Select **7 Mail Box Settings** and press **⏵**
- 3 Select **5 Auto Delete Old** and press **⏵**
- 4 Choose **1 On** and press **⏵**
To cancel, choose **2 Off** → Press **⏵**
- 5 Press **☰** to exit

Tip When memory is full, oldest sent messages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones. To prevent inadvertent deletion, protect important messages (see **P.4-22**).

Linked Info

Saving Linked Info to Phone Book

Save linked phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs from message text and sender's address to Phone Book. Use text underlined with a dotted line within a message as indicated below:

Phone Number	Numbers, #, *, etc. between 10 and 24 digits, starting with 0. Numbers, #, *, etc. following TEL: (case insensitive). Example: TEL:090392XXXX1 (X is any number)
Mail Address	Single-byte alphanumeric and dots, etc., before and after @. Example: abc@□□□.co.jp (□ is any alphanumeric character)

1 Open a message

2 **Saving Sender Address**

1 Press **Menu**

Saving Linked Info

1 Select a phone number or mail address and press

3 Select **Add to Phone Book** and press

4 Select **New Entry** and press

Number or address is entered in corresponding Phone Book field. Complete other fields and save (see **Basic P.5-3 - 5-5**).

■ To save to an existing Phone Book entry, select **New Item** → Press → Open a Phone Book entry (see **Basic P.5-14 - 5-15**) → Select an icon → Press → Press

Save → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

■ To save to an SD Memory Card, see **Basic P.5-7**.

Saving Address within Unretrieved List

■ In Inbox, select **Unretrieved List** () → Press → Select a message → Press **Menu** → Perform Steps 3 - 4

Using Linked Info

Use numbers (**TEL:**), addresses or URLs (**http://** or **https://**) to place calls, send Sky/Super Mail or access Mobile Internet sites. Available only when numbers, addresses and URLs are underlined with a dotted line.

1 Open a message containing a phone number, mail address or URL

2 Select a number, address or URL and press

3 **Phone Numbers**

1 Select **Call** and press

Phone number appears.

2 Press

The number is dialed.

Mail Addresses

1 Select **Send Mail** and press

2 Select **Send Super Mail** or **Send Sky Mail** and press

■ Creating a Message: see P.3-3.

URLs

1 Select **Open Link** and press

URL appears.

2 Press again, select **Send** and press

Handset connects to the Network.

• **High Security Protected** appears for URLs starting with **https://**. To continue, select **OK** and press .

■ For more about accessing Mobile Internet sites, see P.7-7.

Attachments

Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save attachments (image, sound, vFile, etc.) to Data Folder.

- 1 Open a message with at least one attached file**
- 2 Select a file and press** ●
 - Select an image in the message.
 - Files can only be saved when **To Data Folder** appears.
- 3 Select To Data Folder and press** ●

Title entry window opens. Edit title (file name) as necessary.

 - For sound files, title and file name appear (when they are different) after Step 3. Select either and press ●.
 - To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●
 - Press [OK] to return.
 - To play sound, select **Play** → Press ●
 - To adjust volume, press (up) or (down) during playback.
 - To change tone or loudness, select **Tone** or **Adjust Loudness** → Press ● (see [Basic P.9-13 - 9-14](#))
- 4 Press** ●
 - To select a folder, see [Basic P.13-8](#).
 - To switch to SD Memory Card, press [Menu] → Select **Memory Card** → Press ●
- 5 Press** ●
 - When memory is full, notification appears. Delete files and try again (see [Basic P.13-47](#)).

Wallpaper & Display Images

Save images as Wallpaper or as Display Images to use them for Power On/Off, Alarm or incoming calls.

- 1 Open a message containing images**
- 2 Select an image and press** ●
 - Images can only be used when [Save As Wallpaper] or [To Display Images] appears.

3 Wallpaper

- 1 Select [Save As Wallpaper] and press** ●

The following display options appear.

Centered	Image appears at the center in its original size
Tile	Duplicates of the image are arranged like tiles over Display
Full Screen	Image is enlarged to cover the full display area
Enlarge Display	Image is enlarged until the width or height reaches the edges of Display

- To open properties, select [Property] → Press ●
 - Press [OK] to return.
- For E-Animation (NEVA files) and images larger than Display, image appears → Press ● to complete

- 2 Select an option and press** ●

- 3 Press** ●

- Existing image is replaced.

Display Images

- 1 Select [To Display Images] and press** ●

- E-Animation (NEVA files) and MNG/SVG files cannot be used for [Incoming Call] and [Alarm].
- Maximum image size:

Power On	W 120 x H 130 dots	Incoming Call	W 120 x H 38 dots
Power Off	W 120 x H 130 dots	Alarm	W 120 x H 51 dots

Display Images appear 200% larger.

- To open properties, select [Property] → Press ●
 - Press [OK] to return.

- 2 Select an item and press** ●

- Image appears.
- For E-Animation (NEVA files), press ● to complete.

- 3 Use [D-pad] to specify display area and press** ●

- Depending on size or type, display area cannot be specified for some images.
- Existing image is replaced.

Other Functions

Scan Code

Read barcodes directly from messages

Open a message with barcode (images) attached (see P.4-2) → Select a barcode (image) → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **☰** Scan Code → Press **Ⓞ** → See **Basic** P.16-32

- Barcodes can only be read when **☰** Scan Code appears. Some codes may not be read. In this case, an error message appears.

Image Auto Open

Set handset to open attached image files automatically

Default On

Press **☰** → Select **☰** Mail Box → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **☰** Mail Box Settings → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **☰** Auto Open → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **☰** Image Auto Open → Press **Ⓞ** → Choose **☰** On or **☰** Off → Press **Ⓞ**

Tip

Depending on file type, image may not open automatically, or may open when sound is played.

Sound Auto Play

Set handset to play attached sound files automatically

Default Off

Press **☰** → Select **☰** Mail Box → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **☰** Mail Box Settings → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **☰** Auto Open → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **☰** Sound Auto Play → Press **Ⓞ** → Choose **☰** On or **☰** Off → Press **Ⓞ**

Tip

- When more than one sound file is attached, the first file plays.
- Press **⏏** to stop playback.
- Depending on file type, sound may not play automatically, or playback starts when an image is opened. E-Animation (NEVA file) sound may play automatically even if Sound Auto Play is *Off*.

Mail Box Menu

Show Address

Check sender's address

Open a Mail Box and select a message → Press **☰** Menu → Select **Show Address** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select address → Press **Ⓞ**

- Show Address is not available for Outbox.

Auto Sort

Rearrange the order of messages by date, sender, etc.

Default Date

Open a Mail Box and press **☰** Menu → Select **Auto Sort** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select an item → Press **Ⓞ**

- Set for Inbox, Sent and Outbox independently.
- When arranged by **Sender** or **Recipient**, messages are listed by numbers, roman letters then kana.

List

Select a view for Mail Box

Default Pattern 1

Open a Mail Box and press **☰** Menu → Select **List** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select a pattern → Press **Ⓞ**

- Setting applies to Inbox, Sent and Outbox.


Create QR Codes

Create QR Codes from messages

Open a Mail Box and select a message → Press **☰** Menu → Select **Create QR Code** → Press **Ⓞ** → Press **☰** Create → Press **Ⓞ**

- To select storage media, press **☰** Menu → Select **☰** Save to → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **☰** Handset or **☰** Memory Card → Press **Ⓞ**
- To attach to Super Mail, press **☰** Menu before saving → Select **☰** Attachment → Press **Ⓞ** → Complete Super Mail message (see P.3-3)
- Neither Auto Send (☑) messages nor failed Auto Send (✖) messages can be used.
- QR Codes can only be created when **Create QR Code** appears.
- Subject or message text is mandatory.
- Depending on size or contents, not all message contents may be converted.

Scroll Unit (for Mail Box)

Select from four options
(Press and hold  to scroll)

 Continuation

Open a Mail Box and press  **Menu** → Select **Scroll Unit** → Press  → Select an option → Press 

- Setting applies to Inbox, Sent and Outbox.

Show as Unread/Read

Toggle message status between unread and read

Open Inbox and select a message → Press  **Menu** → Select **Show as Unread** or **Show as Read** → Press 

- Some message status cannot be changed.

Report Spam

Report sources of unsolicited messages, etc. as spam senders

Open Inbox and select a message → Press  **Menu** → Select **Report Spam** → Press  → Super Mail Composition window opens

 To edit, select a field → Press  → Edit

 To send, press  **Send**.

- Spam senders can only be reported when **Report Spam** appears.

Note

For more information, contact Vodafone Customer Service, General Information (see **P.16-16**).

Tip

- Subject is automatically entered prefaced with **Fw:**.
- The following items are automatically entered into message text.
 - Sender's number or address
 - Received date and time
 - Original message text
- Attachments are deleted.
- To change the destination mail address, see **P.6-6** "Report Setting."


4

Mail Box



Server Mail

Unretrieved List

Retrieve a list of messages stored at the Center (Server Mail), then retrieve selected messages.  appears next to Unretrieved List in Inbox.

1 Press , select  **Mail Box** and press 

2 Select  **Mail Request** and press 

3 Select  **Acquire Mail List** and press 

4 Choose  **Yes** and press 


Download starts.

- After Unretrieved List is retrieved, Inbox opens (see P.4-3).

5 Press 

Unretrieved List (containing sender's name, handset number or address of each Server Mail) appears.

 For details, select a message → Press  **Menu** → Select **Property** → Press 

- Press  to return.

Refreshing Unretrieved List

■ After Step 3, choose  **Yes** → Press 

Retrieving All Server Mail

■ After Step 2, select  **Retrieve All** → Press  → Choose  **Yes** → Press 

- All Server Mail is retrieved.

Deleting All Server Mail


■ After Step 2, select  **Delete All Mail** → Press  → Enter Security Code → Choose  **Yes** → Press 

Server Status

■ After Step 2, select  **Server Mail Volume** → Press 

- To update Server Mail Volume, press  **Update** → Choose  **Yes** → Press 

Tip

Server Message appears in the list when there is more Server Mail. (Select **Server Message** and press  to see notice from the Server.) To see the rest, retrieve or delete messages on the list and refresh Unretrieved List.


Retrieving Selected Messages

When more than one message is selected, some may not be retrieved.

1 Open Unretrieved List

2 Select a message and press 

changes to .

- To uncheck, select message with and press .
- If the message contains irretrievable files, appears red.

3 Repeat Step 2 to select all messages to retrieve

4 Press  **Menu**

5 Select **Next** and press 

Download starts.

- After messages are retrieved, Inbox opens (see P.4-3).
- Downloaded messages are deleted from Unretrieved List.


Retrieving Selected Items

Select message text or attached image/sound files to retrieve.

1 Open Unretrieved List

2 Select a message and press 

changes to .

- To uncheck, select message with and press .
- If the message contains irretrievable files, appears red.

3 Press  **Menu**

4 Select **Select Contents** and press 

List of contained items appears with size.

- Only checked items are retrieved.

5 Select an item and press 

Box is unchecked.

- To retrieve the item, select it and press  to check.

 To clear all check marks, press  **Menu** → Select **All Reset** → Press 

5

Server Mail

5

Server Mail

6 Repeat Step 5 to select all items to retrieve

7 Press **More**

Download starts.

- After the message is retrieved, Inbox opens (see P.4-3).

- When there are unselected items, choose **1 Yes** → Press

Note

- Retrieve up to 30 KB, including handset numbers/mail addresses, message text, subject, and attachments.
- Unselected items are deleted from the Server.

Retrieve All Unretrieved List Messages

When Unretrieved List is long, some may not be retrieved.

1 Open Unretrieved List

2 Press **Menu**

3 Select *Retrieve all Mail* and press

Download starts.

- After messages are retrieved, Inbox opens (see P.4-3).

- Unretrieved List is deleted from Inbox.

Deleting Selected Messages

Deleted messages cannot be recovered.

1 Open Unretrieved List

2 Select a message and press

changes to .

- To uncheck, select message with and press .

- If the message contains irretrievable files, appears red.

3 Repeat Step 2 to select all messages to delete

4 Press **Menu**

5 Select *Delete Item* and press

6 Select **1 Delete** and press

After messages are deleted, a confirmation appears.

- To cancel, select **2 Cancel** → Press

7 Press

Delete All Unretrieved List Messages

1 Open Unretrieved List

2 Press **Menu**

3 Select *Delete all Mail* and press

4 Enter Security Code

5 Select **1 Delete** and press

After messages are deleted, a confirmation appears.

- Unretrieved List is deleted from Inbox.

- To cancel, select **2 Cancel** → Press

6 Press

Forwarding Server Mail

Forward Server Mail directly to PCs, etc. Message text is forwarded as an attachment.

1 Open a message (Super Mail Notice)

- Select a Super Mail message with .

2 Press **Menu**

3 Select *Transfer Server Mail* and press

Subject is automatically entered prefaced with *Fw:*.

4 Select **To**, press and enter recipients

- Enter message text or attach more files if necessary.

- To enter an address, see P.3-4.

- To delete message from the Server after forwarding, select **Option Settings** →

- Press → Select **4 Delete Server Mail** → Press → Choose **1 Yes** → Press →

- Press **Back**

5 Press **Send**

From Unretrieved List

- Select a message → Press → Press **Menu** → Select *Transfer Server Mail* → Press → Perform Steps 4 - 5

Deleting Server Mail


Delete Server Mail directly without downloading it first.

1 Open a message (Super Mail Notice)



- Select a Super Mail message with .

2 Press **Menu**

3 Select *Delete Server Mail* and press

Tip To delete Super Mail Notice only, select *Delete* and press .

4 Select *Server Mail Only* or *Notice and Mail* and press

-  *Server Mail Only*: Super Mail Notices remain.
-  *Notice and Mail*: Both Super Mail Notices and Server Mail are deleted.

5 Choose *Yes* and press

6 Press **Back**

5

Server Mail



Mail Settings

Basic Settings

2-Touch Mail

Save up to nine frequently used addresses to 2-Touch Mail to send mail from Standby (see P.3-17) or add addresses to mail from 2-Touch Mail List (see P.3-4).

- 1 Press , select **5 Mail Settings** and press
- 2 Select **4 2-Touch Mail** and press
- 3 Select **1 Add Address** and press
- 4 Select a number and press
 - To change addresses, select a number → Press → Edit address → Press
 - To delete an entry, select a number → Press **Menu** → Select **Delete** → Press → Choose **1 Yes** → Press
 - To delete all entries, press **Menu** → Select **Delete All** → Press → Choose **1 Yes** → Press
 - When selecting a number with no entry, press **Menu** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press (All entries are deleted.)

6

Mail Settings

5 Phone Book

- 1 Select **1 Phone Book** and press
- 2 Open an entry
 - To search Phone Book, see [Basic P.5-14 - 5-15](#).

Direct Entry

- 1 Select **2 Mobile Number** or **3 E-Mail** and press
- 2 Enter recipient's Vodafone handset number or mail address
 - To open Phone Book, press (**TEL**).

6 Press

An icon corresponding to the address type appears.

- Repeat Steps 4 - 6 for other entries.

7 Press to exit

Adding to 2-Touch Mail while Creating Message

- When there is no entry in 2-Touch Mail, add an address from Mail Composition window.
Select **To** → Press → Select **2 2-Touch Mail** → Press → Choose **1 Yes** → Press → Enter an address (see Step 5 on P.6-2) → Press

Note Changing Phone Book entries does not affect 2-Touch Mail Addresses.

Auto Reply

Reply automatically with a preset Sky Mail message when you are busy, away, etc.

- Specify recipient number or address from Option Settings in Phone Book entries (see [Basic P.5-11](#)).
- Share Auto Reply message on BBS (see P.6-15).
- Bedtime Mode, Meeting Mode, Driving Mode, Travel Mode** and **Original Text Mode** are set by default. Customize Title, Reply Text and Reply Time for each Mode.
- Auto Reply is canceled when Reply Time elapses. (Count continues even while handset power is turned off.)
- Default settings:

Title	Reply Text	Reply Time
Bedtime Mode	Sorry, I have gone to bed and cannot check my mail.	008 (Hour)
Meeting Mode	Sorry, I'm in a meeting now and can't check my mail	001 (Hour)
Driving Mode	Sorry, I'm driving now and cannot check my mail.	001 (Hour)
Travel Mode	Sorry, I'm abroad now and cannot check my mail.	168 (Hour)
Original Text Mode	-	001 (Hour)

6

Mail Settings

Activating Auto Reply

- Set Clock before using Auto Reply (see [Basic P.1-26](#)).
- Auto Reply is not available while a V-Application is set for Standby.

- 1 Press , select **5 Mail Settings** and press
- 2 Select **9 Auto Reply** and press
- 3 Choose **1 On** and press
 - To cancel, choose **2 Off** → Press
- 4 Press **Approved**
- 5 Select a mode and press
 - Proceed to Step 7 when using the current setting.

6 Changing Titles

- 1 Select **1 Title** and press **⊙**
- 2 Enter title and press **⊙**
 - Enter up to 18 single-byte characters.

Editing Reply Text

- 1 Select **2 Reply Text** and press **⊙**
- 2 Enter text and press **⊙**
 - Enter up to 51 single-byte alphanumerics (22 double-byte characters).
 - Using both single and double-byte characters may reduce character entry limit.
 - Pictograph and single-byte katakana cannot be used.

Changing Reply Time

- 1 Select **3 Reply Time** and press **⊙**
- 2 Enter time (001 - 168 hours) and press **⊙**
 - Auto Reply is automatically canceled after Reply Time.

7 Press **⊙** **Set**

⊙ appears.

When Auto Reply is Active

Handset automatically sends a reply (Sky Mail) to messages from numbers or addresses specified in Phone Book Option Settings (see **Basic P.5-11**).

- Replies are sent to the sender's number or address even if reply address is designated.
- **Auto Reply Msg** is automatically entered in Auto Reply messages.
- Auto Reply message is sent only once even if multiple messages are received from the same number/address (except when the previous Auto Reply to the sender failed).
- Auto Send is not effective for Auto Reply messages.

When Auto Reply Message is Sent

- Information Menu opens. To open details, follow these steps.
 - Select **Auto Reply Sent** → Press **⊙**
 - To open Inbox, select **Open Inbox** → Press **⊙**

Note

- A confirmation asking whether or not to cancel Auto Reply appears in the following cases. Choose **1 Yes** or **2 No** and press **⊙**.
- Display position is changed from clamshell closed to clamshell open
 - **⊙** is pressed in Standby

Additional Basic Settings

Mail Notice

Select contents or cancel notices for messages received during handset use (see **P.2-5**)

Default Name

- Press **⊙** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⊙** → Select **5 Mail Notice** → Press **⊙** → Select from **1 Name** to **4 Off** → Press **⊙**

Confirm Delivery

Request a Delivery Report (see **P.4-20**) to confirm message delivery

Default Off

- Press **⊙** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⊙** → Select **6 Confirm Delivery** → Press **⊙** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **⊙**

Tip

- Delivery Report is available for:
 - Sky Mail messages sent to Vodafone handsets
 - Greeting messages
 - Super Mail sent to a single Vodafone handset
- To change settings for individual messages, see **P.3-14**.
- To check delivery status of Sky Mail or Greeting messages sent without Confirm Delivery, see **P.4-20**.

Auto Send

Outbox messages saved as Auto Send when handset is out-of-range are sent automatically when signal returns

Default On

- Press **⊙** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⊙** → Select **3 Auto Send** → Press **⊙** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **⊙**

Tip

Save Auto Send does not appear in Mail Composition window when Auto Send is **Off**.

When Auto Send is Activated

- Approximately 10 seconds after the signal returns, an Auto Send message is sent. When there is more than one, messages are sent in five second intervals.
- Consecutively saved Super Mail messages are sent in succession.
- Auto Send attempts to send the message up to three times including the initial attempt.
- Auto Send Super Mail takes priority over Sky Mail.
- **Sent** appears when Auto Send is complete. For unsent messages, open Outbox.
 - Press **⊙** → **Outbox opens**
 - ***⊙** appears next to failed Auto Send messages.

Custom Fixed Text (Japanese Only)

Save phrases to Custom Fixed Text (No.118 to 127)

Saving Text

Press **5** → Select **5** メール設定 → Press **1** → Select **0** ユーザー定型文 → Press **1** → Select a number → Press **1** → Enter text → Press **1** → Press **1**

- Enter up to 128 single-byte alphanumeric (126 single-byte katakana or 61 double-byte characters).

Editing Text

Press **5** → Select **5** メール設定 → Press **1** → Select **0** ユーザー定型文 → Press **1** → Select a number → Press **1** → Edit text → Press **1** → Press **1**

- To delete text, open an entry and press **1** for 1+ seconds → Press **1** → Press **1**



When sending Sky Mail or Greeting messages using Custom Fixed Text to other Vodafone handsets, the recipient must have the same Custom Fixed Text saved under the same number to read the message.

Report Setting

Set an address for Report Spam (see P.4-32)

Default: stop@meiwaku.vodafone.jp

Press **5** → Select **5** Mail Settings → Press **1** → Select **4** Center Address → Press **1** → Enter Security Code → Select **4** Report Setting → Press **1** → Enter an address → Press **1**

- Do not change address unless instructed to do so. Access to the service will be disabled.



For more information, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.16-16).

Reply with Original

Quote the original message text when replying

Default: Off

Activating Reply with Original

Press **5** → Select **5** Mail Settings → Press **1** → Select **2** Super Mail or **3** Sky Mail → Press **1** → Select Reply w/ Original → Press **1** → Choose **1** On → Press **1** → Enter quote header comment → Press **1**

- The quote header comment --○○ さんは言いました -- can be changed.

Canceling Reply with Original

Press **5** → Select **5** Mail Settings → Press **1** → Select **2** Super Mail or **3** Sky Mail → Press **1** → Select Reply w/ Original → Press **1** → Choose **2** Off → Press **1**



- The quote header comment counts toward the character limit.
- Changes to the quote header apply to both Super Mail and Sky Mail.
- To select whether to quote the original message or not for individual replies, see P.4-19.

Super Mail Settings

Rejected Files

When Auto Retrieve (see P.6-8) is active, specify file types to reject.

Select from the following file types:

Type	Format
Images	JPEG (📷/.jpg), PNG (🖼️/.png)
Melodies	SMAF (🎵/.mmf), Melody (🎵/.smd), Original Ring Tone (📞/.sjm)
Animation	JPEG Animation (📺), PNG Animation (📺), PNG/JPEG Animation (📺), MNG (📺/.mng), E-Animation (📺/.nva)
Movies	MPEG-4 (🎬/.3gp)
Others	vCard (📇/.vcf), vCalendar (📅/.vcs), vBookmark (📌/.vbm), vMessage (📧/.vmg), vNote (📝/.vnt), Text (📄/.txt), HTML (🌐/.html), MML (📱/.mml), SVG (🖼️/.svg), EML (📧/.eml), Dictionary (📖/.sdj), Movie Mask (🎬/.msk)
Unsupported	Other than the above

Rejected Files is **Off** by default.

- 1 Press **5**, select **5** Mail Settings and press **1**
- 2 Select **2** Super Mail and press **1**
- 3 Select **5** Rejected Files and press **1**
- 4 Enter Security Code
- 5 Choose **1** On and press **1**
 - To accept all files, choose **2** Off → Press **1**
- 6 Select a file type and press **1** **Check**
 - changes to .
 - To uncheck, select file type with and press **1** **Check**.
- 7 Repeat Step 6 for other types
- 8 Press **1**
- 9 Choose **1** Yes and press **1**



Rejected files are deleted from the Server.

Tip Retrieve selections in **Download Rest** (see P.2-8) and **Select Contents** (see P.5-3) take priority over Rejected Files setting.

Additional Settings

Save & Send Image Automatically save new Sha-mail images to Data Folder before attaching them to messages (see **Basic P.7-42**)

Default On

Press **⏏** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏏** → Select **4 2-Touch Mail** → Press **⏏** → Select **2 Save & Send Image** → Press **⏏** → Choose **1 On** (activate) or **2 Off** (cancel) → Press **⏏**

Auto Retrieve Retrieve complete Super Mail automatically

Default Manual

Press **⏏** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏏** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏏** → Select **1 Auto Retrieve** → Press **⏏** → Select **1 Auto** or **2 Manual** → Press **⏏**

Note

- Even when Auto Retrieve is active, Super Mail Notices may appear when signal is weak or message is over 30 KB.
- When short, complete message may be delivered automatically even if **Manual** is set.

Sender Name Enter name to appear in outgoing mail

Default Off

Activating

Press **⏏** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏏** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏏** → Select **3 Sender Name** → Press **⏏** → Choose **1 On** → Press **⏏** → Enter name → Press **⏏**

- Save one entry only.
- Use up to 16 single-byte alphanumerics.

Canceling

Press **⏏** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏏** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏏** → Select **3 Sender Name** → Press **⏏** → Choose **2 Off** → Press **⏏**

Tip

- If set, Sender Name (i.e. **Harry Bear**) appears before mail address: **Harry Bear**<□□□□□□□□□□@△.vodafone.ne.jp>
- Sender Name appearance may vary by mail software.

Recipient Name Names saved in Phone Book appear for outgoing mail

Default Off

Press **⏏** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏏** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏏** → Select **4 Recipient Name** → Press **⏏** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **⏏**

Note This function does not work with Secret Mode Phone Book entries.

Tip

- If set, Recipient Name (i.e. **Teddy Bear**) appears before mail address: **Teddy Bear**<□□□□□□□□□□@△△△△△△△△.△△.△△>
- Recipient Name appearance may vary by mail software.

Reply Address Designate a different mail address for replies

Default Off

Activating

Press **⏏** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏏** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏏** → Select **3 Reply Address** → Press **⏏** → Choose **1 On** → Press **⏏** → Enter address → Press **⏏**

- To open Phone Book for address entry, press **⏏** (**TEL**).
- To change the setting for individual messages, see P.3-15.

Canceling

Press **⏏** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏏** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏏** → Select **3 Reply Address** → Press **⏏** → Choose **2 Off** → Press **⏏**

Note

- Replies are sent to the designated address only when the Reply function is used.
- This function may not work depending on the recipient's mail software.

Signature Save a name, etc. and set it to appear at the end of sent messages

Default Off

Saving a Signature

Press **⏏** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏏** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏏** → Select **7 Signature** → Press **⏏** → Select **4 Save to List** → Press **⏏** → Select a number → Press **⏏** → Enter a signature → Press **⏏** → Press **⏏**

- Save up to 2 Signatures (100 single-byte characters each).

Activating/Canceling







Press **⏏** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏏** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏏** → Select **7 Signature** → Press **⏏** → Select **1 Signature 1**, **2 Signature 2** or **3 Off** → Press **⏏**

Sky Mail Settings

Setting PIN







Set PIN to reject incoming messages without the matching PIN. Sender must include the same PIN to send mail to your handset. PIN Setting is effective only when PIN Filter is active. PIN Filter cannot be used for Super Mail messages.

PIN




- 1 Press , select **5 Mail Settings** and press 
- 2 Select **3 Sky Mail** and press 
- 3 Select **1 Security** and press 
- 4 Select **1 PIN Setting** and press 
- 5 Enter a 4-digit PIN and press 

PIN Filter

PIN Filter is **Off** by default.

- 1 Press , select **5 Mail Settings** and press 
- 2 Select **3 Sky Mail** and press 
- 3 Select **1 Security** and press 
- 4 Select **2 PIN Filter** and press 
- 5 Select a type and press 

1 Standard	Standard Sky Mail messages
2 Concatenation	Two or more linked messages
3 Polling	Location Info/Polling requests
4 E-Mail	E-mail messages

- 6 Choose **1 On** and press 
 - Repeat Steps 5 - 6 for other types.
 - To cancel, choose **2 Off** → Press 
- 7 Press  to exit

Note Senders of rejected mail are not notified.

Tip When PIN Filter is active for **1 Standard**, e-mail under 128 bytes is also rejected.

Address Filter

Activate Address Filter to reject incoming mail from up to 10 numbers (digits only) or addresses saved in Reject List.


- This function does not filter Super Mail.
- Reject List is effective only when Address Filter is active.

Saving to Reject List

- 1 Press , select **5 Mail Settings** and press 
- 2 Select **3 Sky Mail** and press 
- 3 Select **1 Security** and press 
- 4 Select **3 Reject List** and press 
- 5 Select a number and press 
 - Select ----- to add a new entry.
 - To edit entry, select an entry → Press  → Edit → Press 
 - To delete entry, select an entry → Press  → Press  for 1+ seconds → Press 
- 6 Enter a phone number or mail address and press 
 - Enter up to 60 single-byte alphanumeric characters for mail addresses.
 - Repeat Steps 5 - 6 for additional entries.
- 7 Press  to exit

Activating Address Filter

Address Filter is **Off** by default.

- 1 Press , select **5 Mail Settings** and press 
- 2 Select **3 Sky Mail** and press 
- 3 Select **1 Security** and press 
- 4 Select **4 Address Filter** and press 
- 5 Choose **1 On** and press 
 - To cancel, choose **2 Off** → Press 

Additional Settings

Set Priority

Set priority when sending mail

Default Normal

Press **☞** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **●** → Select **3 Sky Mail**
→ Press **●** → Select **2 Set Priority** → Press **●** → Select from **1 Low**
to **4 By Express** → Press **●**

- To change priority for individual messages, see P.3-14.

Note

By Express messages are delivered faster for additional fees. Other levels indicate the importance of the message and do not affect delivery speed.

Sender

Save Sender name for Greeting

Press **☞** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **●** → Select **3 Sky Mail** →
Press **●** → Select **3 Sender** → Press **●** → Enter name → Press **●**

■ To delete Sender mid-entry, press **⏏** for 1+ seconds → Press **●**

- Enter up to 12 single-byte alphanumeric (10 single-byte katakana or 3 double-byte characters).
 - Using both single and double-byte characters may reduce character entry limit.

Super Mail Group

Creating Mail Groups

Create up to 10 Mail Groups to send Super Mail to multiple recipients at one time.
Save up to five members per Group.

- 1** Press **☞**, select **5 Mail Settings** and press **●**
- 2** Select **2 Super Mail** and press **●**
- 3** Select **2 Super Mail Group** and press **●**
Default Group names (**スーパーグループ 1** to **スーパーグループ 0**) appear.
- 4** Select a number and press **●**
 - Deleting Mail Groups: see P.6-14
 - Deleting Members: see P.6-14

5 Press **●** and enter a Group name

- Enter up to 14 single-byte characters.

Tip

To return to the default name, delete name entered here and press **●**.

6 Press **●**

Group name is set.

7 Select a number and press **●**

- Select ----- to add a new entry.

8 Phone Book

1 Select **1 Phone Book** and press **●**

2 Open an entry

■ To search Phone Book, see **Basic P.5-14 - 5-15**.

Direct Entry

1 Select **2 Mobile Number** or **3 E-Mail** and press **●**

2 Enter recipient's Vodafone handset number or mail address

■ To open Phone Book, press **☺** (**TEL**).

9 Press **●**

Member is set.

10 Repeat Steps 7 - 9 to add members

11 Press **☺** to exit

- To create more Mail Groups, press **☺** after Step 10 and repeat Steps 4 - 10.

Note

Duplicate phone numbers or addresses cannot be saved in the same Group.

Deleting Groups

Deleting Mail Groups

Delete one Group at a time or all Groups at one time.

- 1 Press , select **5 Mail Settings** and press
- 2 Select **2 Super Mail** and press
- 3 Select **2 Super Mail Group** and press
- 4 Select a Group
 - Skip this step when deleting all Groups.
- 5 Press **Menu**
 - When there is no member, choose **1 Yes** → Press (All Groups are deleted.)
- 6 Select **Delete One Group or Delete All** and press
- 7 Choose **1 Yes** and press
 - Repeat Steps 4 - 7 to delete other Groups.
- 8 Press to exit

Deleting Members

Delete one member at a time or all members at one time.

- 1 Press , select **5 Mail Settings** and press
- 2 Select **2 Super Mail** and press
- 3 Select **2 Super Mail Group** and press
- 4 Select a Group and press
- 5 Select a member
- 6 Press **Menu**
 - When selecting a number with no entry, choose **1 Yes** → Press (All members are deleted.)
- 7 Select **Delete or Delete All** and press
- 8 Choose **1 Yes** and press
 - Repeat Steps 5 - 8 to delete other members.
- 9 Press to exit

BBS

Save and share BBS messages.

- Send Polling request (see **P.3-14**) to receive BBS messages (Sky Mail option setting).
- Save and share Location Info or Auto Reply message (see **P.6-3**).

BBS

Share messages & Location Info

Default Off

Activating BBS

- Press → Select **0 Mail Box** → Press → Select **6 BBS** → Press → Select **1 Settings** → Press → Choose **1 On** → Press → Select **1 Message**, **2 Location Info** or **3 Link to Auto Reply** → Press
- **Enter Code** appears for **2 Location Info**. Enter Security Code → Choose **1 Yes** → Press
 - Select **3 Link to Auto Reply** to share Auto Reply message (see **P.6-3**).

Canceling BBS

- Press → Select **0 Mail Box** → Press → Select **6 BBS** → Press → Select **1 Settings** → Press → Choose **2 Off** → Press
- Saved messages remain even after BBS is canceled. Reactivate BBS to use.
 - Set PIN to restrict message access (see **P.6-10**).

Saving Messages

Save messages & Location Info

Saving Messages

- Press → Select **0 Mail Box** → Press → Select **6 BBS** → Press → Select **2 New Message** → Press → Enter message → Press
- To delete the message mid-entry, press for 1+ seconds → Press
 - Activate BBS to share the message.
 - **掲示板データなし** appears by default.
 - Enter up to 128 single-byte alphanumerics (126 single-byte katakana or 61 double-byte characters).
 - Using both single and double-byte characters may reduce character entry limit.

Saving Location Info

- Press → Select **0 Mail Box** → Press → Select **6 BBS** → Press → Select **3 Location Info** → Press → Enter Security Code → Press → The latest information appears → Press **Back**
- To update opened Location Info, press **Update** → Press
 - Activate BBS to share the message.

6

Mail Settings

6

Mail Settings

Polling

- When BBS is accessed, a Polling message (📧/📧) appears in Inbox.
P Sky Mail appears when messages with 📧 are opened.

Reset

Reset Mail Settings

Refer to P.16-2 for the settings affected by Reset

Press → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press → Select **Reset** → Press → Enter Security Code → Select **1 Reset** → Press → Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** → Press

Deleting Sent & Received Messages

Delete mail messages at one time

Press → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press → Select **Reset** → Press → Enter Security Code → Select **2 Delete All** → Press → Select **1 Select All** or **2 Read/Sent Only** → Press → Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** → Press

- Messages are deleted as follows:

1 Select All	Delete all Inbox, Sent and Outbox messages
2 Read/Sent Only	Delete all unprotected read Inbox and Sent messages

Web

BROWSER BY

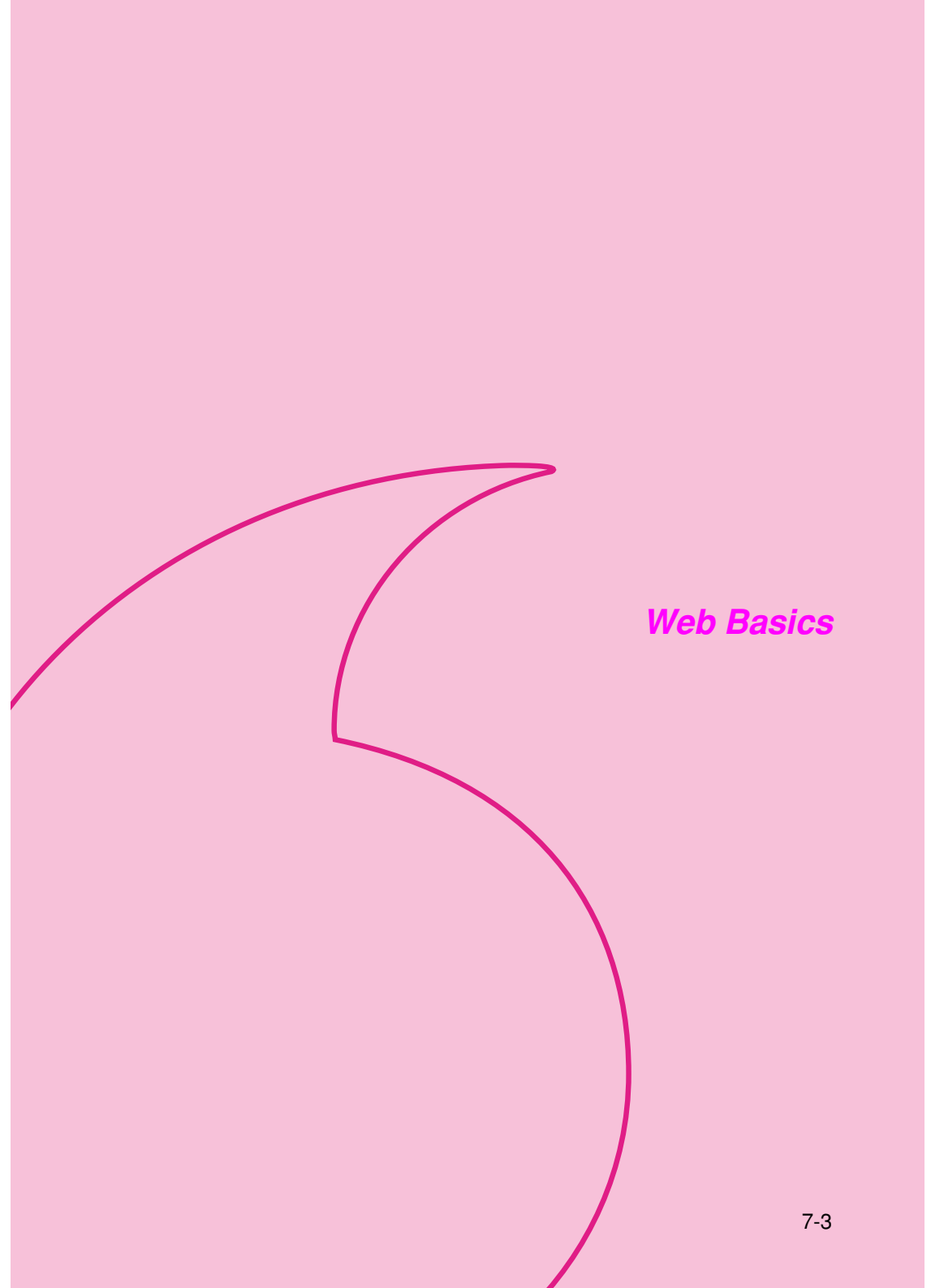


OPENWAVE



Browser software copyright © 2004 Openwave Systems Inc. All rights reserved.

MEMO



Web Basics

Getting Started

Below follows an overview of information content and storage.

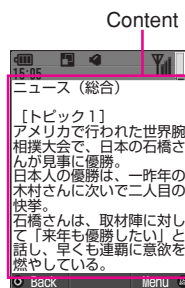
Web Content

Web Info Content

Sample Web information page:

Press **Back** to see the previous page.

From the previous page, press **Menu** and then press **Next** to return to the initial page.



Copying Text

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Copy** → Press **Enter** → Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on **Basic P.4-16**

- Text can only be copied when **Copy** appears.

Web Info Sounds

Some Web information sounds play automatically. Press **Stop** to stop playback.

Changing Playback Volume

Open information containing sound and press **Menu** → Select **Playback Volume** → Press **Enter** → Adjust level → Press **Enter** (Alternatively, press **Volume Up** or **Volume Down** during playback.)

- When the volume level is specified by information providers, you cannot increase the volume above the specified level.
- In Manner Mode, volume level is set in Manner Settings, **Sound Volume** (see **Basic P.3-5**).

Manner Mode

While information appears, press **Stop** for 1+ seconds to toggle Manner Mode **On** and **Off**.

- In Manner Mode, volume level is set in Manner Settings, **Sound Volume** (see **Basic P.3-5**).
- When the volume level is specified by information providers, sound plays at whichever setting is lower.

Note Standby returns after 20 minutes of inactivity.

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is an encryption protocol for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information such as credit card numbers. Electronic certificates are saved on handset (see **P.9-3**).

Disclaimer

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the information. Opening secure information constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. Vodafone, VeriSign Japan, Baltimore Technologies Japan and Entrust Japan cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Saving Information

Web information is saved in Cache Memory and Message Folder. Cache Memory and Message Folder contents remain even after exiting Web or turning handset power off.

Cache Memory

Web information and Vodafone Web Menus are saved temporarily in Cache Memory. When full, oldest items are automatically deleted to make space for new ones. Previously opened information loads from Cache Memory.

Tip Some information have expiry dates and are deleted from Cache Memory upon expiry.

Message Folder

Message Folder contents remain until deleted manually. Approximately 3,000 KB is shared between Inbox (Mail), Favorites or Message Folder (Web), and Saved Information (Station).

- To use SD Memory Card Message Folder, see **Basic P.12-6**.
- Memory Status: see **P.1-5**

Tip Some types of information cannot be saved to Message Folder.

Using Web

Use Web to access the Mobile Internet for information as well as image, sound and other files.

Opening Vodafone Web Menu

Access Mobile Internet sites by selecting a topic from Vodafone Web Menu. Perform Network Setup before using Web (see P.1-4).

1 Press **☺**, select **1 Vodafone Web** and press **⏏**

Vodafone Web Menu opens.

- Address questions about Vodafone Web to Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.16-16).
- Vodafone Web Menu content is subject to change.

2 Highlight a menu item and press **⏏**

- Handset remains connected to the Network even if it is closed (clamshell closed).
- To disconnect, press **☺**.

3 Repeat Step 2 to open additional links

■ Basic Operations: see P.7-8

4 Press **☺** to exit Web

■ To exit fee-based information, press **☺** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏏**

Using Log

■ Open information and press **☺** **Menu** → Press **☺** **Log** → Select a title → Press **⏏**

- Up to 20 log entries are saved. When Log memory is full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.
- The log is cleared when Web access ends.

Opening Secured Information

■ When accessing SSL/TLS protected information, **High Security Protected** appears. Select **1 OK** → Press **⏏**

- **⚠** appears.
- To disable warning messages, see P.9-3.

When Authentication is Required

■ Information may require authentication for access. If requested, enter user ID or password and press **⏏**.



Information and Vodafone Web Menu saved in Cache Memory may open without connecting to the Network.

Entering URLs Directly

Enter URLs directly to access Mobile Internet sites.

Perform Network Setup before using Web (see P.1-4).

1 Press **☺**, select **5 Internet** and press **⏏**

2 Select **1 New** and press **⏏**

3 Enter URL

- To copy from Phone Book, press **☺** **Menu** → Press **☺** **Phone Book** → Open a Phone Book entry (see Basic P.5-14 - 5-15) → Select an item → Press **⏏** twice
- To read from barcode, press **☺** **Menu** → Press **☺** **Scan** → Select **1 Scan Code** → Press **⏏** → Perform Steps 2 - 4 on Basic P.16-30 - 16-31 → Press **⏏**
- To use Text Scanner, press **☺** **Menu** → Press **☺** **Scan** → Select **2 Text Scanner** → Press **⏏** → Perform Steps 2 - 6 on Basic P.16-37 - 16-38

4 Press **⏏**

5 Select **1 Send** and press **⏏**

■ To edit URL, select **2 Edit** → Press **⏏** → Edit URL → Press **⏏**

6 Press **☺** to exit

Using Internet from Web Info

■ Open information and press **☺** **Menu** → Select **Internet** → Press **⏏** → Perform Steps 2 - 6



Some sites may not be accessed. Images, layouts, etc. may not appear the same as on PCs.

Using URL Log

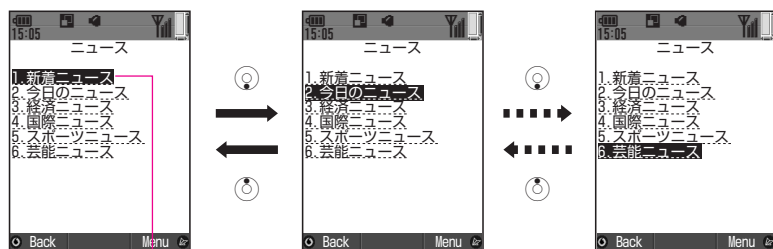
Access Mobile Internet sites using previously entered URLs. Up to 20 URLs are saved. When Log memory is full, oldest URLs are deleted to make room for new ones.

- 1 Press **○**, select **3** *Internet* and press **○**
- 2 Select **2** *Access Log List* and press **○**
 - Shortcut: Select a URL and press **⏏** *Send*.
- 3 Select a URL and press **○**
- 4 Select **1** *Send* and press **○**
 - To edit URL, select **2** *Edit* → Press **○** → Edit URL → Press **○**
 - To delete Log, select **3** *Delete* → Press **○** → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press **○**

Basic Operations

Moving Cursor

Move cursor to select items. Selectable items are underlined with a dotted line. Use **○** to scroll through items.



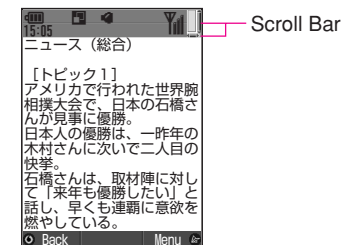
Cursor

Use **○** to move left and right when multiple items are listed in one row. Cursor does not appear when there are no selectable items.

Scrolling Pages

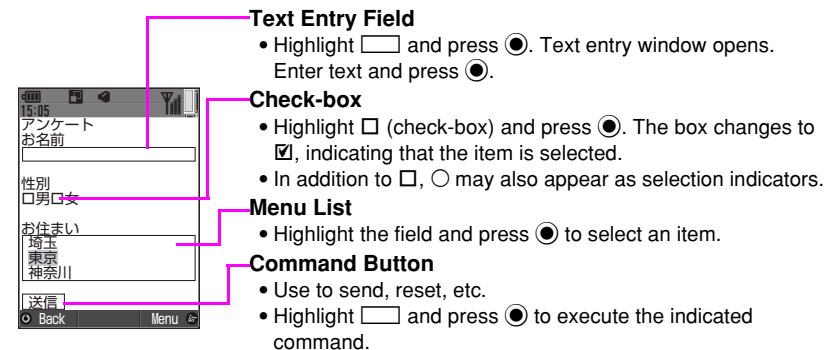
Scroll bar appears at the top. Orange bars indicate current position.

Use **○** to scroll. Orange bars slide accordingly.



Text Entry & Item Selection

Enter text or select items to send information.



Input Memory

- Entered text is saved to Input Memory, except Security Code and entries made in secured sites. Use saved text in other applications.
- Up to 20 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

Using Input Memory

- In a text entry window, press **⏏** *Menu* → Select **7** *Saved Information* → Press **○** → Select **2** *Input Memory* → Press **○** → Select an entry → Press **○**

Using Linked Info

Use numbers, addresses or URLs (*http://* or *https://*) to place calls, send Sky/Super Mail or access Mobile Internet sites.

- Available only when numbers, addresses and URLs are underlined with a dotted line.
- Words may be substituted for the numbers, addresses and URLs.

1 Open information containing a phone number, mail address or URL

2 Phone Numbers

1 Highlight a number and press ●

2 Select *Dial* and press ●

The number is dialed.

Mail Addresses

1 Highlight an address and press ●

2 Select *Send* and press ●

3 Select 1 *Send Super Mail* or 2 *Send Sky Mail* and press ●

■ Creating a Message: see P.3-3

URLs

1 Highlight a URL and press ●

Handset connects to the Network.

- **High Security Protected** appears for URLs starting with *https://*.

To continue, select 1 **OK** and press ●.

Saving to Phone Book

■ Open information and select a phone number or mail address → Press ● →

Select *Save* → Press ● → Select 1 *New Entry* or 2 *New Item* → Press ● →

See **Basic** P.5-3 - 5-5 for more about Phone Book



Advanced Features

Images

Download and save images from Mobile Internet sites to Data Folder. Use images as Wallpaper/Display Images.

Data Folder

Save images to Data Folder. Some images cannot be saved due to size or other factors.

8

Advanced Features

1 Open information containing images

2 Select an image and press ●

- Selected image is outlined.
- Files can only be saved when **To Data Folder** appears.

3 Select **To Data Folder** and press ●

Title entry window opens. Edit title (file name) as necessary.

- To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●
- Press **Return** to return.



4 Press ●

To select a folder, see **Basic P.13-8**.

- To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press ●

5 Press ●

- When memory is full, delete files and try again (see **Basic P.13-47**).

Linked Images

- From Menu, select **To Link Address** and press ● to jump to the linked site.

Wallpaper & Display Images

Save images as Wallpaper or as Display Images to use them for Power On/Off, Alarm or incoming calls.

- Some images may be too large to use as Wallpaper or Display Images.
- Image files saved as Wallpaper or Display Images are not saved to Data Folder.

1 Open information containing images

2 Select an image and press ●

- Selected image is outlined.
- Images can only be used when **Save As Wallpaper** or **To Display Images** appears.

3 Wallpaper

1 Select **Save As Wallpaper** and press ●

The following display options appear:

Centered	Image appears at the center in its original size
Tile	Duplicates of the image are arranged like tiles over Display
Full Screen	Image is enlarged to cover the full display area
Enlarge Display	Image is enlarged until the width or height reaches the edges of Display

- To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●
- Press **Return** to return.

- For E-Animation (NEVA files) and images larger than Display, the image appears → Press ● to complete

2 Select an option and press ●

3 Press ●

- Existing image is replaced.



8

Advanced Features

Display Images

1 Select **To Display Images** and press ●

- E-Animation (NEVA files) and MNG files cannot be used for **Incoming Call** and **Alarm**.
- Maximum image size:

Power On	W 120 x H 130 dots	Incoming Call	W 120 x H 38 dots
Power Off	W 120 x H 130 dots	Alarm	W 120 x H 51 dots

Display Images appear 200% larger.

- To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●
 - Press **Return** to return.

2 Select an item and press ●

Image appears.

- For E-Animation (NEVA files), press ● to complete.

3 Use **Cursor** to specify display area and press ●

- Depending on size or type, display area cannot be specified for some images.
- Existing image is replaced.

Saving to Data Folder

1 Open information containing sound files

2 Select a file and press ●

- Files can only be saved when **To Data Folder** appears.

3 Select **To Data Folder** and press ●

Title entry window opens. Edit title (file name) as necessary.

4 Press ●

- To select a folder, see **Basic P.13-8**.

- To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press ●

5 Press ●

- When memory is full, delete files and try again (see **Basic P.13-47**).

Melody Files

Play or download and save sounds (melodies) from Mobile Internet sites.

Sampling Melodies

1 Open information containing sound files

2 Select a file and press ●

3 Select **Play** and press ●

The sound plays.

- Press **Back** to stop playback.
- To adjust volume, press **Up** (up) or **Down** (down) during playback.
- To change tone or loudness, select **Tone** or **Adjust Loudness** → Press ●
(see **Basic P.9-13 - 9-14**)
- To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●
 - Press **Return** to return.









Linked Melodies

- From Menu, select **To Link Address** and press ● to jump to the linked site.








Dictionary Files

Download and save Dictionary files from Mobile Internet sites to Data Folder.
Refer to [Basic](#)P.4-14 for the handling of Dictionary files.

Title & Version

- 1 Open information containing Dictionary files
 -  indicates Dictionary files.
- 2 Select a file and press 
- 3 Select **Show** and press 
Title and version appear.
 - To save directly, select **Save Dictionary** → Press  → Select a number → Press 
 - When overwriting, choose **Yes** → Press 
 - To open properties, select **Property** → Press 
 - Press  to return.





Saving to Data Folder

- 1 Open information containing Dictionary files
 -  indicates Dictionary files.
- 2 Select a file and press 
- 3 Select **To Data Folder** and press 
Title entry window opens. Edit title (file name) as necessary.
- 4 Press 
 - To select a folder, see [Basic](#)P.13-8.
 - To switch to SD Memory Card, press  **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press 
- 5 Press 
 - When memory is full, delete files and try again (see [Basic](#)P.13-47).






vFiles

Download and save vFiles from Mobile Internet sites to Data Folder.
Refer to [Basic](#)P.13-38 for the handling of vFiles.

Contents

- 1 Open information containing vFiles
- 2 Select a file and press 
 - Contents can only be viewed when **Show** appears.
- 3 Select **Show** and press 
Contents appear.
 - To import vFiles, perform Step 2 on [Basic](#)P.13-41.
 - To open properties, select **Property** → Press 
 - Press  to return.

Saving to Data Folder

- 1 Open information containing vFiles
- 2 Select a file and press 
 - Files can only be saved when **To Data Folder** appears.
 - To attach to mail, select **Copy** → Press  → Perform Steps 3 - 6 on P.3-11
- 3 Select **To Data Folder** and press 
Title entry window opens. Edit title (file name) as necessary.
- 4 Press 
 - To select a folder, see [Basic](#)P.13-8.
 - To switch to SD Memory Card, press  **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press 
- 5 Press 
 - When memory is full, delete files and try again (see [Basic](#)P.13-47).

Downloading Chaku-Uta




Download and save Chaku-Uta from Mobile Internet sites to Data Folder.

- Download files of up to 200 KB each.
- Chaku-Uta is a Trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

1 Open information containing Chaku-Uta


2 Select a file and press

Confirmation appears.

- When a V-Application is paused () , choose **1 Yes** → Press 
- When playing music, choose **1 Yes** → Press 





3 Press **Yes**

When download is complete, Audio Menu opens.

- To cancel downloading, press  **No**.

4 Select **2 Handset** or **3 Memory Card** and press

Title entry window opens. Edit title (file name) as necessary.

- Some files cannot be saved.
- To play the song, select **1 Play** → Press 
- To stop playback, press 
- To open properties, select **4 Property** → Press 
- Press  **Back** to return.

5 Press

- To select a folder, see [Basic P.13-8](#).

6 Press

- When memory is full, delete files and try again (see [Basic P.13-47](#)).

Favorites, Message Folder & Bookmarks

Save frequently used information/URLs to Favorites, Message Folder or Bookmarks.

Function	Description	Storage Media	Moving Title
Favorites	Save Mobile Internet site content.	Handset	Available
Message Folder	Handset does not connect to the Network to open saved information.	Handset/ SD Memory Card	N/A
Bookmarks	Save links to Mobile Internet sites. Handset connects to the Network to access the site.	Handset/ SD Memory Card	N/A

- Save information of some interest to Message Folder and save frequently used information to Favorites.
- Sharp's **Space Town** Mobile Internet site (Japanese Only) is bookmarked by default. Visit **Space Town** for various downloads such as Wallpapers, games and Dictionary files.

Saving Information & URLs

- Save up to 30 links in Bookmarks.
- For Favorites and Message Folder memory, see [P.16-11](#).

1 Open information

2 Press **Menu**

- Information can only be saved when **Save** appears.

3 Select **Save** and press

- Available destinations appear.

4 Select **1 Favorites**, **2 Message Folder** or **3 Bookmarks** and press






Title entry window opens. Edit title as necessary.

5 Press

For Favorites, skip the following step.

6 Select **1 Handset** or **2 Memory Card** and press

Memory Status

■ Press  → Select **Functions** → Press  → Select **3 Settings 1** → Press  →
 Select **1 Memory** → Press  → Select **2 Memory Usage** → Press 



Data may be partially altered when:

- Bookmarks are transferred between handset and SD Memory Card
- Bookmarks (vFile) in Data Folder are transferred to handset or SD Memory Card

Opening Saved Info & Links

1 Press

2 **Favorites & Message Folder**

1 Select **3 Favorites or 7 Message Folder** and press

■ To rearrange the Favorites list, select a title → Press **Menu** → Select **Move** → Press → Use to move the title → Press

■ To switch to SD Memory Card Message Folder, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press

2 Select a title and press

■ To remove information from Favorites, press **Menu** → Select **Save** → Press → Select **1 Cancel Favorite** → Press

■ Information deleted from Favorites appears in Message Folder.

Bookmarks

1 Select **4 Bookmarks** and press

■ To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press

2 Select a title and press **Send**

Scroll Unit (for Message Folder)

■ Press → Select **7 Message Folder** → Press → Press **Menu** → Select **Scroll Unit** → Press → Select a unit → Press

Using Bookmarks from Web Info

■ Press **Menu** → Select **Bookmarks** → Press → Select a title → Press **Send**

Editing & Deleting

Editing Titles

1 Press

2 **Favorites & Message Folder**

1 Select **3 Favorites or 7 Message Folder** and press

2 Select a title and press **Menu**

3 Select **Change Title** and press

Bookmarks

1 Select **4 Bookmarks** and press

2 Select a title and press

3 Select **Edit** and press

3 Edit title and press

Deleting Entries

1 Press

2 **Favorites & Message Folder**

1 Select **3 Favorites or 7 Message Folder** and press

2 Select a title and press **Menu**

• Select any title when deleting all.

Bookmarks

1 Select **4 Bookmarks** and press

2 Select a title and press

• Select any title when deleting all.

3 Select **Delete or Delete All** and press

■ To delete all, enter Security Code.

4 Choose **1 Yes** and press

Home

Designate a site as Home. Select **Home** from Web menu or while viewing other information to open site. Sharp's **Space Town** Mobile Internet site is set by default.

Designating

- 1 Open page to designate
- 2 Press **Menu**
 - A page can only be designated as Home when **Home** appears.
- 3 Select **Home** and press
- 4 Select **Home Setting** and press
- 5 **Designating Current Information**
 - 1 Select **Current Page** and press
 - Page can only be designated when **Current Page** appears.

Specifying URL

- 1 Select **Enter Address** and press
- 2 Enter URL and press

Resetting

- 1 Select **Home Reset** and press
 - Home Setting returns to default.

Accessing

- 1 Press , select **Home** and press

To Jump to Home from Other Information

- Press **Menu** → Select **Home** → Press → Select **Move to Home** → Press

Auto Delivery Service

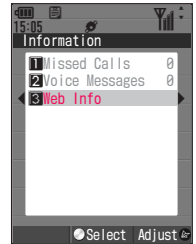
Register with Auto Delivery Service to receive update notifications and other information to handset. Use the notification to access the information provider or Mobile Internet sites to download more information.

Register from Mobile Internet sites that provide Auto Delivery Service.

Receiving Information

Delivered information is automatically saved to Message Folder.

- 1 When new information arrives, animation plays and Information Menu opens appears.
- 2 Select **Web Info** and press
 - Title list of unread information appears.
- 3 Select a title and press
 - Information appears (and is deleted from Unread Messages).
 - To check another unread information, press → Select a title → Press



Ring Tone Volume

- Press (up) or (down) to adjust volume.
 - Ring Tone Level setting (see [Basic P.9-2](#)) changes accordingly.
 - Cancel Manner Mode to adjust the level (see [Basic P.3-3](#)).

Quick Silent

- Press to instantly mute incoming information tone for that information only.

In Standby

- Press → Select **Unread Messages** → Press → Select a title → Press
 - Once read, information appears in **Message Folder**.

Tip If information is received during an operation, Information Menu may not open.

Sub Menu Settings

Set Display Size Change font and image size

Default: Standard/100%

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Set Display Size** → Press **Enter** → Select **1 Font Size** or **2 Image Size** → Press **Enter** → Select a size → Press **Enter**

- Note**
- Some images always appear at 100% depending on the original size.
 - Select **100%** if information does not appear properly at **200%**.

- Tip**
- Press **F2** to toggle image size between 200% and 100%. (**F2** appears for 100% and **F3** for 200%.)
 - To change Font Size from Font Settings menu, see **Basic P.8-4**.

Search this Page Search within information, or jump to the beginning or end of information

New Search

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Search this Page** → Press **Enter** → Select **1 Search** → Press **Enter** → Enter text to search → Press **Enter**

- Only the first text is highlighted if more than one is found.

To Search More by Same Text

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Search this Page** → Press **Enter** → Select **2 Search Next** → Press **Enter**

- Text is deleted upon exiting Web.

To Jump to the Beginning or End of Information

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Search this Page** → Press **Enter** → Select **Top Jump** or **Bottom Jump** → Press **Enter**

Scroll Unit (for Web Info) Select from three scroll units

Default: Line

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Scroll Unit** → Press **Enter** → Select from **1 Full Screen** to **3 Line** → Press **Enter**

Character Encoding

Change encoding when text appears distorted

Default: Auto Recognition

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Character Encoding** → Press **Enter** → Select from **1 Auto Recognition** to **5 UTF-8** → Press **Enter**

- Use Auto Recognition whenever possible.
- Character encoding cannot be changed for information opened from Message Folder or Favorites.
- The setting applies to the current information only.

Update

Update information

Mobile Internet Site Info

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Update** → Press **Enter** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **Enter**

Favorites & Message Folder Info

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Update** → Press **Enter** → Select from **1 Display Only** to **3 Cancel** → Press **Enter**

- Select **1 Display Only** to open updated information without overwriting the memory. Select **2 Overwrite** to overwrite the memory.

Reacquire

Reload image or sound files when they did not appear due to Text Only mode setting or weak signal

Open information and select an icon for image or sound file → Press **Enter** → Select **Reacquire** → Press **Enter**

- Image and sound files cannot be reloaded for information opened from Message Folder or Favorites.

Text Memo

Copy text and save to Text Memo (see **Basic P.4-18**)

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Save** → Press **Enter** → Select **Text Memo** → Press **Enter** → Use **Left Arrow** to move cursor to the first character → Press **Enter** → Use **Right Arrow** to specify text → Press **Enter** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **Enter**

- To save to SD Memory Card, press **Enter** → **SD** after specifying text.
 - Press **Enter** → **Handset** again to switch back to handset.
- Text can only be saved when **Text Memo** appears.

Property



Open information details

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Property** → Press **Enter**

- Press **Enter** again to return to information.

Activate TV

Activate TV without exiting Web




Open information and press  **Menu**  **Select *Activate TV***  **Press** 

To return to information, press  **Menu**  **Select *Return To Web***  **Press** 

- **Activate TV** does not appear when **Disable TV** is set to **On** (see [Basic](#) P.6-21).

Activate FM

Activate FM without exiting Web

Open information and press  **Menu**  **Select *Activate FM***  **Press** 


To return to information, press  **Menu**  **Select *Return To Web***  **Press** 

- **Activate FM** does not appear when **Disable FM** is set to **On** (see [Basic](#) P.6-21).

Show Certification

Open Server Certification for SSL/TLS encrypted information

Open information with SSL/TLS encryption and press  **Menu**  **Select *Show Certification***  **Press**   **Select an authority**  **Press** 

Press  twice to return to information.

Uploading Files

Upload images or other files in Data Folder to the Center via Mobile Internet sites

Open site and select *File*  **Press**   **Select an image file**
(see [Basic](#) P.13-6)  **Press**   **Select *Send***  **Press** 

- Example above is for reference only. Follow site instructions for specific procedure.
- Files are uploadable only via information that supports uploads.
- File names cannot be entered in title field.
- Copy protected files cannot be selected.



Web Settings

Basic Settings

Text Only

Select whether to download images and sounds on Mobile Internet sites automatically or to open text information only

Default Images and sounds retrieved

Press **⊙** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **●** → Select **1 Text Only** → Press **●** → Select an item not to retrieve (**Acquire Image** or **Acquire Music**) → Press **●** (appears) → Press **⊙** **Set**

- Select an item with and press **●** to download (appears).

Location Info

Choose whether or not to send your Location Info upon request

Default Confirm User

Press **⊙** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **●** → Select **5 Location Info** → Press **●** → Enter Security Code → Select from **1 Confirm User** to **3 Unsent** → Press **●**

- Handset automatically acquires current Location Info via Station service.
- Select **Confirm User** to open confirmation each time before sending Location Info.

Link Limiter

Activate Link Limiter to disable Mobile Internet access via Internet

Default Off, Link Limiter Code: 9999

Activating/Canceling

Press **⊙** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **●** → Select **6 Link Limiter** → Press **●** → Enter Link Limiter Code (4 digits) → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **●**

Tip

When Link Limiter is active, links within mail messages are also disabled.

Changing Link Limiter Code

Press **⊙** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **●** → Select **6 Link Limiter** → Press **●** → Enter Link Limiter Code (4 digits) → Select **3 Change Code** → Press **●** → Enter new code (4 digits) → Enter the same code again

Clear DNS Cache

Clear Vodafone live! Server addresses stored on handset

Index Menu ► Vodafone live! ► Network Settings ► Clear DNS Cache

Enter Security Code → Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** → Press **●**

Security

Warning Message

Show or hide warning messages before entering and exiting SSL/TLS secured information

Default On

Press **⊙** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **●** → Select **4 Security** → Press **●** → Enter Security Code → Select **1 Warning Message** → Press **●** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **●**

Show User ID

Information may require User ID
Select whether or not to send User ID upon request

Default Off

Press **⊙** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **●** → Select **4 Security** → Press **●** → Enter Security Code → Select **2 Show User ID** → Press **●** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **●**

- A unique User ID is assigned to each handset. It is different from the phone number.
- Show User ID turns **On** automatically after Network Setup (see P.1-4).

Certification

Open electronic certificates issued by Certificate Authorities (SSL/TLS Certificates) saved on handset

Press **⊙** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **●** → Select **4 Security** → Press **●** → Enter Security Code → Select **3 Certification** → Press **●** → Select an authority → Press **●**

- To read the rest of the Certificate details, press **⊙** (press **⊙** to scroll up).

Reset

Web Reset

Reset Web settings
Refer to P.16-3 for the settings affected by Reset

Press **ⓘ** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **2 Web Reset** → Press **Ⓞ** → Enter Security Code → Select **1 Reset** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** → Press **Ⓞ**

Clear Memory

Delete all information acquired from Mobile Internet sites

Press **ⓘ** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **2 Web Reset** → Press **Ⓞ** → Enter Security Code → Select **2 Clear Memory** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** → Press **Ⓞ**

Tip

- All files in the following locations will be deleted:
 - Cache
 - Favorites
 - Internet (URL log)
 - Message Folder (including unread messages)
- Bookmarks return to default (only *Space Town* is saved).

Clear Web Cache

Clear data in cache memory (see P.7-5)

Press **ⓘ** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **2 Web Reset** → Press **Ⓞ** → Enter Security Code → Select **3 Clear Web Cache** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** → Press **Ⓞ**

V-Applications

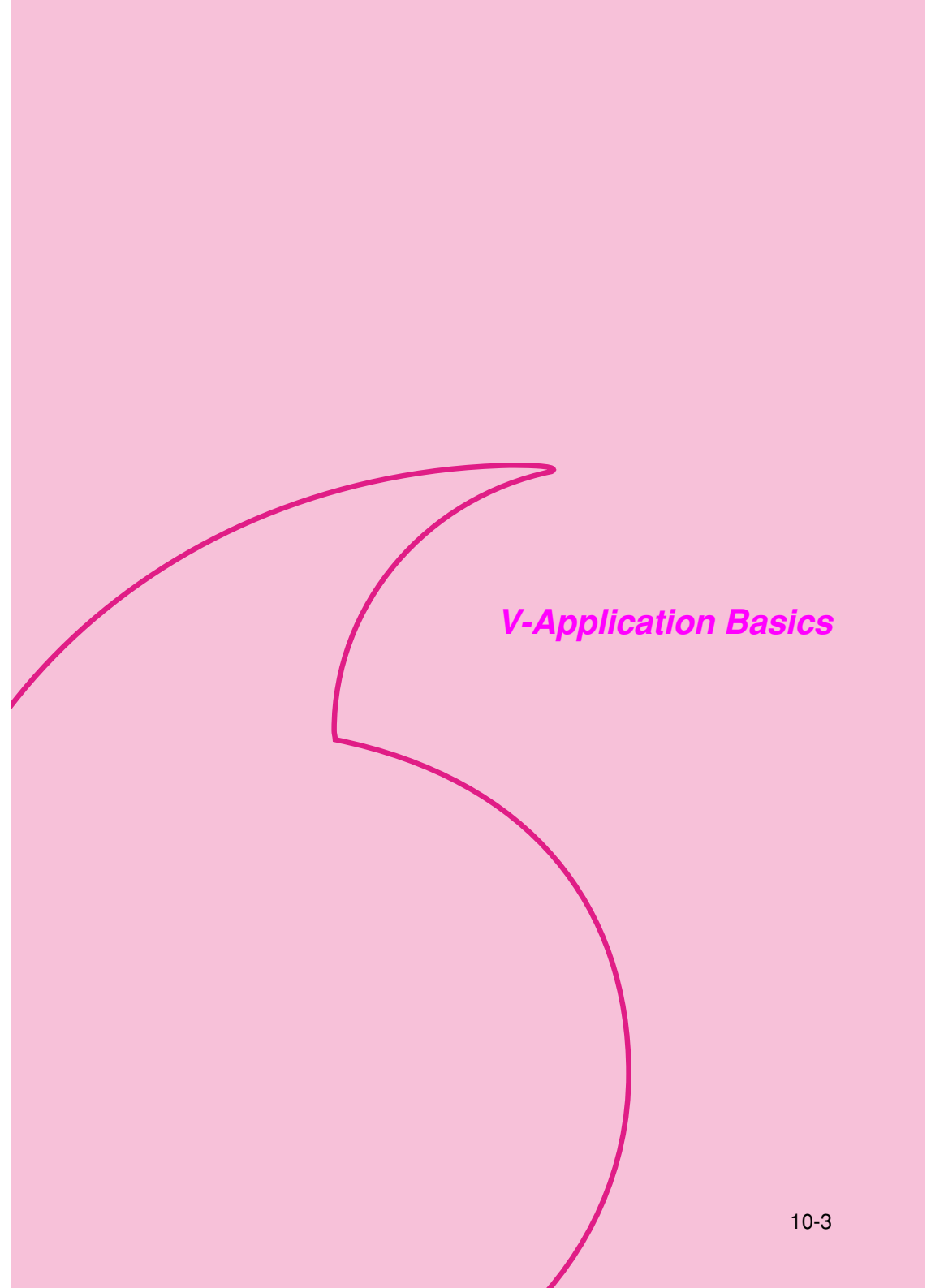


This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application.

Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 1997-2005 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

MEMO



V-Application Basics


Getting Started

Pre-loaded V-Applications

V603SH contains five default V-Applications (*HOD体験版 振るスイング! ゴルフ*, *TVnano*, *V-kara player 2* and *ケータイポストベット*).

永遠にともに is saved in Data Folder (Melodies) for *V-kara player 2*.

Title	Artist Name	Lyricist	Composer	On Display
Towani Tomoni	Kobukuro	Kentaro Kobuchi	Kentaro Kobuchi	永遠にともに

License: T-0510083 

Network Connection

Network V-Applications require a network connection. Before downloading an application, check its properties for network connection information (see **P.10-6**).

- Before using a Network V-Application, a message appears indicating that a network connection is required. To skip this confirmation, see **P.11-3**.
- For connection fees, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.16-16**).

V-Applications on SD Memory Card

Synchronize SD Memory Cards used on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices to update V-Appli Library.

- Perform Network Setup before using Web (see **P.1-4**).
- Update V-Appli Library to avoid malfunction.
- It may take some time to update V-Appli Library depending on the number of files saved, etc.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *V-Appli* ▶ *V-Appli Settings* ▶ *Synchronize*


1 Choose **Yes** and press **OK**

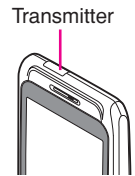
Note

V-Applications saved to SD Memory Cards from your V603SH are exclusively for use on your handset or a newly purchased Vodafone handset.

Remote Control

Use handset to remotely control a TV, VCR, etc. (A compatible V-Application is required.)

-  appears when a V-Application is remote control compatible.
- Point the infrared port (see right) directly toward the infrared port of the target device.
- The maximum distance is approximately 3 m (with a fully charged battery).
- Remote control operation may not be possible depending on ambient light level, obstacles, etc.



Video Out

Connect handset to a TV, VCR, etc. with the supplied Video Cable to view V-Application game screens on your TV.

- V-Applications that support video output are required. Check **Video Out** in Properties (see **P.10-9**).
- Before performing the steps below, connect handset to a device with the supplied Video Cable (see **Basic P.16-43**)

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *V-Appli* ▶ *V-Appli Library* ▶ *Select a V-Application*

1 Press **OK**

The V-Application game screen appears on the device.

- Press **OK** to toggle between the screen and handset Display.
 - Change image display size (see **Basic P.16-44**).

Note

- To protect your eyesight, avoid playing V-Applications on a TV for long periods.
- V-Applications started from Standby do not support Video Out.

Keitai Karaoke V-kara

Enjoy Karaoke singing with a scoring system using a compatible V-Application such as the pre-loaded *V-kara player 2*.

Note

- Howling may occur depending on the output volume. Keep handset away from a TV or decrease microphone/playback volume.
- Use the supplied Headphones (with built-in TV antenna).

Downloading V-Applications

- Some V-Applications can be downloaded to SD Memory Cards.
- Make sure signal is strong.

1 Open a Mobile Internet site offering V-Applications

2 Select a V-Application and press **Enter**

After **Analyzing V-Appli Data...**, properties appear.

■ Properties: see below

■ When a V-Application is paused (⏸), choose **1 Yes** → Press **Enter**

3 Press **Enter** **Yes**

Download starts.

- Download may take time.

■ To return to the site, press **Back** **No**.

4 V-Application is automatically saved after download (see sample screen shot on the right)

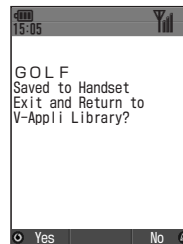
- When you download a new version of V-Application set for Standby, a confirmation appears.

5 Press **Enter** **Yes**

Web closes and V-Appli Library opens.

■ To return to the site, press **Back** **No**.

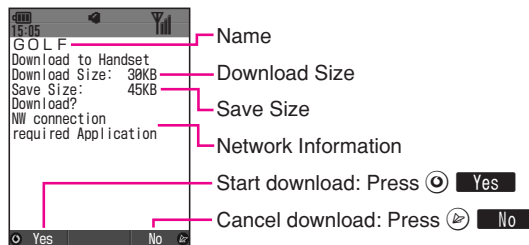
■ Starting V-Applications: see P.10-7



Properties

V-Application properties appear before download.

Check information and start.



Starting V-Applications

- V-Applications may not operate properly if Analog Conversion Cable is attached.
- Operate V-Applications with handset open (clamshell open).

Index Menu → *Vodafone live!* → *V-Appli*

1 Select **1 V-Appli Library** and press **Enter**

Last used V-Application appears first in the list (except for V-Application started from Standby).

■ When a V-Application is paused (⏸), choose **1 Yes** → Press **Enter**

■ To switch to SD Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **Enter**

2 Select a V-Application and press **Enter**

V-Application starts (⏸ appears).

- For operations, refer to the source Mobile Internet site, etc.

- If the V-Application cannot be used, V-Appli Library returns.

- For V-Applications compatible with Karaoke, a confirmation appears. Press **Enter** to start the V-Application.

■ When the V-Application can be set for Standby, choose **1 Yes** or **2 No** → Press **Enter**

- When **1 Yes** is selected with Auto Reply activated, a confirmation to cancel Auto Reply appears. Choose **1 Yes** and press **Enter** to start the V-Application.

Starting Network V-Applications

- After Step 2 above, select **1 Connect** or **2 Stay Off-line** → Press **Enter** → V-Application starts

- When **1 Connect** is selected in Off-Line Mode (see **Basic P.3-6**), **Establish Network Connection?** appears. Choose **1 Yes** and press **Enter** to start the V-Application.

- Set Security Level for some V-Applications (see P.11-3).

Java™ License Information

- Press **Enter** → Select **Vodafone live!** → Press **Enter** → Select **4 V-Appli** → Press **Enter** → Select **2 V-Appli Settings** → Press **Enter** → Select **5 Other Settings** → Press **Enter** → Select **3 Copyright** → Press **Enter**

Memory Status

- Press **Enter** → Select **Functions** → Press **Enter** → Select **3 Settings 1** → Press **Enter** → Select **1 Memory** → Press **Enter** → Select **3 File Cabinet** → Press **Enter**



- When receiving calls, mail, etc., a running V-Application pauses. To set it to remain active, see P.12-2 "Incoming Settings."
- While using a V-Application, press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner Mode.

Exit, Pause & Resume

Exiting or Pausing V-Applications

1 Press while using a V-Application

- In Viewer position, press for 1+ seconds.

2 Exiting V-Application

1 Select End and press

V-Appli Library returns (disappears).

Pausing V-Application

1 Select Pause and press

Standby returns (appears).

- V-Application resumes from where it was paused.

Resuming V-Applications

1 While a V-Application is paused, press in Standby.

- appears while a V-Application is paused.

2 Select Resume and press

- To end the V-Application, select End → Press

- To open Index Menu and keep the V-Application paused, select Cancel → Press

Opening V-Appli Library while V-Application is Paused

■ When *V-Appli Paused Exit?* appears, choose Yes → Press

- Paused V-Application ends.

Managing V-Applications

Property

View V-Application details

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* → *V-Appli* → *V-Appli Library*

Select a V-Application → Press → **Menu** → Select *Property* → Press

- To read the rest, press . (Press to scroll back.)
- To return to V-Appli Library, press twice.



- *Vendor* is the name of the distributor (or supplier/manufacturer).
- *Save Size* is the downloaded file size.
- *Recorded* indicates the capacity for recording game scores.
- *StandbyDisp* indicates if the V-Application runs in Standby (see P.11-2).
- *Video Out* indicates if the V-Application supports video output.

Delete

Delete V-Applications

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* → *V-Appli* → *V-Appli Library*

Select a V-Application → Press → **Menu** → Select *Delete* → Press

→ Choose Yes → Press

- Pre-loaded V-Applications can be deleted.
- If *Enter Code* appears, enter Security Code.
- If the V-Application is set for Standby (see P.11-2), *Application set for Standby V-Appli Cannot Delete* appears and Menu returns. To proceed, cancel the setting and retry.



Using V-Applications

Standby V-Applications

Set a V-Application to activate when handset enters Standby.

- Only one V-Application can be set at a time, and some do not run in Standby.
- V-Applications on SD Memory Card cannot be set for Standby.

Setting Standby V-Application

Standby V-Appli is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ V-Appli Settings

- Select **1** Standby V-Appli and press **Enter****
 - To set start time, select **2** Set Time ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **1** Start Time ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Enter time (01 - 10 Seconds) ▶ Press **Enter**
 - To set idle time after which V-Application pauses, select **2** Set Time ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **2** Transition Time ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select time ▶ Press **Enter**
- Select **1** Set Application and press **Enter****
 - For network connection setting, select **2** Network Connection ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **1** Connect or **2** Stay Off-line ▶ Press **Enter** (**Connect** is set by default.)
- Select **1** On/Off and press **Enter****
- Choose **1** On and press **Enter****
 - When a V-Application is paused (⏸), choose **1** Yes ▶ Press **Enter**
 - When Auto Reply is active, choose **1** Yes ▶ Press **Enter**
 - To cancel Standby V-Application, choose **2** Off ▶ Press **Enter**
- Select a V-Application and press **Enter****
- Press **Exit** to exit**

Note

- If handset (with SD Memory Card inserted) is connected to any of the following, V-Application does not start from Standby.
 - Headphones (with built-in TV antenna)
 - Analog Conversion Cable (optional)
 - LCD Remote/Mic (optional)
 - Headphones (optional)
- V-Application started from Standby ends if you connect any of the above to handset (with SD Memory Card inserted).
- V-Applications may not start when an external device (hands free kit, etc.) is connected to handset.
- V-Application set for Standby that also responds to incoming communications may take priority over incoming settings set in Call Functions.

Additional Settings

Auto Connect Show or disable a confirmation for network connection

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ V-Appli Library

Select a V-Application ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ **Menu** ▶ Select **Auto Connect** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Choose **1** On or **2** Off ▶ Press **Enter**

- **On**: Network V-Applications start without a confirmation.
- This setting is also available for V-Applications on SD Memory Card.
- **Auto Connect** may not appear for some V-Applications.

Security Level Set a security level for V-Application use

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ V-Appli Library

Select a V-Application ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ **Menu** ▶ Select **Security Level** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **1** High or **2** Low ▶ Press **Enter**

- This setting is also available for V-Applications on SD Memory Card.
- **Security Level** may not appear for some V-Applications.

Save Direct Key Save a V-Application to User Shortcut (see **Basic** P.16-21)

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ Save Direct Key

Saving to User Shortcut

Select **1** Save ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select a V-Application ▶ Press **Enter**

Deleting from User Shortcut

Select **2** Cancel ▶ Press **Enter**



Additional Functions

V-Application Operational Settings

Incoming Settings

Select a handset response to incoming calls, etc. while a V-Application is active

Default: Pause Application

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ V-Appli Settings ▶ Incoming Settings

Select from **1 Incoming Call** to **5 Alarm** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a handset response ▶ Press ●

Pause Application	V-Applications pause for incoming calls, mail, etc.
Show Message	A message appears for incoming calls, mail, etc. For example, 090392XXXX1 appears. Press ☎ to answer the call or read the message.

- For V-Applications started from Standby, a message appears regardless of the setting. However, when Chaku-Uta is set for Ring Tone, the V-Application pauses and Chaku-Uta plays regardless of the setting.
- V-Application compatible with Karaoke pauses regardless of the setting.

Playback Volume

Adjust the volume of V-Application sounds

Default: Level 3

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ V-Appli Settings ▶ Volume/Vibration ▶ Playback Volume

Use **🔊** to adjust volume ▶ Press ●

- In Manner Mode, vibration set in Manner Settings applies.

Vibration

Handset vibrates while compatible V-Applications play

Default: On

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ V-Appli Settings ▶ Volume/Vibration ▶ Vibration

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

- In Manner Mode, vibration set in Manner Settings applies.

Backlight

Select a Backlight status for V-Applications

Default: Link to Backlight

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ V-Appli Settings ▶ Backlight ▶ On/Off

Select from **1 Always Active** to **3 Link to Backlight** ▶ Press ●

Always Active	Backlight remains on while V-Applications are running
Always Inactive	Backlight does not turn on while V-Applications are running
Link to Backlight	Backlight turns on or off depending on Light Settings (see Basic P.8-6)

Blink Control

Backlight flashes while compatible V-Applications play

Default: On

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ V-Appli Settings ▶ Backlight ▶ Blink Control

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

Reset

V-Appli Settings

Refer to **P.16-3** for the settings affected by Reset

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ V-Appli Settings ▶ Other Settings ▶ Reset V-Appli

Enter Security Code ▶ Select **1 Reset** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** ▶ Press ●

Clear Memory

Restore V-Appli Library to default setting

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ V-Appli ▶ V-Appli Settings ▶ Other Settings ▶ Reset V-Appli

Enter Security Code ▶ Select **2 Clear Memory** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** ▶ Press ●

- Pre-loaded V-Applications are restored.

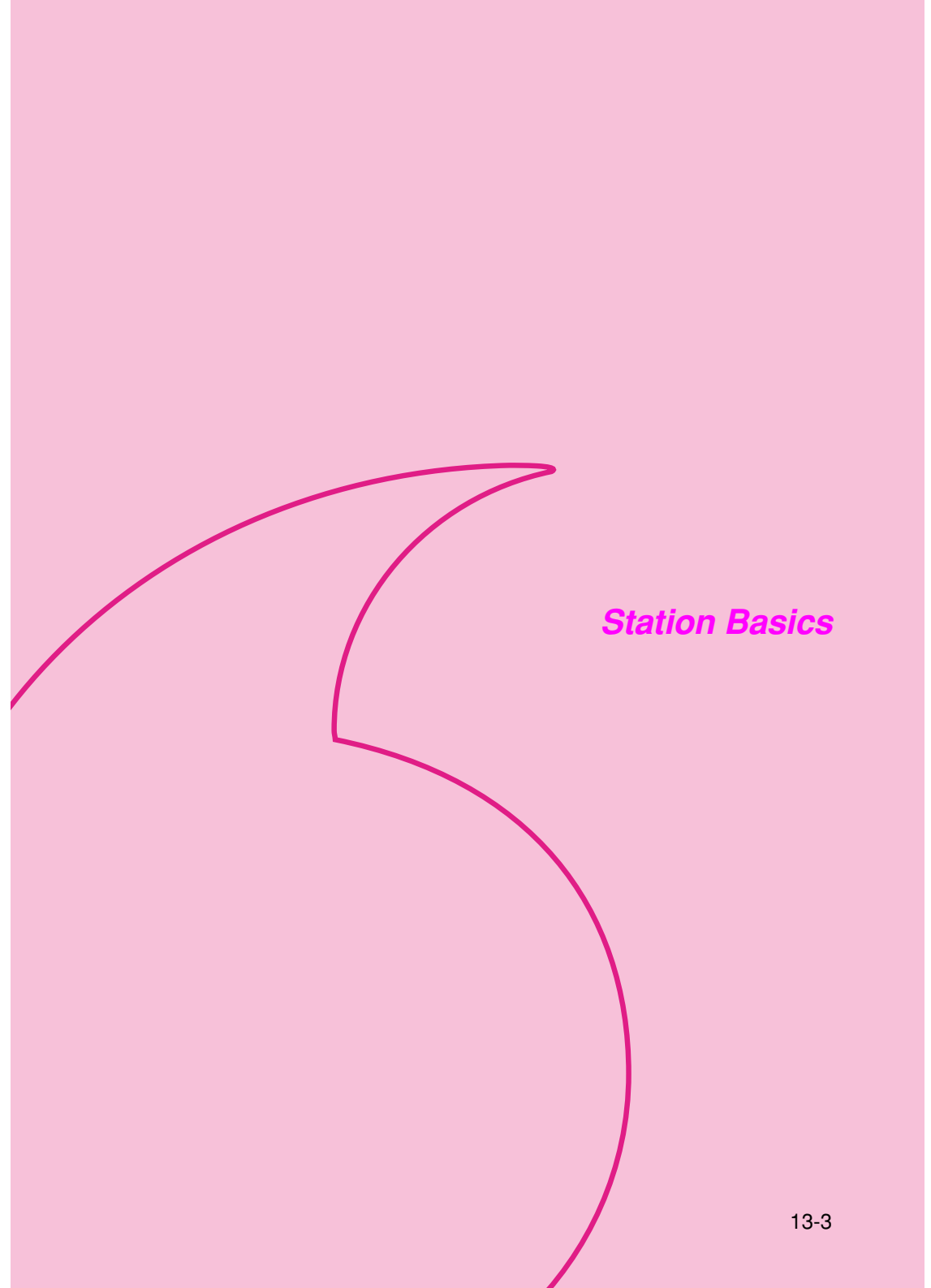


All V-Application settings will be canceled after **Clear Memory**.



Station (Japanese Only)

MEMO



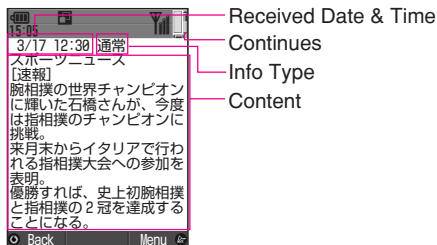
Station Basics

Getting Started

Below follows an overview of information content and fee-based services.

Station Info Content

Sample Station information page:
Use or to scroll information.



Subscription Status

Request confirmation after subscribing to or unsubscribing from fee-based information. To subscribe to fee-based information, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.16-16).

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ Station

1 Select Confirm Request and press

Original subscription status appears.

- : Subscribed
- ×: Not subscribed

2 Press

3 Choose Yes and press

Confirm Request Accepted appears.

- Standby returns after the request is sent.

Copying Text

■ Open information and press **Menu** ▶ Select **Copy** ▶ Press ▶ Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on **Basic** P.4-16

- Text can only be copied when **Copy** appears.

Updating Main List Automatically

- Main List is automatically updated when:
 - Specified hours pass (see P.15-2)
 - Handset receives different area information
 - An update time for titles in My List is reached

Updating Main List Manually

■ Press ▶ Select **Vodafone live!** ▶ Press ▶ Select **3 Station** ▶ Press ▶ Select **4 Update List** ▶ Press

- Standby returns (着). When Main List is updated, **Complete** appears.
- Updates may not be received depending on signal strength.

When Reply from Service Center Arrives

■ Information Menu opens.

To see the reply, select **Station Info** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Station Notification** ▶ Press




- Press to exit (reply will be deleted).
- Alternatively, in Station, open **New Information** to check the reply.


Using Station

Below follows an overview of Main List, My List, etc. Set Clock before using Station (see **Basic P.1-26**).


Checking Main List

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station*

1 Select  Main List and press 
If Main List is empty, choose ** Yes** ▶ Press 

2 Select an item and press 
• Subscription is required for viewing fee-based information.
Station Info Content: see **P.13-4**

3 Press  to exit Station

Tip Information list may appear after Step 2. Select one and press  to open information.


Saving to My List

Save items to **My List** to receive periodic updates. The information is updated automatically.

- Save up to 20 items.
- **Urgent Information** is saved automatically.

From Main List Information

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Main List* ▶ *Open information*

1 Press  **Menu**
• Information can only be saved when **Save** appears.


2 Select **Save and press **
• If the item is already in My List, **My List** does not appear.

3 Select  My List and press 

From Title or Information List

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Main List*

1 Select an item

2 Press  **Menu**
• If the item is already in My List, **Save** appears.

3 Select **Save to My List and press **
• If a selected title has more than one information item, handset saves as many as possible.


Moving Saved Titles

Urgent Information cannot be moved.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *My List*

1 Select a title and press  **Menu**

2 Select **Move and press **


3 Use  to move cursor to target location and press 
The title is moved.

Deleting Titles

- Urgent Information cannot be deleted.
- Deleting a title automatically deletes all information saved under the title.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *My List*

1 Select a title and press  **Menu**

2 Select **Delete and press **
Delete? appears.
• Check the number of information items.

3 Choose  **Yes and press **

Received Information

Unread Information

1 When information in My List is updated, animation plays and Information Menu opens
 漢 appears in red.

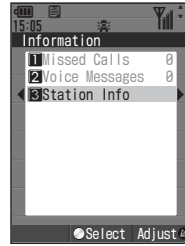
2 Select *Station Info* and press ●

3 Select a title and press ●

- Information appears and is deleted from New Information.

■ Saved Information: see **P.14-2**

■ To save files within information to Data Folder, see **P.14-3** "To Data Folder."



Information Menu

Ring Tone Volume

- Press ● (up) or ● (down) to adjust volume.
 - Ring Tone Level setting (see **Basic P.9-2**) changes accordingly.
 - Cancel Manner Mode to adjust the level (see **Basic P.3-3**).

Quick Silent

- Press 文字 to instantly mute incoming information tone for that information only.

In Standby

- Press ● → Select *Vodafone live!* → Press ● → Select **3** *Station* → Press ● → Select **1** *New Information* → Press ● → Select a title → Press ●

Tip

- Information may appear automatically without a notice.
- If Urgent Information arrives, **Urgent Information** appears even when it arrives with other information.
- If information is received during an operation, Information Menu may not open.
- Depending on information type, Ring Tone may not sound or other tone may sound.

Read Information

My List holds up to 100 information items. In Station, open **My List** to check saved information. Urgent Information is saved to My List.

Index Menu ► *Vodafone live!* ► *Station*

1 Select **3** *My List* and press ●

- Titles with unread information appear in red.

2 Select a title and press ●

3 Select information and press ●

Note

When there are 100 information items in My List and new information arrives, the oldest item is replaced. Save important information to Saved Information (see **P.14-2**). Even when there are fewer than 100 items, items may be deleted depending on the size or type of information.

Using Linked Info

Use numbers, addresses or URLs (*http://* or *https://*) to place calls, send Sky/Super Mail or access Mobile Internet sites.

- Available only when numbers, addresses and URLs are underlined with a dotted line.
- Words may be substituted for the numbers, addresses and URLs.

1 Open information containing a phone number, mail address or URL

2 Phone Numbers

1 Highlight a number and press ●

2 Select *Dial* and press ●

The number is dialed.

Mail Addresses

1 Highlight an address and press ●

2 Select *Send* and press ●

3 Select 1 *Send Super Mail* or 2 *Send Sky Mail* and press ●

Creating a Message: see P.3-3

URLs

1 Highlight a URL and press ●

Handset connects to the Network.

- **High Security Protected** appears for URLs starting with *https://*.

To continue, select 1 **OK** and press ●.

Saving to Phone Book

- 1 Open information and select a phone number or mail address → Press ● →
 Select *Save* → Press ● → Select 1 *New Entry* or 2 *New Item* → Press ● →
 See **Basic** P.5-3 - 5-5 for more about Phone Book



Advanced Features

Saving Information

Saved Information

Information in Main List is automatically updated (see P.13-4).

To protect information, save items to Saved Information.

- Approximately 3,000 KB is shared between Inbox (Mail), Favorites or Message Folder (Web), and Saved Information (Station).
- Information in My List can be saved to Saved Information.

1 Open information

2 Press Menu

- Information can only be saved when **Save** appears.

3 Select **Save** and press

- Information can only be saved when **Saved Information** appears.

4 Select **Saved Information** and press

5 Select Handset or Memory Card and press

- Information may not be saved to SD Memory Card.
- When memory is full, delete entries and try again (see below).
Information may not be saved if memory is low (used for Inbox, Favorites or Message Folder).

Checking Information

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station*

1 Select **Saved Information** and press

- Received date and time appear in [].

2 Select information and press

- To save files within information to Data Folder, see P.14-3 "To Data Folder."

Deleting Selected Information

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Saved Information*

1 Select information and press Menu

2 Select **Delete** and press

3 Choose **Yes** and press

Deleting All Information

- Press ▶ Select *Vodafone live!* ▶ Press ▶ Select **Station** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Saved Information** ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete All Handset** or **Delete All SD Card** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Security Code ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Files within Information

Use information in My List or Saved Information.

To Data Folder Save files within information to Data Folder

Open information and select a file ▶ Press ▶ Select **To Data Folder** ▶ Press ▶ Perform from Step 4 on P.8-2

- Files can only be saved when **To Data Folder** appears.
- Some images cannot be saved due to size or other factors.

Wallpaper & Display Images Save images as Wallpaper or as Display Images

Open information and select an image ▶ Press ▶ Select **Save As Wallpaper** or **To Display Images** ▶ Press ▶ See P.8-3 - 8-4 for more

- Images can only be used when **Save As Wallpaper** or **To Display Images** appears.
- Some images may be too large to use as Wallpaper or Display Images.
- Image files saved as Wallpaper or Display Images are not saved to Data Folder.

Sub Menu Settings

Set Display Size Change font and image size

Default Standard/100%

Open information and press **Menu** ▶ Select **Set Display Size** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Font Size** or **Image Size** ▶ Press ▶ Select a size ▶ Press

- Note** • Some images always appear at 100% depending on the original size.
- Select **100%** if information does not appear properly at **200%**.

- Tip** • Press to toggle image size between 200% and 100%. (appears for 100% and for 200%.)
- To change Font Size from Font Settings menu, see [Basic] P.8-4.

Scroll Unit

Select from three scroll units

Default Line

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Scroll Unit** → Press **1** → Select from **1 Full Screen** to **3 Line** → Press **1**

Text MemoCopy text and save to Text Memo (see **Basic P.4-18**)

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Save** → Press **1** → Select **Text Memo** → Press **1** → Use **Left Arrow** to move cursor to the first character → Press **Start** → Use **Left Arrow** to specify text → Press **End** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **1**

- To save to SD Memory Card, press **2** after specifying text.
- Press **2** again to switch back to handset.
- Text can only be saved when **Save** and **Text Memo** appear.

Property

Open information details

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Property** → Press **1**

- Press **1** to return to information.
- Check **Reception No (001/100, 002/100, ... or 100/100)**. The smaller the number, the later the information is received.

Weather Indicator

Activating Weather Indicator

The weather forecast for your current location (sent via the Center) appears as Weather Indicator in Standby.

- Subscription to fee-based information is required to use this service.
- Off** (no Weather Indicator) is set by default.

Index Menu → *Vodafone live!* → **Station** → **Weather Indicator**

1 Select **2 Standby Display** and press **1**

2 Choose **1 On** and press **1**

- To cancel, choose **2 Off** → Press **1**

3 Press **1**

- Weather Indicator appears when forecast is updated.

Tip After you subscribe to fee-based information, **Weather Icon Set Now?** appears. Choose **1 Yes** and press **1**, then follow onscreen instructions to see the indicators. **On** is set for **2 Standby Display** automatically.

Indicators & Updates

Weather Indicator is updated when:

- Weather Indicator update time arrives
- A different area forecast is received
- Main List update time arrives (see **P.15-2**)
- Manually updated (see **P.13-4**)

Example: ☁ / ⚡
→ Partly cloudy with a chance of Rain

Weather Forecast

See a more detailed weather forecast.

Index Menu → *Vodafone live!* → **Station** → **Weather Indicator**

1 Select **1 Weather Forecast** and press **1**

Information appears.

Changing Info Number

- Press **1** → Select **2 Vodafone live!** → Press **1** → Select **3 Station** → Press **1** → Select **5 Weather Indicator** → Press **1** → Select **3 Set Info Number** → Press **1** → Enter Security Code → Enter a new Info Number → Press **1**
- Do not change Info Number unless instructed to do so.
- 57451 is set by default.

Location Info

Checking Location Info

Up to five locations, including the current one, are saved in Location Info Log. When this limit is exceeded, the oldest Location is replaced with the newest.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station*

1 Select **Location Info** and press **Enter**

Location Info Log opens.

When Location Info is protected, enter Security Code (see below).

To update Location Info, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Update Location Info** ▶ Press **Enter**

To delete Location Info, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Choose

Yes ▶ Press **Enter**

To clear Location Info, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete All** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Choose

Yes ▶ Press **Enter**

2 Select Location Info and press **Enter**

Using Location Info

- Share on BBS (see P.6-15).
- Send via Web (see P.9-2).
- Copy and paste into messages (see below).

Pasting into Messages

In a text entry window, move cursor to the paste location and follow these steps.

Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Saved Information** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **Location info** ▶ Press **Enter** three times

- Location Info is inserted to the left of the cursor.

Protecting Location Info

Restrict access to Location Info Log by making Security Code required to open Location Info.

No (Security Code not required) is set by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Location Info* ▶ *Menu* (⌂) ▶ *Set Security Code*

1 Select **Need Setting** and press **Enter**

Handset is set to ask for Security Code.

To cancel the setting, select **No** ▶ Press **Enter**



Station Settings

Basic Settings

Update Frequency Set an interval for Main List automatic update

Default 4 Times/Day

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ Station ▶ Station Settings ▶ Update Frequency

Select from **1 4 Times/Day** to **3 Off** ▶ Press ●

- Main List is updated automatically when not manually updated within a set interval.

Save Info Number Save information to My List directly using *Info Number*

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ Station ▶ Station Settings ▶ Save Info Number

Enter Info Number ▶ Press ●

- When 20 titles are saved in My List, **No Space Cannot Save** appears in Station Settings menu. Delete titles and try again (see P.13-7).

Image Link Update Wallpaper automatically when the source image is updated

■ Image Link is available only when a title of information containing images is saved to My List (see P.13-6).

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ Station ▶ Station Settings ▶ Image Link

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

Note

- When Wallpaper is updated, the original image used as Wallpaper is deleted.
- Wallpaper is updated automatically only when the image is saved as Wallpaper directly from opened information, not from Data Folder.

Reset

Reset Station Reset Station settings
Refer to P.16-3 for the settings affected by Reset

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ Station ▶ Station Settings ▶ Reset Station

Enter Security Code ▶ Select **1 Reset** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** ▶ Press ●

Clear Memory Delete all information in Station

Index Menu ▶ Vodafone live! ▶ Station ▶ Station Settings ▶ Reset Station

Enter Security Code ▶ Select **2 Clear Memory** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** ▶ Press ●

Tip

- All files in the following locations will be deleted:
 - New Information
 - Main List
 - My List*
 - Saved Information
 - Location Info
- *Urgent Information remains.
- When **Clear Memory** is performed, ongoing Main List update will stop (see P.13-4).

15

Station Settings

15

Station Settings

Appendix

Reset Settings

Mail Settings

See P.6-16 for resetting Mail Settings.

Auto Retrieve	Manual	
Super Mail Group	Deleted	
Sender Name	Off (deleted)	
Recipient Name	Off	
Rejected Files	Off (all unchecked)	
Reply Address	Off (address deleted)	
Signature	Off (all deleted)	
Reply w/ Original	Off ¹	
Security	PIN Setting	0000
	PIN Filter	Off (all)
	Reject List	Deleted
	Address Filter	Off
Set Priority	Normal	
Sender	Deleted	
2-Touch Mail	Add Address: all deleted, Save & Send Image: On	
Mail Notice	Name	
Confirm Delivery	Off	
Hide Spam	Off	
Auto Send	On	
Auto Reply	Off ²	
Custom Fixed Text	Deleted	
Center Address	³	
BBS	Off ⁴	
Scroll Unit	Line	
Layout	List all	
Set Folders	Folder Name: all deleted, Secret Mode: all Off, Letter Pad: Off	
Chat Mail Log	Chat Group Name (① - ③), Members: all deleted	
Auto Open	Image Auto Open: On, Sound Auto Play: Off	
Auto Delete Old	Off	
Sort By Subject	Off (text all deleted)	
Sort By Addresses	Off (text all deleted)	
Set Display Size	Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100%	
Auto Sort	Date	
List	Pattern 1	

¹Comment returns to --○○さんは言いました--.

²Title, Reply Text and Reply Time for each mode return to default (see P.6-3).

³Short Message: ¥7033, Data Access: ¥7233000, Super Mail Line: ¥7043
Report Setting: stop@meiwaku.vodafone.jp

⁴New Message: deleted (掲示板データなし), Location Info: deleted (no data)



Sky Melody Center Address returns to ¥1790.

Web Settings

See P.9-4 for resetting Web settings.

Text Only	Images and sounds retrieved	
Center Address	¥7223000	
Security	Warning Message	On
	Show User ID	Off
Location Info	Confirm User	
Home	Space Town	
Scroll Unit	Line	
Character Encoding	Auto Recognition	
Set Display Size	Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100%	
DNS Cache	Deleted	
Tone	Piano	
Adjust Loudness	Strong	

V-Application Settings

See P.12-3 for resetting V-Application settings.

Incoming Settings	Pause Application (all)
Volume/Vibration	Playback Volume: Level 3, Vibration: On
Backlight	On/Off: Link to Backlight, Blink Control: On
Standby V-Appli	Start Time: 3 Seconds, Transition Time: 0 Min
Server Address	¥7263000

Station Settings

See P.15-3 for resetting Station settings.

Update Frequency	4 Times/Day
Center Address	¥7053
Image Link	Off
Weather Indicator	Off
Scroll Unit	Line
Set Display Size	Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100%

Display Messages

Mail

Cannot Send

Send failed due to weak signal.

➔ Make sure signal is stable and try again.

Deliverv Rejected

The message was not delivered to the recipient.

➔ Check the handset number and try again.

Cannot Send

The Center is undergoing maintenance.

➔ Wait and try again.

Confirm

Unknown if the Center received the message.

➔ Confirm delivery (see **P.4-20**).

No response
Connection
interrupted

Unknown if the Center received the message.

➔ Wait and try again.

Connection
Interrupted

Unknown if the Center received the message.

➔ Wait and try again.

Cannot connect to
Network

The Center did not receive the message.

➔ Wait and try again.

Check Address

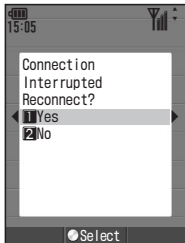
An invalid address was entered.

➔ Check the recipient's address.

Cannot Mail Access

Super Mail is disabled.

➔ Contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.16-16**).



Disconnected due to weak signal.

➔ Choose **Yes** and press **OK** to reconnect.



The message was not delivered to the recipient.

➔ If recipient is using PIN Filter, enter the matching PIN and resend (see **P.3-13**).

➔ The recipient may be using Address Filter for security.

➔ If included, remove **184** or **186** from the address and try again.

Sha-mail Cannot be Sent

Possible causes include the following. For details, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.16-16**).

- **Recipient does not subscribe to Super Mail or Long Mail.**
- **Recipient handset is not Super Mail compatible. (Long Mail compatible handsets cannot receive messages over 6 KB.)**
- **Recipient handset is not JPEG compatible.**
 - Convert JPEG files to PNG files before sending to PNG compatible handsets (see **Basic P.13-30**).

When Handset Memory is Full

New messages cannot be delivered. Undeliverable mail is saved at the Center for up to 30 days.

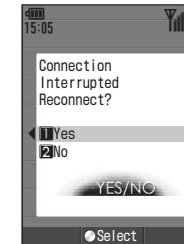
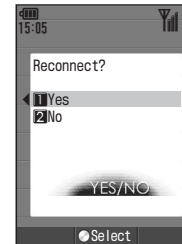
- Delete messages to free memory for new ones (see **P.4-23**).
When memory is available, new messages are delivered automatically.
- Delete unprotected messages automatically to receive new ones (see **P.4-25**).
- Even if memory is not full, handset cannot receive new messages larger than remaining memory.

Web

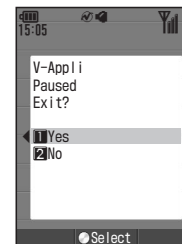
Connection
Interrupted

The Center did not respond.

➔ Establish a connection within the time limit.

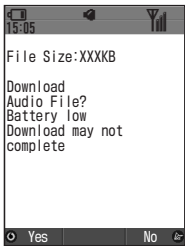


Disconnected due to weak signal.
➔ Choose **Yes** and press **OK** to reconnect.



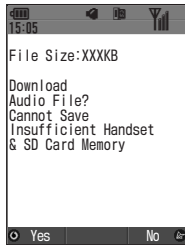
A V-Application is paused.

➔ Close the application and try again.



Download may fail due to low battery.

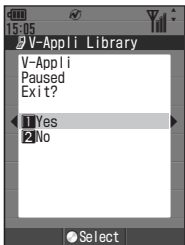
➔ Charge battery beforehand.



Memory is full.

➔ Delete files and try again (see **Basic P.13-47**).

V-Applications



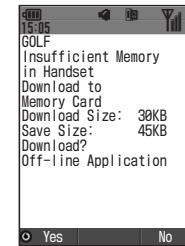
A V-Application is paused.

➔ Close the application and try again.



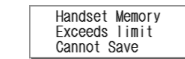
Download may fail due to low battery.

➔ Charge battery beforehand.



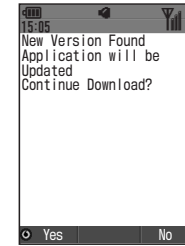
Library memory is full.

➔ Press **Yes** to continue downloading and press **No** to cancel.



100 V-Applications are already saved.

➔ Delete applications and try again (see **P.10-9**).



You are downloading a new version of the saved application.

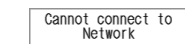
➔ Press **Yes** to continue downloading and press **No** to cancel.

Tip

V-Applications cannot be downloaded when the following messages appear:

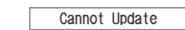
- Improper Data Cannot Download Application
- Application Size too large Cannot download
- Application in Use

Station



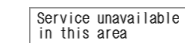
You tried to update Main List or Location Info out-of-range.

➔ Try again where signal is stable.



Location Info cannot be received from the Center.

➔ Try again.



You tried to update Main List or Location Info outside the Service Area.

➔ Try again within the Service Area.

Pictograph List

Open Pictograph Code mode and press **List**.
Use to select a Pictograph and press to enter it.

Pictograph Code 1

Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph
01		19		37		55		73	
02		20		38		56		74	
03		21		39		57		75	
04		22		40		58		76	
05		23		41		59		77	
06		24		42		60		78	
07		25		43		61		79	
08		26		44		62		80	
09		27		45		63		81	
10		28		46		64		82	
11		29		47		65		83	
12		30		48		66		84	
13		31		49		67		85	
14		32		50		68		86	
15		33		51		69		87	
16		34		52		70		88	
17		35		53		71		89	
18		36		54		72		90	

Pictograph Code 2

Pictographs in are animated.

Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph
01		19		37		55		73	
02		20		38		56		74	
03		21		39		57		75	
04		22		40		58		76	
05		23		41		59		77	
06		24		42		60		78	
07		25		43		61		79	
08		26		44		62		80	
09		27		45		63		81	
10		28		46		64		82	
11		29		47		65		83	
12		30		48		66		84	
13		31		49		67		85	
14		32		50		68		86	
15		33		51		69		87	
16		34		52		70		88	
17		35		53		71		89	
18		36		54		72		90	

Pictograph Code 3

Pictographs in are animated.

Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph
01		19		37		55		73	
02		20		38		56		74	
03		21		39		57		75	
04		22		40		58		76	
05		23		41		59		77	
06		24		42		60		78	
07		25		43		61		79	
08		26		44		62		80	
09		27		45		63		81	
10		28		46		64		82	
11		29		47		65		83	
12		30		48		66		84	
13		31		49		67		85	
14		32		50		68		86	
15		33		51		69			
16		34		52		70			
17		35		53		71			
18		36		54		72			

Pictograph Code 4

Pictographs in are animated.

Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph
01		17		33		49		65	
02		18		34		50		66	
03		19		35		51		67	
04		20		36		52		68	
05		21		37		53		69	
06		22		38		54		70	
07		23		39		55		71	
08		24		40		56		72	
09		25		41		57		73	
10		26		42		58		74	
11		27		43		59		75	
12		28		44		60		76	
13		29		45		61		77	
14		30		46		62			
15		31		47		63			
16		32		48		64			

Note

Pictographs do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible Vodafone handsets.

Tip

- Pictographs in are animated.
- Pictographs with * appear with background animation in received messages when Standby Animation (see **Basic P.8-10**) is **On**.

■ Pictograph Code 5

Pictographs in  are animated.

Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph
01		17		33		49		65	
02		18		34		50		66	
03		19		35		51		67	
04		20		36		52		68	
05		21		37		53		69	
06		22		38		54		70	
07		23		39		55		71	
08		24		40		56		72	
09		25		41		57		73	
10		26		42		58		74	
11		27		43		59		75	
12		28		44		60		76	
13		29		45		61			
14		30		46		62			
15		31		47		63			
16		32		48		64			

■ Pictograph Code 6


Pictographs in  are animated.

Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph	Code	Pictograph
01		13		25		37		49	
02		14		26		38		50	
03		15		27		39		51	
04		16		28		40		52	
05		17		29		41		53	
06		18		30		42		54	
07		19		31		43		55	
08		20		32		44		56	
09		21		33		45		57	
10		22		34		46		58	
11		23		35		47			
12		24		36		48			

Note

Pictographs do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible Vodafone handsets.

Tip

- Pictographs in  are animated.
- Pictographs with * appear with background animation in received messages when Standby Animation (see [Basic P.8-10](#)) is *On*.

Memory List

Mail

Sent	Approximately 1,040 KB
Outbox	Approximately 200 KB
Inbox	Approximately 3,000 KB*

*Shared with Favorites or Message Folder (Web) and Saved Information (Station).

Web

Favorites/Message Folder	Approximately 3,000 KB*
Log	Up to 20 entries
Bookmarks	Up to 30 links
Internet	Up to 20 URLs

*Shared with Inbox (Mail) and Saved Information (Station).

Station

Main List	Up to 63 titles
Saved Information	Approximately 3,000 KB*
My List	Up to 20 titles (100 items)
Location Info	Up to 5

*Shared with Inbox (Mail) and Favorites or Message Folder (Web).

V-Application

V-Appli Library	Up to 12 MB (100 items)*
------------------------	--------------------------

*Shared with File Cabinet (see [Basic P.13-2](#)).

Index

Numbers

2-Touch Mail 3-17

A

Access Log List 7-8
Acquire Mail List 5-2
Activate FM (Web) 8-16
Activate TV (Web) 8-16
Add Address (2-Touch Mail) 6-2
Address Filter 6-11
Attach 240 x 320 3-9
Attach Thumbnail 3-9
Attachment (attaching images, etc.) .. 3-9
Attachment
 (changing sound format) 3-12
Attachment (saving) 4-28
Auto Connect (V-Application) 11-3
Auto Delete Old 4-25
Auto Delivery Service 8-13
Auto Reply 6-3
Auto Retrieve 6-8
Auto Send 6-5
Auto Sort 4-31

B

Backlight (V-Application) 12-3
BBS 6-15
Bcc 3-6
Blink Control (V-Application) 12-3
Bookmarks 8-9
Bookmarks (accessing from) 8-10
Bookmarks (deleting entries) 8-11
Bookmarks (saving to) 8-9
Bottom Jump 4-7, 8-14
By Express 3-14, 6-12

C

Cache Memory 7-5
Call 2-9, 4-27
Call Text Memo 3-7
Call Waiting 1-4
Call Waiting Off 1-4

Cancel Delivery 4-20
Cc 3-6
Center Address 1-6
Certification 9-3
Chaku-Uta 8-8
Change Title (Web) 8-11
Character Encoding 4-7, 8-15
chat group 4-8
Chat Mail Log 4-10
Clear DNS Cache 9-2
Clear Memory 9-4, 12-3, 15-3
Clear Web Cache 9-4
Clipboard 3-11
Confirm Delivery 3-14, 4-20, 6-5
Confirm Request 13-5
converting Mail Type 3-8
Copy 4-6, 7-4, 13-4
Copyright (V-Application) 10-7
Create QR Code 4-31
Custom Fixed Text 6-6

D

Data Access 1-6
Delete All (mail messages) 6-16
Delete All Mail (Server Mail) 5-2
Delete all Mail
 (Unretrieved List messages) 5-5
Delete Item
 (Unretrieved List message) 5-4
Delivery Report 4-20
Dictionary files 8-6
Display Images 4-29, 8-3, 14-3
Download Rest 2-8

E

Edit Comments (Super Mail) 3-5
Entrust.net (Certification) 9-3
EUC-JP (Character Encoding) 4-7, 8-15

F

Favorites 8-9
Favorites (canceling) 8-10

Favorites (deleting entries) 8-11
Favorites (opening information) 8-10
Favorites (saving to) 8-9
Fixed Text 3-8
Folder Name 4-12
Font Size 4-6, 8-14, 14-3
Forward 2-9, 4-19

G

Go to 4-7
Greeting 1-2, 3-3, 3-18
GTE Corporation (Certification) 9-3

H

Hide Spam 4-18
Home Reset 8-12
Home Setting 8-12

I

Image Auto Open 4-30
Image Link 15-2
Image Size 4-6, 8-14, 14-3
Inbox 4-2
Inbox Auto Sort 4-15
Incoming Call 1-4
Incoming Mail 4-3
Incoming Settings 12-2
information content 7-4, 13-4
Information Menu 2-4, 8-13, 13-8
Input Memory 7-9
Internet 7-7
ISO-2022-JP
 (Character Encoding) 4-7, 8-15

K

Karaoke 10-5

L

Letter Pad 4-13
Link Limiter 9-2
Link Limiter Code 9-2
Location Info 6-15, 14-6
Location Info (Web) 9-2

M

Mail 2-1

Mail (checking messages) 4-2
Mail (checking new messages) 2-4
Mail (copying message text) 4-6
Mail (creating & sending) 3-3
Mail (deleting selected messages) ... 4-23
Mail (disabling) 1-6
Mail (editing messages) 4-2, 4-21
Mail (entering message text) 3-7
Mail (entering recipient) 3-4
Mail (entering subject) 3-6
Mail (protecting messages) 4-22
Mail (resetting) 6-16
Mail (saving to Outbox) 3-17
Mail Address
 (customizing handset address) 1-5
Mail Box 4-2
Mail Box (changing Layout) 4-11
Mail Box (changing List view) 4-31
Mail Box (contents) 4-3, 4-8
Mail Notice 6-5
Mail Request 5-2
Main List 13-6
melody files (saving) 8-5
Melody Format 3-12
memory list 16-11
memory status 1-5, 8-9, 10-7
Memory Usage 1-5, 8-9
Message Contents 2-6, 4-5
Message Folder 7-5, 8-9
Message Folder
 (deleting entries) 8-11
Message Folder
 (opening information) 8-10
Message Folder (saving to) 8-9
Mobile Internet (accessing) 7-6
More (retrieving multiple Super Mail) ... 2-7
More (Super Mail) 2-7
Move Mail Folder 4-14
Move to Home 8-12
Multi Selector i
My List 13-6
My List (checking information) 13-9
My List (deleting entries) 13-7
My List (saving to) 13-6

N

network connection	10-4
Network Setup	1-4
New Information	13-8
Next (Unretrieved List)	5-3

O

Open Link	4-27
Option Settings	3-13
Original Melody	3-12
Outbox	4-2, 4-20

P

Pause Application	12-2
Phone Book (saving to)	4-26
Pictograph List	16-8
PIN	3-13
PIN Filter	6-10
PIN Setting	6-10
Playback Volume	7-4
Playback Volume (V-Application)	12-2
Polling	3-14, 6-16
Priority Setting	3-15
Privacy Level	3-14
Property	8-15, 10-9, 14-4

R

Reacquire	8-15
Recipient Name	6-9
Recipient Type	3-15
Reject List	6-11
Rejected Files	6-7
Reply Address	3-15, 6-9
Reply to All	2-9, 4-19
Reply with Original	6-6
Report Setting	6-6
Report Spam	4-32
Resend	4-2
Reset	6-16, 9-4, 12-3, 15-3
Retrieve All (Server Mail)	5-2
Retrieve all Mail (Unretrieved List)	5-4
Return Mail	2-9, 4-19
RSA Data Security (Certification)	9-3

S

Save & Send Image	6-8
Save As Wallpaper	4-29, 8-3, 14-3
Save Auto Send	3-16
Save Dictionary	8-6
Save Direct Key	11-3
Save Info Number	15-2
Saved Information (checking)	14-2
Saved Information (deleting entries)	14-2
Saved Information (saving to)	14-2
Scan Code	3-7, 4-30, 7-7
Scroll Unit (for Mail Box, Message Folder)	4-32, 8-10
Scroll Unit (for text, Web/Station info)	4-7, 8-14, 14-4
Search (Web)	8-14
Search Next (Web)	8-14
Search this Page	8-14
Secret Mode	4-12
Security Level	11-3
Select Contents	5-3
Send Continuously	4-21
Send Mail	4-27
Sender	6-12
Sender Name	6-8
Sent	4-2
Sent Auto Sort	4-15
Sent Mail	3-5
Server	3-6
Server Address	1-6
Server Mail (deleting)	5-6
Server Mail (forwarding)	5-5
Server Mail Volume	5-2
Set Display Size	4-6, 8-14, 14-3
Set Info Number	14-5
Set Priority	3-14, 6-12
Sha-mail Shoot	3-13
Shift-JIS (Character Encoding)	4-7, 8-15
Short Message	1-6
Show Address	4-31
Show as Unread/Read	4-32
Show Certification	8-16
Show Message	12-2

Show User ID	9-3
Side Keys	i
Signature	6-9
Sky Mail	1-2, 3-3
Sky Melody	1-2, 2-9
SMAF (MA-2) Format	3-12
SMAF (MA-3) Format	3-12
Sort By Addresses	4-17
Sort By Subject	4-16
Sound Auto Play	4-30
Space Town	8-12
SSL	7-5
Standby Display	14-4
Standby V-Application	11-2
Station	13-1
Station (disabling)	1-6
Station (resetting)	15-3
Sub Address	3-6
Super Mail	1-2, 3-3
Super Mail (retrieving)	2-7, 5-3
Super Mail Group (creating)	6-12
Super Mail Group (deleting)	6-14
Super Mail Line	1-6
Super Mail Notice	2-7
Synchronize (V-Application)	10-4

T

Text Memo	8-15, 14-4
Text Only	9-2
Text Scanner	3-7, 7-7
To	3-6
To Data Folder	8-2, 14-3
Top Jump	4-7, 8-14
Transfer Server Mail	5-5

U

Unread Messages (Web)	8-13
Update	8-15
Update Frequency	15-2
uploading	8-16
UTF-8 (Character Encoding)	4-7, 8-15

V

V-Appli Library	10-7
V-Applications	10-1

V-Applications (deleting)	10-9
V-Application (disabling)	1-6
V-Applications (downloading)	10-6
V-Applications (exiting or pausing) ..	10-8
V-Applications (remote control)	10-5
V-Application (resetting)	12-3
V-Applications (resuming)	10-8
V-Applications (starting)	10-7
VeriSign, Inc. (Certification)	9-3
vFiles (saving)	8-7
Vibration (V-Application)	12-2
Video Out	10-5
Vodafone live! (disabling)	1-6
Vodafone Web	7-6

W

Warning Message (Web)	9-3
Weather Forecast	14-5
Weather Indicator	14-4
Web	7-1
Web (disabling)	1-6
Web (moving cursor)	7-8
Web (resetting)	9-4

Customer Service

If you have questions about Vodafone handsets or services, please call General Information. For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

Vodafone Customer Centers

From a Vodafone handset, dial toll free at
157 for General Information or
113 for Customer Assistance

16

Appendix

Call these toll free numbers from landlines

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎ 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎ 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎ 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane	General Information	☎ 0088-259-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-259-113
Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi	General Information	☎ 0088-247-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-247-113
Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎ 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-250-113

V603SH Instruction Manual Vodafone live!

April 2005, First Edition

Vodafone K.K.

For additional information, please visit a Vodafone shop.

Model: V603SH

Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation



Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handset, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always be sure to erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.